特高级教师

点拨®

知识
方法
素养

本书阅读策略8招·写作技法8招



九年级 英语 下

(WY版)

含教材习题答案

吉林教育出版社

教辅资料站

电子教辅 试卷练习
知识总结 备课资源

扫码关注获取更多学习资料

特高级教师

点拨®

知识
方法
素养

九年级 英语 下 （WY 版）

主　　编：荣德基
本册主编：刘树春



提分一定有方法

吉林教育出版社

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

点拨 不只提分



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料



目录

Module 1 Travel

魔法六维导图 …… 1

记忆大师 …… 1

Unit 1 We toured the city by bus and by taxi. …… 3

Unit 2 It's a long story. …… 10

Unit 3 Language in use …… 18

素养：春运——中国特有的文化现象 … 9

Module 2 Education

魔法六维导图 …… 30

记忆大师 …… 30

Unit 1 They don't sit in rows. …… 32

Unit 2 What do I like best about school? …… 38

Unit 3 Language in use …… 47

素养：英国最著名的贵族中学——伊顿公学 …… 45

Module 3 Life now and then

魔法六维导图 …… 60

记忆大师 …… 60

Unit 1 They sometimes work harder. … 62

Unit 2 I think life is better today. …… 70

Unit 3 Language in use …… 78

素养：《厉害了，我的国》 …… 76

Module 4 Rules and suggestions

魔法六维导图 …… 89

记忆大师 …… 89

Unit 1 You must be careful of falling stones. …… 91

Unit 2 We must keep the camp clean. …… 99

Unit 3 Language in use …… 108

素养：研学旅行 (Study Trip) …… 97

Revision module A …… 118

Module 5 Look after yourself

魔法六维导图 …… 125

记忆大师 …… 125

Unit 1 We'd better get you to hospital. …… 127

Unit 2 Get off the sofa! …… 134

Unit 3 Language in use …… 142

素养：学会急救 …… 133

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Module 6 Eating together

魔法六维导图 152

记忆大师 152

Unit 1 When is the school-leavers' party? 154

Unit 2 Knives and forks are used for most Western food. 160

Unit 3 Language in use 169

Module 7 English for you and me

魔法六维导图 179

记忆大师 179

Unit 1 Have you ever been to an English corner? 181

Unit 2 We all own English. 187

Unit 3 Language in use 194

素养：汉语桥 193

Module 8 My future life

魔法六维导图 206

记忆大师 206

Unit 1 Here's to our friendship! 208

Unit 2 I know that you will be better at maths. 214

Unit 3 Language in use 221

素养：培养“制订做事计划”素养… 213

Revision module B 230

参考答案及点拨 238

教材习题参考答案 244

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料



全书考点索引

单词（按字母顺序排列）

absent 43
accident 131
achieve 184
across 22
advice 173
advise 198
afford 74
allow 83
another..... 44
anyway 184
around 165
as..... 164
blind 131
by..... 104
choose 156
communicate 81
cross 166
direct 6
dish 157
double 66
education..... 74
effort 139
enough..... 67
exactly..... 8
expect 137
fairly 96
fear 64
finish 167
hang..... 104
happen..... 129
harm 139
hit 145
hope..... 36
hurt 83
intend 211
invitation..... 156
Italian 158
kindness 218
last 43
look 36
mean 36
nearly 64
neither 51
none..... 51
offer..... 17
over 167
own 191
pass 42
pollution 82
population 192
practise 199
prepare..... 157
present..... 42
progress 183
promise 172
proper 94
quarter..... 191
quite..... 7
refuse 210
require..... 139
role 74
seldom..... 66
serve 164
similar 165
smooth..... 96
starve 95
still 106
straight..... 97
succeed 6
sudden..... 107
suggestion 94
suppose 65
surprised 15
that 185
though 76
tiny 73
trust 218
until 42
wealthy 64
wear..... 35
Westerner 164
whenever..... 94

短语（按字母顺序排列）

a bit 6
above all 106
ahead of 225
as a result..... 82
as long as..... 7
as soon as 167
as...as 52
at the end of..... 7
be afraid 14
be bad for 23
be based on 200
be busy doing... 75
be careful of 95
be full of 5
be known as..... 113
be made with 157
be proud of 199
be unlikely to do sth. 200
be used for 165
be worth 145
because of 5
borrow...from... 192
call off..... 132
catch up 129
choose sb. to do sth. 218
come on 96
deal with 65
dress up 174
either... or... 200
enjoy oneself 34
fall off 129
fall over 131
find out 82
generally speaking 76
get married 75
get on 14
give up..... 218
go rock climbing 95
go off 95
have a break 44
heat up..... 157
help yourself 166
in fact 156
in order to... 113
in time 21
look forward to 8
look up 146
make a living 225
make an effort to do sth. ... 199
make sure 21
more and more 138
no good 157
not ...any more 167

教辅资料站

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

not just…but (also)… 140
on one's own 95
once a term 45
once in a while 139
one day 36
pass on…to sb. 112
pay attention 93
pick up..... 173
put on 140
put up 105
say no to … 140
set off 93
set up 53
so that 198
speak up 68
stay in touch 219
stop doing sth. 83
take an interest in 146
take care 14
take off 15
take up..... 146
the number of 66
the Whites 22
think of…as..... 81
to begin with 96
to one's surprise 53
together with 192
too… to… 16
try one's best (to do sth.)… 219
two more lessons..... 44
used to 65
what's more..... 74

句型（按字母顺序排列）

find +it+*adj.* +to do sth. … 173
Here's to … 212
It is thought that … 138
It takes /took sb. some time to do sth. 23
let's do sth. 35
What is/are …like? 34
Why don't you do sth.? … 67

辨析（按本书页码排列）

辨析 : because of 与 because 5
辨析 : a bit 与 a little 6
辨析 : quite 与 very 7
辨析 : surprising, surprised 与 surprise 15
辨析 : across, through 与 over 22
辨析 : few, a few, little 与 a little 34
辨析 : let's 与 let us 35
辨析 : wear, dress, put on 与 in 35
辨析 : since 与 for 41
辨析 : each 与 every 43
辨析 :instead 与 instead of..... 44
辨析 : such as 与 for example 45
辨析 : be able to 与 can … 52
辨析 : take place 与 happen..... 52
辨析 : remember to do sth. 与 remember doing sth. 68
辨析 : fever, temperature 与 heat 73
辨析 : lonely 与 alone..... 75
辨析 : find, find out, look for 与 discover 82
辨析 : fairly 与 rather 96
辨析 : go to bed, be asleep 与 be sleepy..... 103
辨析 : noise, voice 与 sound 103
辨析 : in the tree 与 on the tree 104
辨析 : above all, after all 与 first of all 106
辨析 : see sb. do sth. 与 see sb. doing sth. 106
辨析 : besides, except 与 except for..... 112
辨析 : wake up 与 wake up to 112
辨析 : in 与 after..... 130
辨析 : agree with, agree on 与 agree to 130
辨析 : thanks for 与 thanks to 137
辨析 : die from 与 die of… 147
辨析 : spend, cost, pay 与 take 174
辨析 : have/has been to, have/has gone to 与 have/has been in 184
辨析 : keep doing sth. 与 keep on doing sth. 185
辨析 : including, included 与 include 185
辨析 : between 与 among…191
辨析 : go on with sth., go on doing sth. 与 go on to do sth. 199
辨析 : win 与 beat 211
辨析 : fetch, take, bring 与 carry..... 211
辨析 : raise 与 rise 212
辨析 : disappointed 与 disappointing 219
辨析 : repair 与 mend..... 225
辨析 : interest, interested 与 interesting 226

语法（按本书页码排列）

名词（M1） 23
冠词（M1） 24
数词（M1） 26
代词（M2） 54
介词与介词短语（M2）… 56
形容词与副词（M3） … 84
情态动词（M4） 113
时态（M5） 147
被动语态（M6） 175
状语从句和不定式（M7）…201
宾语从句（M8） 226
定语从句（M8） 227

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

三步阅读学习法

课标中 对“读”的要求		1. 能根据上下文和构词法推断、理解生词的含义。 2. 能理解段落中各句子之间的逻辑关系。 3. 能找出文章中的主题，理解故事的情节，预测故事情节的发展和可能的结局。 4. 能读懂相应水平的常见体裁的读物。 5. 能根据不同的阅读目的运用简单的阅读策略获取信息。 6. 能利用词典等工具书进行阅读。 7. 课外阅读量应累计达到 15 万词以上。
课标中 对“写”的要求		1. 能根据写作要求，收集、准备素材。 2. 能独立起草短文、短信等，并在教师的指导下进行修改。 3. 能使用常见的连接词表示顺序和逻辑关系。 4. 能简单描述人物或事件。 5. 能根据图示或表格写出简单的段落或操作说明。
考情分析		阅读技能和写作技能是英语学科考试主要考查的两项内容，且阅读量近年来呈上升趋势，在有些省份的中考中写作分数所占的百分比也有所增加。阅读方面要求学生具有理解各种题材和体裁的书面材料并从各种材料中获取信息的能力，写作上要求学生具有运用所学语言知识与技能进行信息沟通、再现生活经历、描述周围事物、发表意见和观点的能力。简言之，就是要求学生在大量的语言材料有效输入与积累的基础上有可观的输出。
目　的		三步阅读学习法——整体式语篇学习法的目的是让学生在完整的语境中感知文本，在阅读中解读语言所表达的含义，在实际交流中体会语言所起的作用。从而提高学生的阅读技能、培养学生的阅读策略及自主阅读能力。
三步 阅读学习法	读前	有创意的读前活动是阅读课的导入关键，学生通过参与一些与课文话题相关的活动，激活了思维，从而产生阅读的愿望，并对课文进行有效的预测。
	读中	通过围绕 scanning，skimming 和 detailed reading 设置的一系列的活动，学生学会在阅读中思考，并逐步掌握一些阅读技巧，真正提高阅读水平。
	读后	阅读后的说和写活动是检查阅读理解效果和巩固运用语言材料的阶段。学生可通过复述、续写、缩写、改写、创写等读后活动，实现从语言输入到输出的迁移。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Module 1 Travel

词汇表听写

魔法六维导图

语言能力

听：听对话，学会获取信息（飞行航程和延迟起飞）。（Unit 1: Activity 2）

说：在讨论假期不同旅游经历的语境中整合自己的语言知识，学会如何有效表达和交流自己的假期经历：熟练掌握 Not bad! It was great fun! We'll have a great time! 等日常用语。（Unit 1: Activity 3）

读：能记住所学语段的关键词，用自己的语言复述剧本（Unit 2: Activity 2）；了解剧情发展及人物情感的升华并悟出道理——待人以善，行将更远。

写：学会如何写旅游经历类短剧或作文。

知识小集

高频单词
succeed ◂ 动词
flight, pilot, officer ◂ 名词
stupid ◂ 形容词
direct, exactly ◂ 副词

重点短语：because of // as long as // take care // take off

常考句型：
1. How about doing sth.?
2. Sb. had better do sth.
3. Sb. had quite a good time in...
4. 主句 + as long as 条件状语从句

模块语法：名词、冠词、数词

方法大观

听力技巧：巧用疑问词法（8 页）

阅读策略：推断主题法（13 页）

写作技法：“三步法”写旅游活动类作文（28 页）

解题方法：词义辨析法（6,7,14,15,16 页），寻找题眼法（6 页），语境法（238 页），排除法（7,15 页），同义句转换法（16 页），固定句式法（23 页），关键词法（24,238 页），语法分析法（27 页）

文化意识

通过对 Unit 1 Activity 3 的学习，了解不同地区的自然环境与文化，增强民族自豪感，激发爱国热情；通过对 Unit 2 Activity 2 的学习，能够养成乐于助人的优良品质。

英语思维

结合语境尝试用英语解释英语，培养用英语思考问题的能力。Unit 2 Activity 5 中的 Writing 可结合 Unit 2 短剧中的语言和情境结构进行仿写。

学习能力

观看有关春运的电影或视频，寻找发生在火车上的百姓故事；通过电视网络搜集交通工具方面的信息，了解中国发生的巨大变化。

记忆大师

Unit 1

必背单词

1. **flight** *n.* 航班；飞行→fly *v.* 飞行→flew（过去式）→flown（过去分词）
2. **direct** *adv.* 径直地；直接地→directly *adv.* 直接地
3. **succeed** *v.* 成功；做成→success *n.* 成功→successful *adj.* 成功的→successfully *adv.* 成功地
4. **exactly** *adv.* 确切地；完全；确实如此→exact *adj.* 准确的
5. **pilot** *n.* 飞行员

必背短语

6. be full of 充满
7. because of 因为，由于
8. on time 按时
9. at the end of 在……的末尾
10. worry about 担心
11. as long as 只要
12. look forward to 期望
13. a bit 有点儿

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

必背句子

14. Why is travel **so difficult in winter**?
为什么在冬季旅行如此困难?

15. **How about** you, Betty?
你呢，贝蒂?

16. But now, we'**d better get** back to work.
但是现在，我们最好回到学习中去。

17. There's **nothing to worry about** as long as you work hard.
只要你努力学习，没有什么好担心的。

Unit 2

必背单词

1. **sir** *n.* 先生；长官→ Mr（同义词）先生

2. **officer** *n.* 军官；官员；警察→ office *n.* 办公室

3. **stupid** *adj.* 笨的；糊涂的→ clever *adj.*（反义词）聪明的

4. **jacket** *n.* 短上衣；夹克

必背短语

5. say goodbye to 向……说再见

6. each other 互相

7. take care（告别用语）多保重

8. look for 寻找

9. go past 经过

10. talk to… 和……交谈

11. take off 脱去

12. get on 上车（船等）

13. have sth. ready 把某物准备好

14. wait a moment 等一下

必背句子

15. Let's **have a look at** your ticket.
咱们看看你的票吧。

16. **How stupid** of me!
我是多么糊涂啊!

17. That's very good **of** you.
你真是太好了。

18. **It's** great **to see** you.
见到你真开心。

Unit 3

必背短语

1. in time 及时

2. make sure 确保

3. the Whites 怀特一家人

4. see sb. off 给某人送行

5. be bad for 对……有害

必背句子

6. **How** wonderful!
太棒了!

7. —**How many** CDs have you got?
你有多少个光盘?
—Only **a few**.
只有几个。

8. It **took** him **some time**.
这花费了他一些时间。

9. It became **too** expensive **to continue** the service.
它变得太贵了，无法继续提供服务。

必背语法

10. **The flight** takes about thirteen hours.
这次飞行需要大约 13 个小时。

11. Some believed that **its noise** was bad for the environment, and that it could hurt **people's** ears.
一些人认为它的噪音对环境有害，而且它可能伤害人们的耳朵。

12. This is **Seat 12A**, but you should be in **Car 9**. This is **Car 8**.
这是座位 12A，但是你应该在 9 号车厢。这是 8 号车厢。

13. We took **a tour** by **coach** to **the Summer Palace**.
我们乘长途客车去颐和园游玩了。

I think success has no rules, but you can learn a lot from failure.
我认为成功没有定律，但你可从失败中学到很多东西。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 1 We toured the city by bus and by taxi.

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

Listening and vocabulary 听力与词汇

1 Complete the sentences so they are true for you. 根据你的真实情况完成句子。

1. I most like to travel by _____.
   我最喜欢乘 _____ 旅行。
2. I least like to travel by _____.
   我最不喜欢乘 _____ 旅行。
3. I travel most often by _____.
   我最经常乘 _____ 旅行。
4. I travel least often by _____.
   我最不经常乘 _____ 旅行。

2 Listen and complete the notes.

课文听力

听一听，完成笔记。

1. The flight/flaɪt/ takes about _____ hours.
   这次飞行花费大约 _____ 小时。
2. Time difference: _____ hours
   时差：_____ 小时
3. Flight number: _____
   航班号：_____
4. From _____ to _____
   从 _____ 到 _____
5. Leave at (new time): _____
   出发时间（新时间）：_____
6. Arrive at (new time): _____
   到达时间（新时间）：_____

3 Listen and read.

课文朗读

听一听，读一读。

Lingling: Welcome back, everyone! 欢迎大家回来！

Betty: Hi, Lingling! How was your holiday? 你好，玲玲！你假期过得怎么样？

Lingling: Not bad! I went to see my grandparents in Henan Province. The train was full of ① people, and I had to stand for over three hours!
不错！我去河南省看望我的祖父母了。火车里挤满了人，我不得不站了 3 个多小时！

Betty: Bad luck. Why is travel so difficult in winter? 真倒霉。为什么在冬季旅行如此困难？

Lingling: Well, it's the busiest season in China because ② /bɪ'kɔz ʌv/ of the Spring Festival. Where's Tony? 噢，因为春节，它（冬季）成了中国最繁忙的季节。托尼在哪儿？

Daming: He went to stay with his family in the UK. He's flying back today. But the flight is late. 他去英国和家人呆在一起了。他今天将乘飞机返回。但是航班晚点了。

Betty: Where did you go, Daming?
你去了哪里，大明？

Daming: We flew direct ③ /dɪ'rekt; daɪ'rekt/ to Hong Kong—and the plane left a bit ④ late too! But the pilot/'paɪlət/ succeeded ⑤ /sək'si:dɪd/ in landing on time. Then we took a boat to Lantau Island and went to Disneyland. It was great fun!
我们直飞香港——飞机起飞时也有点晚了！但是飞行员成功地按时着陆了。然后我们乘船去了大屿山，还去了迪斯尼乐园。有趣极了！

Lingling: How about you, Betty? 你呢，贝蒂？

Betty: We had quite ⑥ a good time in Beijing. We toured the city by bus and by taxi. Last weekend, we took a tour by coach to the Summer Palace and went for a long walk around the lake.
我们在北京玩得相当开心。我们乘公共汽车和出租车游览了这座城市。上周末，我们坐长途客车

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

游览了颐和园，并且围绕着湖步行了很长一段路。

Lingling: That sounds great! But now, we'd better get back to work. We're going to have a big exam at the end of ⑦ the term.
听起来不错！但是现在，我们最好回到学习上来。本学期末我们要有一次大型考试。

Betty: There's nothing to worry about as long as ⑧ /æz lɔŋ æz/ you work hard.
只要你努力学习，没有什么好担心的。

Daming: And after the exam, there's the school-leavers'/'skuːlˌliːvəz/ party. We're all looking forward to ⑨ it!
考试过后，有毕业生聚会。我们都在期待着它！

Betty: Exactly ⑩ /ɪg'zæktli/! We'll have a great time! 确实如此！我们会玩得很开心！

Everyday English 日常英语

- Not bad! 不错！
- It was great fun! 有趣极了！
- How about you? 你呢？
- We'd better get back to work.
  我们最好回到学习上来。
- We'll have a great time!
  我们会玩得很开心！

Now complete the table.
现在完成表格。

	Holiday activities 假期活动
Lingling 玲玲	went to see her grandparents in Henan Province by train 乘火车去河南省看望了她的祖父母
Tony 托尼	
Daming 大明	
Betty 贝蒂	

4 Answer the questions. 回答问题。

1. When do you think the conversation takes place? 你认为对话发生在什么时候？
2. According to Lingling, why is travel so difficult in winter?
   根据玲玲的说法，为什么在冬天旅行如此困难？
3. What are Daming and Betty looking forward to at the end of the term?
   大明和贝蒂在期待学期末的什么？

Learning to learn 学会学习

When you listen to the recording, try to note down the key information. Your notes will then help you retell the main information. 当你听录音时，尽力记下关键信息。你的笔记到时将有助于你复述主要信息。

5 Choose the correct answer.
选择正确的答案。

direct 径直地；直接地　exactly 确切地；完全
pilot 飞行员　succeed 成功；做成

1. When you fly *direct*, you _____.
   当你直飞时，你 _____。
   a) arrive without stopping at another place 不在另一个地方停就到达
   b) stop at another place before you arrive 在你到达前在另一个地方停下
2. When you say "*Exactly*", it means _____.
   当你说"确切地；完全"时，意思是 _____。
   a) you do not agree 你不同意
   b) you completely agree 你完全同意
3. The *pilot* of a plane _____.
   飞机的飞行员 _____。
   a) flies it 驾驶它
   b) gives you food and drink during the flight 在飞行期间给你食物和饮料
4. If you *succeed* in doing something, you _____.
   如果你成功地做了某事，你 _____。
   a) manage to do it 设法做成它
   b) nearly do it 将近做成它

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Pronunciation and speaking 发音与会话

6 Listen and mark the pauses. 听并标出停顿。

Lingling: How about you, Betty?

你呢，贝蒂？

Betty: We had quite a good time in Beijing. We toured the city by bus and by taxi. Last weekend, we took a tour by coach to the Summer Palace and went for a long walk around the lake.

我们在北京玩得很开心。我们坐公共汽车和出租车游览了这座城市。上周末，我们坐长途客车去颐和园旅游了，并且在湖周围走了很长一段路。

Lingling: That sounds great! But now, we'd better get back to work. We're going to have a big exam at the end of the term.

听起来不错！但是现在，我们最好回到学习上来。本学期末我们会有一次大型考试。

Now listen again and repeat.

现在再听一遍并跟读。

7 Work in groups. Talk about your winter holiday. 分组练习。谈论一下你的寒假。

· Ask and answer about what you did during the winter holiday.

询问并回答你在寒假做了什么。

—What did you do during the winter holiday? 你在寒假做了什么？

—I went to see my grandparents in Xi'an.

我去西安看望我的祖父母了。

· Talk about what happened during the trip.

谈论旅行期间发生了什么。

The train was full of people and I had to stand for three hours!

火车上挤满了人，我不得不站了 3 个小时！

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

·考点应用 ·考点批注

★The train was full of people, and I had to stand for over three hours!

① be full of 充满；装满

be full of 表示状态，相当于 be filled with。

e.g. The cup is full of tea. =The cup is filled with tea.

杯子里装满了茶。

fill...with... 意为"把……装满……"，表示动作。

考题在线 1 Life is _____ the unexpected. Whatever we do, try our best.

[烟台]

A. full of B. proud of C. instead of D. because of

点拨：考查 of 短语辨析。语境为："生活_____意想不到的事情……"，可将选项一一放入，即可知空白处应用短语"充满"。

★Well, it's the busiest season in China because of the Spring Festival.

② because of 因为；由于

辨析：because of 与 because

because of 介词短语，其后接名词、代词、动词 -ing 形式或 what 引导的从句；

because 连词，后跟句子，引导原因状语从句。

e.g. They can't come because of the bad weather.

(=They can't come because the weather is bad.)

由于天气不好，他们不能来了。

考题在线 2 —Did you have a sports meeting yesterday?

—No,we didn't. It was put off _____ the heavy rain.

A. instead of B. because of C. as for D. across from

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

点拨：用词义辨析法解题。instead of“代替；而不是”；because of“因为；由于”；as for“关于；至于”；across from“在……的对面”。句意：“你们昨天开运动会了吗？”“不，我们没有。因为大雨它被推迟了。”结合句意可知，大雨是运动会被推迟的原因。

direct 的用法
●作副词，意为“径直地；直接地”，相当于 directly。
●作形容词，意为“直接的；径直的”，其反义词为 indirect“间接的”。

★We flew direct to Hong Kong...

③ **direct** /daɪˈrekt/ *adv.* (without stopping or changing direction) 径直地；直接地

e.g. Can we fly direct to Chicago, or do we stop in Salt Lake City first?
我们是直飞芝加哥，还是要先在盐湖城停一下？
His death was a direct result of your action.
他的死是你的行为直接造成的后果。

考题在线 3 If your friend sends you a message to borrow money from you on the Internet, you'd better call him _____ first to make sure of that. [鄂州]
A. recently　　B. finally　　C. hardly　　D. directly
点拨：用词义辨析法解题。recently“最近”；finally“最后”；hardly“几乎不”；directly“直接地”。由从句“如果你的朋友在网上发信息向你借钱”可推知主句意为“你最好先直接给他打电话确认一下”。

④ **a bit** 有点儿

a bit 意为“稍微；有点儿”，常修饰形容词、副词的原级或比较级，相当于 a little。

e.g. It's a bit cold today. 今天有点冷。
He runs a bit faster than me.
他跑得比我快一点。



a bit 和 a little 在否定句中的意思恰恰相反，not a bit 相当于 not at all，意为“一点也不”；not a little 相当于 very，意为“非常”。

【重点】辨析 a bit 与 a little

a bit	后跟of才能修饰不可数名词。	在肯定句中修饰形容词、副词的原级或比较级时，可以互换使用。
a little	可直接修饰不可数名词。	

e.g. There is a bit of / a little water in the cup. 杯子里有一点水。



考题在线 4 Would you please give me _____ orange juice, Bill?
A. a bit　　B. a bit of　　C. a few　　D. little
点拨：用寻找题眼法。根据句中的不可数名词“juice”可排除 C 项，a few 修饰可数名词复数；little 与不可数名词连用表示“几乎没有”，与语境不符；a bit 后面接名词时需加 of。

★But the pilot succeeded in landing on time.

⑤ **succeed** /səkˈsiːd/ *v.* (to achieve sth. that you have been trying to do or get) 成功；做成　succeed in doing sth. 成功地做成某事

e.g. He succeeded in swimming across the river. 他成功地游过了那条河。
If you work hard, you will succeed. 如果你努力工作，你就会成功。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Guo Jingming's new book was a great success.
郭敬明的新书获得了巨大的成功。

He aims to be a successful writer.
他的目标是成为一个成功的作家。

At last he successfully solved the problem.
最后他成功地解决了这个问题。

★"成功"变形：
① succeed *vi.* 成功，做成
② success *n.* 成功
③ successful *adj.* 成功的
④ successfully *adv.* 成功地，圆满地

考题在线 5 根据句子意思，用括号内所给汉语提示填空

I believe I will _____ in passing the English exam.（成功） [扬州]

★We had quite a good time in Beijing.

⑥ **quite** /kwaɪt/ *adv.* 很；十分；相当

quite 为副词，修饰动词、形容词、副词等。

e.g. I'm afraid you're quite wrong. 恐怕你完全错了。
It is quite a hot day today. 今天天气很热。
It is a very hot day today. 今天天气很热。

辨析：quite 与 very
- quite "很，十分，相当"，quite+a/an+形容词+名词；
- very "很，十分，相当"，a+very+形容词+名词。

考题在线 6 这个女孩跑得相当快。

The girl runs _____ _____.

考题在线 7 My brother is _____ a clever boy.

A. quite　　B. very　　C. too　　D. so

★We're going to have a big exam at the end of the term.

⑦ **at the end of** 在……结束时；在……的尽头

e.g. We will have an exam at the end of this month.
本月末我们将有一次考试。
You'll find the hospital at the end of the road. 在路的尽头你会找到那家医院。

at the end of 后接表示时间或地点的词。

★ 带有 end 的常见短语：
① in the end 最后
② by the end of 到……时为止

考题在线 8 —How is your work going?
—It will be finished _____ the end of this week. We must be on time.

A. at　　B. in　　C. on

点拨：用排除法解题。能和 the end of 构成短语的介词有 at 和 by，据此排除 B、C 项。句意：——你们的工作进展如何？——这周末将会完成。我们一定要准时。

★There's nothing to worry about as long as you work hard.

⑧ **as long as** 只要

e.g. As long as you need me, I'll stay.
只要你需要我，我就留下。

敲黑板 as long as 还可意为"与……一样长"，用于表示同级比较。

as long as 意为"只要"，相当于 so long as，引导条件状语从句。

考题在线 9 Friends are like books. You don't need a lot of them _____ they are good. [青岛]

A. or　　B. and　　C. as long as　　D. as soon as

点拨：用词义辨析法解题。or "或者；否则"；and "并且"；as long as "只要"；as soon as "一……就……"。

荣德基
微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

★We're all looking forward to it!

⑨ **look forward to** 期待，盼望

look forward to 意为“期待，盼望”，其中 to 为介词，其后跟名词、代词或动词-ing形式作宾语。

e.g. The Spring Festival is coming. We're looking forward to it.

春节就要来了。我们期盼着它。

I'm looking forward to working with you.

我期盼着和你一起工作。

考题在线 10 —Do you have any plans for the holiday?

—Yes, I'm planning to travel to Jiuzhaigou. I'm looking forward to _____ the colourful lakes and amazing waterfalls. [南京]

A. see B. seeing C. sees D. saw

⑩ **exactly** *adv.* 确实如此，表示赞同对方的意见，**exactly** 还意为“确切地，完全”，常在句中作状语。

e.g. —We all hope to go to college.

我们都希望上大学。

—Exactly! 确实如此！

Tell me exactly where Mary lives.

确切地告诉我玛丽住在哪里。

His answer is exactly right.

他的回答完全正确。

Behind every successful man there's a lot of unsuccessful years.

每个成功者都经历过很多不成功的岁月。

考题在线答案 1. A 2. B 3. D 4. B 5. succeed 6. quite fast 7. A 8. A 9. C 10. B

敲黑板 提前看题，认真倾听，速记关键词！

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

(答案见238页)

听力技巧

巧用疑问词法（听力题目多是以问题形式进行设置的，因此关注问题中的疑问词如 what，where，how，when，who 会帮助解决该重点听哪些信息的问题，这样听起来就更有的放矢了。如此处的1-3题。）

听力过程

听教材 **Activity 2**，选择正确答案

课文听力

1. Where does the conversation take place?

A. At the hospital.

B. At the bus station.

C. At the airport.

2. According to the announcement, when will the plane leave?

A. At 8:30.

B. At 2:30.

C. At 11:30.

3. How long is the journey?

A. For about 8 hours.

B. For about 10 hours.

C. For about 5 hours.

4. Why was the flight put off?

A. Because of the heavy rain.

B. Because of the typhoon.

C. Not mentioned.

基德 微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

核心素养之文化意识

春运——中国特有的文化现象

◆春运，即春节运输，是中国在农历春节前后发生的一种大规模的高交通运输压力的现象。以春节为中心，共40天左右，每年农历腊月十五到次年正月廿五。在40天左右的时间里，有30多亿人次的人口流动，占世界人口（约70亿人）的3/7，相当于全国人民进行两次大迁移。中国春运入选世界纪录协会世界上最大的周期性运输高峰，创造了多项世界之最。

◆【素养行动】利用寒假时间和同学一起走进车站、机场、码头，了解震撼全球的中国春运，并写出春运调查报告及感想。

◆【素养行动结果】体会到了缔造世界上规模最大的人类迁徙的中国人只有一个愿望，那就是回家过年。"过大年"就好比是老祖宗写进咱中国人血液里的程序密码，时机一到，不用提醒，自动开启。

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础20分

（答案见238页）

一、根据句意及汉语提示写出单词

1. I'm going to be a _____（飞行员）when I grow up.
2. Those two colours are not _____（完全）the same.
3. Let's go _____（直接地）to the zoo tomorrow.
4. Be patient! We'll have a long-distance _____（飞行）.
5. Tom _____（成功）in passing the examination last week.

二、单项选择

6. She was crying _____ what he had said.
   A. instead of　　B. because of
   C. as for　　D. such as
7. —WeChat really influences people's life.
   —_____. It is easier for us to keep in touch with others. [泰州]
   A. Mainly　　B. Exactly
   C. Simply　　D. Mostly
8. This is _____ problems for us.
   A. quite difficult a　　B. quite a difficult
   C. more difficult a　　D. very difficult a
9. I'm _____ thirsty. Would you like to give me some water? 【导学号：7764826】
   A. a few　　B. a bit of
   C. a bit　　D. a little of
10. —I'm going to Disneyland in Shanghai next month.
    —_____. There are many wonderful things to see and to do there. [镇江]
    A. That's all right　　B. Have a good time
    C. Good luck　　D. I hope so

三、根据汉语意思完成句子

11. 你最好不要熬夜，熬夜有害健康。 [宿迁]
    You _____ _____ _____ stay up late, it's harmful to your health.
12. 孩子们总是盼望着春节。 [广州]
    Children always _____ _____ _____ the Spring Festival.
13. 只要不下雨，我们就可以去。
    _____ _____ _____ it doesn't rain, we can go.
14. 在街道的尽头有家邮局。
    There is a post office _____ _____ _____ _____ the street.
15. ——天气多么糟糕啊！要下雨了！
    ——真倒霉！我们今天不能去爬山了。
    —What bad weather! It's raining!
    —_____ _____! We can't go climbing today.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 2 It's a long story.

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文及导读

导读批注

批背景：

- Who
  - Li Lin, Li Wei, the elderly man, the ticket officer, Wen Peng
- Where: on the station platform; on the train
- When
  - Li Lin says goodbye to his sister Li Wei.
  - Li Lin gets on the train.
  - Wen Peng sees Li Lin.
- How: by train

拟标题：

A story full of love 一个充满爱的故事

原文译文 · 导读

Reading and vocabulary 阅读和词汇

Pre-reading（读前）

Qs: 1. Have you ever visited any places by train?
2. Do you have any stories to share with us?

1 Look at the expressions from the play in Activity 2. What do you think the play will be about?

看选自活动 2 中戏剧的表达。你认为这部戏剧会是关于什么的?

□1. …gets up and starts to… ……起床并开始……

□2. …looks for his ticket… ……寻找他的票……

□3. …goes past people… ……经过人群……

□4. …gets on the train… ……上火车……

课文朗读

2 Read the play and number the expressions in Activity 1 in the order they appear.

朗读这部戏剧，将活动 1 中出现的表达按照它们出现的顺序标上序号。

While-reading（读中）

Qs: 1. What happened on the station platform?
2. What happened in Car 8 of the train?

(Li Lin and Li Wei are on the station platform, saying goodbye to each other.)（李林和李伟在车站站台上互相道别。）

❶ **Li Lin:** Tell Mum and Dad I'll miss them...I'll miss you all.
告诉妈妈和爸爸，我会想念他们……我会想念你们所有人。

❷ **Li Wei:** And we'll miss you too. 我们也会想你。

❸ **Li Lin:** See you at the Spring Festival. 春节再见。

❹ **Li Wei:** Take care① /teik kɛə/. Bye! 保重。再见!

(Li Lin gets on② the train and looks for his seat.)（李林上了火车寻找他的座位。）

❺ **Li Lin:** Excuse me, sir/sə(r); sɜ:(r)/. I'm afraid③ you're sitting in my seat.
打扰了，先生。恐怕你正坐在我的座位上。

❻ **Elderly man:** I'm sorry, young man. What did you say? I can't hear very well. 对不起，年轻人。你说什么？我听不太清楚。

❼ **Li Lin:** You've taken the wrong seat. 你坐错座位了。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

⑧ **Elderly man:** Really? But...I thought it was my seat. Where's my ticket?
真的吗？但是……我以为这是我的座位。我的票在哪儿呢？

(The elderly man looks for his ticket in his pocket, his bag and finally in his wallet.)（那位老人在他的口袋里、包里寻找他的票，最后在他的钱包里找到了。）

⑨ **Elderly man:** Here it is. Car 9, Seat 12A. This is Seat 12A, isn't it?
在这里。9 号车厢，12A 座。这是 12A 座，不是吗？

(The ticket officer/'ɒfɪsə(r)/ arrives.)（检票员来了。）

⑩ **Ticket officer:** Tickets, please. Please have your tickets ready.
请出示车票。请大家准备好车票。

⑪ **Elderly man:** Excuse me, is this Seat 12A? 打扰了，这是 12A 座吗？

⑫ **Ticket officer:** Yes, it is. Let's have a look at your ticket. Oh, I see the problem. This is Seat 12A, but you should be in Car 9. This is Car 8.
是的，它是。咱们看看你的票吧。哦，我明白怎么回事了。这是 12A 座，但你应该在 9 号车厢。这是 8 号车厢。

⑬ **Elderly man:** Oh, how stupid/'stju:pɪd/ of me![1] I'd better go and find Car 9.
噢，我是多么糊涂啊！我最好去找 9 号车厢。

(The elderly man gets up and starts to collect his bags.)（老人起来开始收拾他的包。）

⑭ **Li Lin:** Wait a moment, sir! Please stay here. I'll take your seat in Car 9.
等一下，先生！请呆在这里吧。我去 9 号车厢坐你的座位。

⑮ **Elderly man:** Well, that's very good of you. Thank you.
嗯，你真是太好了。谢谢你。

⑯ **Ticket officer:** Yes, thank you, young man. 是的，谢谢你，年轻人。

(Li Lin goes past people standing in the train to Car 9.)

（李林穿过火车上站着的人群朝 9 号车厢走去。）

⑰ **Li Lin:** 10A...11A...12A, here it is. That's my seat.
10A……11A……12A，在这儿。那是我的座位。

(His friend, Wen Peng, is sitting in Seat 12B. He is surprised[5] to see Li Lin.)

（他的朋友，文朋，正坐在 12B 座上。他看见李林感到很惊讶。）

⑱ **Wen Peng:** Hi, Li Lin! What a surprise! 嗨，李林！真是令人惊讶啊！

⑲ **Li Lin:** Hey, Wen Peng! It's great to see you. 嘿，文朋！见到你真开心。

⑳ **Wen Peng:** Great to see you too. Wonderful! I'll have someone to talk to on the long journey. Now, take off[6] /teɪk ɔf/ your jacket/'dʒækɪt/. Sit down and make[7] yourself comfortable. But why are you so late?
见到你我也很开心。太好了！我在漫长的旅途中能有人聊天了。现在，脱下你的夹克衫。坐下，别拘束。但你为什么这么晚呢？

㉑ **Li Lin:** Oh, it's a long story... 哦，说来话长……

Post-reading（读后）

写作小练笔 ☞（答案见 28 页）

批 句子赏析：

文中括号中的内容为舞台指示，是以剧作者的口气来写的叙述性的文字说明，将剧情有效地串联了起来，起了穿针引线的作用。

批 事件：

① Li Lin and Li Wei are saying goodbye.
↓
② Li Lin gets on the train and...
↓
③ The elderly man looks for his ticket.
↓
④ The ticket officer arrives.
↓
⑤ The elderly man gets up and starts...
↓
⑥ Li Lin goes past people...to Car 9.
↓
⑦ Li Lin sees his friend Wen Peng.

来德基
微信公众号
教辅资料站

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

3 Choose the correct answer. 选择正确的答案。

1. Where are Li Lin and Li Wei? 李林和李伟在哪里?

a) They are at home. 他们在家。　　b) They are at the railway station. 他们在火车站。

c) They are on the train. 他们在火车上。　　d) They are in a car. 他们在汽车里。

2. Who is Li Wei? 李伟是谁?

a) She is Li Lin's sister. 她是李林的姐姐。　　b) She is Li Lin's friend. 她是李林的朋友。

c) He is Li Lin's father. 他是李林的父亲。　　d) He is Li Lin's classmate. 他是李林的同班同学。

3. Why is the elderly man sitting in Li Lin's seat? 那位老人为什么正坐在李林的座位上?

a) Because he did not buy a ticket. 因为他没有买票。

b) Because he is too tired to move. 因为他太累而走不动了。

c) Because he thinks it is his seat. 因为他认为那是他的座位。

d) Because he cannot find his seat. 因为他找不到他的座位。

4. What does the elderly man want to do? 那位老人想干什么?

a) Take the seat. 就座。　　b) Go and find Car 9. 去找 9 号车厢。

c) Change seats with Li Lin. 和李林换座。　　d) Buy another ticket. 再买一张票。

5. What does Li Lin decide to do? 李林决定干什么?

a) Take the seat from the elderly man. 坐那位老人的座。

b) Ask the ticket officer for help. 向检票员寻求帮助。

c) Change seats with the elderly man. 和那位老人换座。

d) Get off the train. 下火车。

6. Who does Li Lin meet in Car 9? 李林在 9 号车厢遇见了谁?

a) Li Wei. 李伟。　　b) Another elderly man. 另一位老人。

c) His friend. 他的朋友。　　d) His classmate. 他的同班同学。

4 Complete the passage with the words and expressions in the box. 用方框中的单词和短语完成文章。

afraid 害怕的	miss 想念	officer 军官；官员；警察
sir 先生	take care 小心	take off 脱下

Li Lin says goodbye to his sister Li Wei. Li Lin says that he will (1) _____ his family, and Li Wei tells him to (2) _____. When Li Lin gets on the train, he sees an elderly man sitting in his seat. He politely calls the elderly man (3) _____ and says he is (4) _____ the elderly man is sitting in his seat. The ticket (5) _____ arrives and explains the mistake. Li Lin kindly offers to change seats with the elderly man, and goes to Car 9. There he sees his friend Wen Peng, who is happy to see him and tells him to (6) _____ his jacket, sit down and make himself comfortable. 李林告别了姐姐李伟。李林说他会 (1) _____他的家人，李伟告诉他要 (2) _____。当李林上了火车，他看见一位老人正坐在他的座位上。他有礼貌地叫老人 (3) _____并说他 (4) _____老人正坐着他的座位。票 (5) _____到了并解释了错误。李林友好地主动提出与老人换座位并去了 9 号车厢。在那儿他看见了他的朋友文朋，文朋见到他很开心并告诉他 (6) _____他的夹克衫，坐下，别拘束。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Writing 写作

5 Write a short play about a trip you have made. Think about:

写一个关于你的一次旅行的短剧。想一想：

- when and where you went 你何时去了何地
- who travelled with you 谁和你一起旅游了
- how the story ended 故事是如何结尾的
- how you travelled 你是怎样旅游的
- what happened during the trip 旅行期间发生了什么

Now write the play. 现在写这个戏剧。

课文背诵指南



Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练 专攻中考阅读 60分

☞(答案见238页)

阅读策略

推断主题法(在做主旨大意题时，应根据文章的内容和逻辑关系，做出符合原文的归纳、概括或评价，从而得到最佳答案。)

阅读过程

拓展阅读

一、速读本课短剧，选择正确答案

1. ⊙ What can we learn from the play? _____

(主旨大意题)

A. It is never too late to learn.

B. All roads lead to Rome.

C. Practice makes perfect.

D. Little kindness goes a long way.

二、细读本课短剧，完成下列题目

2. What is the correct order in which these events happen? _____ (细节查找题)

a. gets on the train

b. looks for his ticket

c. gets up and starts to collect his bags

d. goes past people

A. a-b-c-d B. b-d-c-a

C. c-b-d-a D. d-b-c-a

3. How many plots (情节) can the play be divided into according to the places? Where are they?

(细节查找题)

_____

4. Who leaves Car 8 for Car 9 at last?

(细节查找题)

_____

5. Li Lin is such a person EXCEPT _____.

(细节归纳题)

A. helpful B. kind

C. polite D. brave

☞温馨提示：本书中此板块带⊙的题均运用"阅读策略"中的方法。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用 •考点批注

take care 还有“当心，小心”的意思。可单独使用，也可以后跟动词不定式或 that 从句，相当于 be careful。

★Take care.

敲黑板 take care of 意为“照顾”，其同义词组为 look after。

① **take care**（告别用语）多保重

e.g. Take care! The bus is coming.
当心！公共汽车来了。
Take care not to go across the road alone.
注意不要单独过马路。

考题在线 1 My mother is ill. I have to _____ her in the hospital after class.
A. look for B. look up C. take care of D. take care

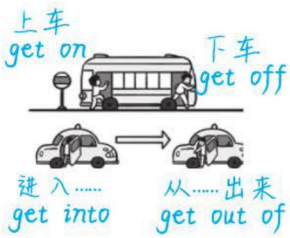
点拨：用词义辨析法解题。look for“寻找”；look up“查阅”；take care of“照顾”；take care“小心”。由“我妈妈病了。”可知空格处需用“照顾”。

★各种“小心”：
- Look out!
- Watch out!
- Watch it!
- Be careful!

★Li Lin gets on the train and looks for his seat.

② **get on** 上车（船等）

e.g. Let's get on the bus! 咱们上车吧！



- get 短语小结
  - get up 起床，起来
  - get to 到达
  - get together 相聚，聚会
  - get ready for 为……作准备
  - get married 结婚
  - get back 回来
  - get over 克服
  - get on/along well with sb.和某人相处融洽

考题在线 2 The bus is coming. Oh, my God! It's full. I'm afraid we can't _____ it. [乐山]
A. get up B. get on C. get off

★I'm afraid you're sitting in my seat.

③ **be afraid** 恐怕

e.g. I'm afraid you can't smoke here. 恐怕你不能在这儿抽烟。

【重点】be afraid 的用法：

- be afraid
  - of sth./doing sth. 害怕/担心某事/做某事。
  - to do sth. 由于害怕而不敢做某事。
  - (that) 从句 意为“恐怕”，常表示委婉语气，that可省略。



考题在线 3 Are you afraid of _____ (go) out alone at night?

★Oh, how stupid of me!

敲黑板 stupid 属于描述人的特征的形容词，所以其后用 of。此类形容词还有 foolish,kind,nice 等。

④ 本句是一个省略句，其完整形式为 **“Oh, how stupid it was of me to take your seat!”**。

感叹句
- what 引导：What +形容词+不可数名词/可数名词的复数形式+主语+谓语+其他！
  What +a/an+形容词+可数名词的单数形式+主语+谓语+其他！
- how 引导：How+形容词/副词+主语+谓语+其他！

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

e.g. What fine weather it is! 多好的天气啊！

What a tall girl she is! 她是多么高的一位女孩啊！

How fast he runs! 他跑得多快啊！

考题在线 4 _____ wonderful *The Reader* is! Many people enjoy the TV program. [天水]

A. What　　B. How a

C. How　　D. What a

点拨：用排除法解题。感叹句由 what 或 how 引导，what 后跟被强调的名词（短语）；how 后跟被强调的形容词或副词。这里强调的是形容词 wonderful，故排除 A、B、D 项，用 how 引导感叹句。

考题在线 5 _____ exciting news it is! 3D-printed houses will come out! [黄石]

A. What　　B. What an　　C. How　　D. How an

速记小筏：

巧记：陈述句变感叹句方法——一断二加三换

“一断”即在谓语后面断开。

“二加”即在第二部分前加上 what 或 how。

“三换”即把第一部分和第二部分互换位置，句号换成感叹号，注意句中有关单词的首字母的大小写。

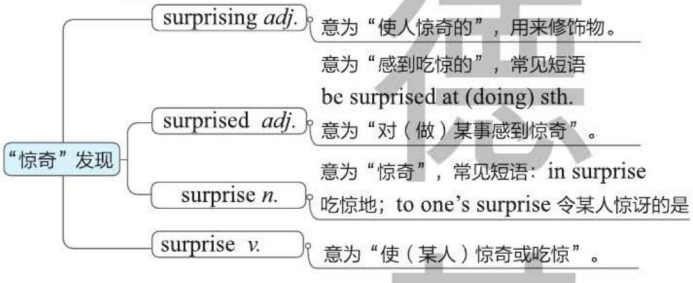
★He is surprised to see Li Lin.

⑤ **surprised** /sə'praɪzd/ *adj.* 感到惊讶的；感觉意外的

e.g. I was surprised to see Mary there. I thought she was still abroad.

在那儿见到玛丽我很惊讶。我以为她还在国外。surprised 常作表语，主语一般为人。

【重点】辨析：surprising, surprised 与 surprise



一语辨异：

To my surprise, my father was surprised at the surprising news.

使我感到惊奇的是，我父亲对这个令人震惊的消息感到惊讶不止。

考题在线 6 The fans were _____ to know the death of their favorite singing star Whitney Houston. [东营]

A. glad　　B. angry　　C. excited　　D. surprised

点拨：用词义辨析法解题。句意：粉丝们对他们最喜爱的歌星惠特尼·休斯顿的去世感到惊讶。glad“高兴的”；angry“生气的”；excited“兴奋的”；surprised“惊讶的”。

★Now, take off your jacket.

take off 意为“脱去”，是“动词+副词”结构的短语，人称代词作宾语时，须放在 take 和 off 中间。其反义词组为 put on“穿上”。

⑥ **take off** 脱去

e.g. Take off your black coat and put on the red one.

脱下你的黑色外套，穿上那件红色的。

The plane will take off soon.

飞机很快就会起飞。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

take off 的不同含义：



脱掉



起飞

考题在线 7 It's getting hot; you can _____ your coat. [河池改编]

A. put off B. take off

C. set off D. get off

点拨：用词义辨析法解题。句意：天气正变得很炎热。你可以脱掉你的外套。put off 意为“推迟”；take off “脱掉；（飞机）起飞”；set off “动身；出发”；get off “下车”。由“getting hot”可知应该是“把外套脱掉”。

★Sit down and make yourself comfortable.

⑦ 使役动词 make 的用法

敲黑板 一定记住 make sb. do sth. 中的 do 改为被动语态时要加上 to！

make 的其他结构：

- make
  - make+宾语+省略to的动词不定式 } 使……做某事
  - make+宾语+名词 } 使……成为……
  - make+宾语+过去分词 } 使……被……

e.g. The news made him very happy.

这则消息使他非常高兴。

The boss made the workers work long hours.

老板让工人们长时间工作。

We made him our monitor.

我们选了他当我们的班长。

He raised his voice in order to make himself heard.

他提高嗓门为的是使大家能听清楚他的话。

“make sb.+形容词”意为“使某人……”，是“make+宾语+宾语补足语”结构，形容词在此作宾语补足语，make 是使役动词，意为“使，让”。

考题在线 8 Kids like reading stories which can make them _____.

[哈尔滨]

A. laugh B. to laugh C. laughing

★Because he is too tired to move.

⑧ too...to... 太……（以至于）不能……，too...to... 中 too 是副词，后跟形容词或副词；to 是动词不定式符号，后跟动词原形。

e.g. She is too young to go to school.

(=She is so young that she can't go to school.

=She is not old enough to go to school.) 她太小了，还不能上学。

① too...to... 结构可与 so...that... 结构进行同义转换，但 that 引导的结果状语从句要用否定式；

② too...to... 结构可与 not...enough to... 结构进行转换，但 not 后面的形容词是 too 后形容词的反义词。

考题在线 9 It's not _____ to be friendly. You have to be a friend. Go and talk to Sam. [无锡]

A. good enough B. late enough C. too good D. too late

考题在线 10 Jenny was too excited to express herself clearly.（改为复合句）

Jenny was _____ excited _____ she couldn't express herself clearly. [天水改编]

点拨：用同义句转换法解题。原句包含了一个关键结构“too ... to ...”，意为“太……而不能……”，与之同义的结构可填“so ... that ...”，意为“如此……以至于……”。句意：珍妮太激动了，以至于她难以清楚地表达自己（的想法）。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★ **Li Lin kindly offers to change seats with the elderly man, and goes to Car 9.**

⑨ **offer** *v.* 主动提出；提供

e.g. Jack offered to help me with my English. 杰克主动提出帮我学英语。

He offered us some useful advice. =He offered some useful advice to us. 他向我们提供了一些有用的建议。

The host offered some delicious food during their stay. 主人在他们停留期间提供了一些美味的食物。

★ offer 用法：
① offer to do sth. 主动提出做某事
② offer sb. sth.= offer sth. to sb. 提供某人某物
③ offer sth. 提供某物；给予某物

考题在线 11 —Why did you leave that position?

—I _____ a better position in another factory. [包头]

A. offer B. offered C. am offered D. was offered

考题在线答案 1. C 2. B 3. going 4. C 5. A 6. D 7. B 8. A 9. D 10. so; that 11. D

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

☞(答案见238页)

一、根据句意及汉语提示写出单词

1. Lucy, drink tea and make yourself _____ (舒服的).
2. His father is a young _____ (军官).
3. It's very _____ (笨的，糊涂的) of you to do such a terrible thing.
4. I'm _____ (惊讶的) to learn that he didn't come.
5. It's a good idea to give your father a _____ (夹克衫) as a gift on June 19, Father's Day.

二、单项选择

6. We should be kind to the old and take care _____ them in daily life. [济宁]

A. of B. for C. with D. about

7. I wanted to see the Beijing Opera, so Lingling offered _____ me to watch an opera.

A. took B. takes C. to take D. taking

8. Don't be afraid _____ mistakes in public.

A. to making B. of make

C. make D. of making

9. _____ special classes we had! We have learned a lot about paper cutting. [青岛]

A. What B. What a

C. How a D. How

10. You're supposed to _____ your shoes before you enter the room. [南充]

A. take off B. put off

C. get off D. turn off

三、根据汉语意思完成句子

11. 小心！不要往窗外看！

_____ care! _____ look out _____ the window!

12. 当我上公交车时，我看见了我的老师坐在座位上。

When I _____ _____ the bus, I saw my teacher sitting in the seat.

13. 对中国学生来说，讲好英语是困难的。

_____ difficult _____ Chinese students _____ _____ English well.

14. 她年龄太小了，不能出国。

She is _____ young _____ go abroad.

15. 我刚才看见她正在打扫教室。

I _____ her _____ the classroom just now.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 3 Language in use

I. 课文原文、译文

Language practice 语言练习

He went to stay with his family in **the UK**.
他去英国和他的家人呆在一起了。
Why is **travel** so difficult in **winter**?
为什么在冬天旅行如此困难?
We flew direct to **Hong Kong**.
我们直飞香港。
We took **a tour** by **coach** to **the Summer Palace.**
我们乘长途客车去颐和园游玩了。
Then we took **a boat** to **Lantau Island** and went to **Disneyland**.
然后，我们乘船去了大屿山，还去了迪斯尼乐园。
This is **Seat 12A**, but you should be in **Car 9**. This is **Car 8**.
这是12A座，但是你应该在9号车厢。这是8号车厢。

1 Complete the conversation with *a*, *an*, *the* or zero article where necessary.
在需要的地方用a、an、the或零冠词完成对话。

A: I'm really looking forward to (1) _____ summer holiday. We're taking (2) _____ trip to (3) _____ Paris!
我真的期待(1)_____暑假。我们要去(2)_____巴黎(3)_____旅游!

B: How wonderful! It's (4) _____ interesting and beautiful city. How long will (5) _____ flight take?
太棒了! 它是(4)_____有趣和美丽的城市。(5)_____飞行将花费多长时间?

A: The flight takes about (6) _____ hour. When we arrive, we will get to our hotel by (7) _____ bus. (8) _____ hotel is right in (9) _____ centre of (10) _____ city, so we can visit all the famous places. 飞行花费大约(6)_____小时。当我们到达时，我们将乘(7)_____公共汽车到达我们的旅馆。(8)_____旅馆正好在(10)_____城市的(9)_____中心，所以我们可以参观所有著名的地方。

B: Are you planning to visit (11) _____ Louvre Museum? 你们计划参观(11)_____卢浮宫博物馆吗?

A: Yes, we are.
是的，我们是（计划去）。

2 Underline the correct words.
在正确的词下面画线。

1. Children have to go to school/the school when they are six years old.
当孩子们六岁时，他们必须上学。
2. I'm a teacher at school/the school on the corner.
我是拐角处学校的老师。
3. He's got a lovely garden. Flowers /The flowers in it are really beautiful.
他有一个美丽的花园。里面的花真的很漂亮。
4. Make sure ① you get to the airport in time ②/in the time for your plane.
确保你及时到达机场赶上飞机。
5. —How many CDs have you got?
——你有多少个光盘?
—Only few/a few.
——只有几个。
6. That's most/the most interesting news I've heard for a long time.
那是我很长时间以来听过的最有趣的新闻。
7. How long have Whites/the Whites ③ lived here?
怀特一家人住在这儿多长时间了?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

3 Complete the sentences with the words in the box. 用方框中的单词完成句子。

flight 航班	landed 着陆	ready 准备好
seat 座位	station 车站	tour 游览

1. She had an important meeting that afternoon, so she had to take an earlier _____.
因为那天下午她有一个重要的会议，所以她不得不乘坐早一点儿的_____。
2. Please take your _____.
请坐你的_____。
3. Sam went with Jane to the railway _____ to see her off. 萨姆和简一起去了火车_____是为了给她送行。
4. It is wonderful to _____ the streets of the city. _____城市街道是很棒的。
5. Flight KA846 from Hong Kong _____ five minutes ago. 五分钟前来自香港的KA846次航班_____。
6. "Please have your tickets _____." said the ticket officer.
检票员说："请_____你们的票。"

4 Complete the sentences with the expressions in the box.
用方框中的短语完成句子。

As long as 只要	because of 因为
full of 装满	looking forward to 期待
make yourself comfortable 别拘束	

1. They will not arrive on time _____ the bad weather.
他们不会按时到达_____糟糕的天气。
2. Everyone in China is _____ seeing their family members during the Spring Festival.
在春节期间，在中国的每个人都_____见到他们的家人。
3. Lie down on your bed and _____.
在你的床上躺下并_____。
4. The journey was _____ exciting experiences.
旅行_____令人兴奋的经历。
5. _____ you can come by six, I will be here.
_____到六点你能来，我就会在这里。

5 Listen and complete the notes.
听并完成笔记。

课文听力

London to Sydney 伦敦到悉尼

- London–Hong Kong: _____ hour(s)
  伦敦→香港：_____小时
- Hong Kong–Sydney: _____ hour(s)
  香港→悉尼：_____小时
- From airport to centre of Hong Kong: _____ hour(s)
  从飞机场到香港中心：_____小时
- Price of flight: £ _____
  飞机票价：_____英镑
- Price of flight and hotel: £ _____
  飞机票及旅馆的总价：_____英镑

Sydney to London 悉尼到伦敦

- Sydney–London: _____ hour(s)
  悉尼→伦敦：_____小时
- Price of flight: £ _____
  飞机票价：_____英镑
- Price of flight and hotel near airport: £ _____
  飞机票及机场附近旅馆的总价：_____英镑
- From airport to centre of Sydney: _____ kilometres
  从机场到悉尼中心：_____公里

6 Work in pairs. Look at the notes you have made in Activity 5. Talk about:
结对练习。看看活动5中你做的笔记。谈论一下：
- Which flight takes a longer time?

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

哪一个航班花费的时间更长?

· Which flight is more expensive?
哪一个航班更贵?

7 Read the passage and complete the table.
读文章并完成表格。

课文朗读

Concorde could carry one hundred passengers and flew faster than the speed of sound. Many people think Concorde was one of the greatest planes. But now Concorde is just part of history.

协和式飞机能运载 100 名乘客，飞行速度超过了声速。许多人认为协和式飞机是最棒的飞机之一。但是现在协和式飞机只是历史的一部分。

For twenty-seven years, passengers travelled across ④ the Atlantic Ocean on this plane. Most of them were businesspeople, film stars, rock stars and sports heroes. Flying at more than twice ⑤ the speed of sound, Concorde took people from London or Paris to New York in just over three hours.

27 年以来，乘客们搭乘这种飞机横跨大西洋。他们中大部分人是商人、影星、摇滚歌星和体育英雄。由于飞行速度是声速的两倍多，所以协和式飞机从伦敦或巴黎到纽约只需要 3 个多小时。

The invention of Concorde was a huge step forward. The plane was like a time machine. If Concorde left London at 10:30 am, it arrived in New York at about 8:30 am (1:30 pm London time) the same day.

协和式飞机的发明是向前巨大的一步。这种飞机就像一个时间机器。如果协和式飞机在上午 10:30 离开伦敦，那么它在同一天上午大约 8:30(伦敦时间下午 1:30) 就能到达纽约。

However, the plane had many problems. It was very noisy. Some believed that its noise was bad for ⑥ the environment, and that it could hurt people's ears. In a terrible accident in 2000, near Paris, 113 people died, and after that fewer people wanted to fly on Concorde. It became too expensive to continue the service. At the end of October 2003, Concorde stopped flying.

然而，这种飞机存在许多问题。它噪音很大。有些人认为它的噪音对环境有害，并且它能对人的耳朵造成伤害。2000 年，在靠近巴黎的一次可怕的意外事故中，113 人死亡，从那以后，很少有人想乘坐协和式飞机。它变得太贵了，无法继续提供服务。在 2003 年 10 月底，协和式飞机停止了飞行。

Advantage of Concorde 协和式飞机的优点	Disadvantage of Concorde 协和式飞机的缺点

8 Read the passage again and answer the questions. 再读一遍文章并回答问题。

1. How many passengers could Concorde carry? 协和式飞机能运载多少乘客?
2. Why do many people think Concorde was one of the greatest planes?
为什么许多人认为协和式飞机是最棒的飞机之一?
3. How many hours did Concorde take to fly from London or Paris to New York?
协和式飞机从伦敦或巴黎飞往纽约花费多少小时?

9 Work in pairs. Talk about your recent travel experience. Say:
结对练习。谈论你近来的旅游经历。说一说：

· how you travelled 旅行方式
· how long the journey took
旅行花费多长时间
· how you felt about it 旅行感受

Now write a passage about your experience.
现在写一篇关于你的经历的文章。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Around the world 世界各地

The first pilot to fly alone across the Atlantic Ocean

第一位独自飞越大西洋的飞行员

In 1919, a pilot named Charles Lindbergh from St Louis, the US, decided to try to fly from New York to Paris. It took him some time ①, but eventually he developed the right plane. In April 1927 his plane, *Spirit of St Louis*, was completed. It was three metres high and weighed 975 kilos.1919 年，美国圣路易斯的一位名叫查尔斯·林德伯格的飞行员决定设法从纽约飞到巴黎。这花费了他一些时间，但最终他研制出了合适的飞机。1927 年 4 月，他的飞机“圣路易斯精神”号完成了。它高 3 米，重达 975 千克。

Lindbergh took off from New York on 20th May 1927. He flew for about thirty-three hours over 5,800 kilometres through freezing weather and fog. He had no sleep, but when he arrived in Paris, he was very happy. He was the first person to fly alone across the Atlantic Ocean without stopping. He became a hero in the US and in France.1927 年 5 月 20 日，林德伯格从纽约起飞。他飞行了大约 33 个小时，穿过冰冷的天气和雾，飞行了 5 800 多千米。他没有睡觉，但当他到达巴黎时，他很高兴。他是第一个没有停下来而独自飞越大西洋的人。他成为了美国和法国的英雄。

Module task 模块任务：

Writing and acting out a short play 写并表演一个短剧

10 **Work in groups. Find a news story about a good deed and turn it into a short play. Decide:**

分组练习。找出一篇关于善行的新闻故事并把它变成一个短剧。决定：

· the characters 人物角色　· the place and time 地点和时间　· the plot 情节

Now write the play. 现在写戏剧。

11 **Decide who will play each character.** 决定谁扮演每个角色。

12 **Act out the play to the whole class.** 向全班同学表演这个戏剧。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

·考点应用　·考点批注

★**Make sure you get to the airport in time for your plane.**

① **make sure 确保；查明，弄清楚**

make sure 常用于祈使句，后接 that 从句或 of 短语。

e.g. Make sure that you come on time for the meeting.

确保你按时来参加会议。

考题在线 1 Ann is a careful girl. She always goes over her exercises to _____ there are no mistakes.

A. look for　B. make sure

C. find out　D. think about

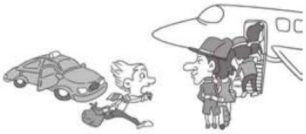
② **in time 及时**

in time 指正赶上或恰好在需要的时候。

e.g. She arrived in time for the underground.

她及时赶上了地铁。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料



in time　　on time

考题在线 2 Hurry if you want to be _____ for the beginning of the movie. [无锡]

A. at times　　B. in time

C. all the time　　D. from time to time

★**How long have the Whites lived here?**

③ **the Whites** 怀特一家人 "the +姓氏名词的复数"表示"……一家人"，作主语，谓语动词要用复数形式。

e.g. Are the Browns watering the flowers in the garden?

布朗一家人正在花园里浇花吗?

考题在线 3 用括号内用所给词的适当形式填空。

Look! The Browns _____ (eat) supper in the kitchen. [鄂州]



go through the tunnel



jump over the fence



run across the road /cross the road

★**For twenty-seven years, passengers travelled across the Atlantic Ocean on this plane.**

④ **across** /əˈkrɒs/ *prep.* (from one side to the other side of sth.) 穿过

e.g. The river is too deep; we can't walk across it.

这条河太深了，我们不能走过去。

辨析: across，through 与 over

across	*prep.*	表示动作是在某一物体表面进行，意为"横过"，含义与"on"有关。常与 walk，go，run，fly 等词连用。
through	*prep.*	表示动作发生在立体空间，是从物体内部穿过。含义与"in"有关。
over	*prep.*	翻越，指越过一段距离或度过一段时间。

考题在线 4 根据句子意思，用括号中所给英语单词的适当形式填空。

Alice stood up and ran _____ the field after the rabbit. (cross) [扬州]

★**Flying at more than twice the speed of sound...**

⑤ 倍数表达法

在英语中，用倍数表示相比较的两者之间的差异程度时，常用下列结构：

倍数 + 形容词或副词比较级 +than

倍数 +as+ 形容词或副词原级 +as

倍数 +the size (height, length...) +of

e.g. This dictionary is exactly five times more expensive than that one. 这本词典比那本恰好贵 5 倍。

This tree is three times as tall as that one.

这棵树是那棵树的 3 倍高。

The new square is four times the size of the old one.

新广场是旧广场的四倍大。

考题在线 5 John is 180 centimeters tall, and his daughter is 90 centimeters tall. So he is twice _____ she.

A. so tall as　　B. as tall as

C. much taller than　　D. less than

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

★Some believed that its noise was bad for the environment.

"对……有害"的表达：
be bad for
do harm to
be harmful to

⑥ be bad for 对……有害

e.g. Watching TV for a long time is bad for your eyes.
长时间看电视对你的眼睛有害。

Reading in bed does harm to your eyes. 在床上看书对你的眼睛有害。

Playing computer games for a long time is harmful to you.
长时间玩电脑游戏对你有害。

考题在线 6 —I want to watch TV the whole day after the long journey.
—You shouldn't watch TV too much. It's bad _____ your eyes. [滨州]

A. on B. in C. for D. with

★It took him some time…

⑦ It takes/took sb. some time to do sth. 句式

It takes/took sb. some time to do sth."花费某人一些时间干某事"，其中it为形式主语，真正的主语为其后的动词不定式。

e.g. It took him three days to read this book. 他花费了三天时间读这本书。

考题在线 7 How long will it _____ you to fly to Beijing from your hometown? [大庆]

A. spend B. take C. pay D. use

点拨：用固定句式法解题。本句句式为"It takes/took/will take sb. ...to do sth."，spend 和 pay 作谓语时，主语一般指人。

考题在线答案 1. B 2. B 3. are eating 4. across 5. B 6. C 7. B

Ⅲ. 模块语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

名词

名词有可数与不可数之分，有数和所有格的变化。名词在句中可以作主语、宾语、表语、同位语和定语等。

考点 1 名词的数

考向 1：可数名词单数变复数的规则变化。

一般情况	在词尾加 -s
以 -s，-x，-ch，-sh 结尾的词	在词尾加 -es
以辅音字母加 -y 结尾的词	将 -y 变成 -i，再加 -es
某些以 -f 或 -fe 结尾的词	将 -f 或 -fe 变成 -v，再加 -es

速记小筏：

①常见以o结尾加-es的词：
Heroes and Negroes like to eat potatoes and tomatoes.
英雄和黑人们爱吃土豆和西红柿。

②以f或fe结尾，变f或fe为-ves的词：
妻子(wife)拿刀(knife)去宰狼(wolf)，小偷(thief)吓得着了慌，躲进架子(shelf)保己命(life)，半(half)片树叶(leaf)遮目光。

考题在线 1 John likes _____ (strawberry) very much. [常德]

考题在线 2 Hurry up! Some _____ and _____ are on sale in the supermarket. [凉山]

A. tomato; egg B. tomatoes; egg
C. tomatoes; eggs D. tomato; eggs

考向 2：【高频】可数名词单数变复数的不规则变化。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

变 化	例 词
a 变 e	man—men, woman—women
oo 变 ee	foot—feet, tooth—teeth
ouse 变为 ice	mouse—mice
词尾加 (r)en	child—children; ox—oxen
单复数同形	sheep, deer, *yuan*, fish, Chinese, Japanese

速记小筏：

不规则复数形式的记忆口诀：
男女警察英法人，
都是将 man 变成 men。
脚、牙 oo 变 ee，child 加上 ren。
鹿和绵羊是一家，单变复时不变化。

考题在线 3 There are many old _____ and _____ in the park. [怀化]

A. man; children

B. men; child

C. men; children

考向 3：不可数名词量的表达。

用 some, much, a little, little, a lot of 等修饰	We have a lot of time. 我们有很多时间。 There's little orange in the bottle. 瓶子里几乎没有橙汁了。
用“数词 / 冠词 + 量词 +of+ 不可数名词”表示	a piece of paper 一张纸 three teaspoons of honey 三茶匙蜂蜜

考题在线 4 The boy didn't find much _____ about the topic on that website. [呼和浩特]

A. report　　B. article

C. information　　D. story

点拨：用关键词法解题。由关键词 much 可知空格处应用不可数名词。

考向 4：复合名词的复数形式。

(1) 只将被修饰名词变为复数形式。

e.g. a banana tree→ some banana trees

(2) man 和 woman 作定语时，其本身的单复数形式与被修饰词的单复数一致。

e.g. a man doctor→ two men doctors

考题在线 5 —How many _____ doctors are there in your hospital, David?

—_____ them _____ over one hundred. [眉山]

A.woman; The number of; is

B. women; A number of; are

C. woman; A number of; is

D. women; The number of; is

考点 2 名词的所有格

1. 一般情况下，在词尾直接加“'s”。

e.g. Lily's parents 莉莉的父母

2. 以 -s 结尾的复数名词在 s 后加“'”。

e.g. the twins' room 双胞胎的房间

3. 表示非生命物体的所有格经常用 of 短语。

e.g. a map of China 一张中国地图

考题在线 6 On April 24, Xie Wenjun raced to gold in the _____ 110-meter hurdles at the Asian Athletics Championships in Qatar. [连云港]

A. man　　B. men　　C. men's　　D. mens'

点拨：men 为不规则变化复数，不是以 -s 结尾，其所有格形式须在其后加 's。

冠词

冠词分不定冠词 a(an) 和定冠词 the 两种。

考点 1 不定冠词

不定冠词有 a 和 an 两种形式，a 用于以辅音音素开头的单词前，an 用于以元音音素开头的单词前。

其用法有：

用法	举例
泛指人或事物的某一类别，以区别于其他种类。	A plane is a machine that can fly. 飞机是一种能飞的机器。
首次提到某个单数可数名词。	There's a bird in the tree. 树上有只鸟。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

用于表示时间、价格、速度等意义的单数可数名词前。	twice a week 每周两次 ten dollars a kilo 每公斤十美元
表示数量，但数的概念没有 one 强烈。	I have a sister. 我有一个妹妹。
用于固定短语中。	a little(一点儿) wait a minute(等一会儿)

速记小筏：

不定冠词的用法（顺口溜）：
冠词a、an两种帽，许多名词都需要。
开头读音若是元，要把an帽来添。
辅音起首戴a帽，记住规律莫乱套。

考题在线 7 If you want to take _____ short ride in the city, choose _____ shared bike. [连云港]

A. a; /　　B. the; the

C. a; a　　D. /; a

考点 2 定冠词

定冠词的常见用法如下：

用法	举例
特指某些人或物。	The children are coming. 孩子们就要来了。
用于上文提到过的事物或双方都知道的事物。	Mr Li works in a factory. The factory is far from his home. 李先生在一家工厂上班。那家工厂离他家很远。
用于世界上独一无二的事物前。	The moon goes around the earth. 月亮绕着地球转。
用于序数词或形容词最高级前，在 of the two 结构中，也可以用于比较级前。	Who is the youngest girl in your class? 谁是你们班最小的女孩?
用于复数姓氏前，表示“……一家人”。	The Greens are going for a picnic next Sunday. 格林一家下星期天打算去野餐。
用于某些形容词前表示一类人，为复数概念。	The old are taken good care of in our country. 在我们国家老年人被照顾得很好。
用于乐器类名词前或方位名词之前。	play the guitar 弹吉他
用于固定搭配中。	in the morning 在上午 at the end of 在……的尽头

速记小筏：

定冠词the的用法（顺口溜）：
特指双方熟悉，上文已经提及；
世上独一无二，方位名词乐器；
某些专有名词，外加复数姓氏；
序数词最高级，习惯用语要特记。

考题在线 8 —Look at _____ boy over there. He looks excited.

—Yeah, he has won _____ first prize in the school English Reading & Writing Competition. [扬州]

A. a; the　　B. the; a

C. the; the　　D. a; a

考点 3 零冠词

用法	举例
不可数名词和复数名词前表泛指。	Can man live without air? 没有空气人能生存吗?
人名、地名、(非缩写的)国家名、物质名词、抽象名词前。	Mary comes from New York. 玛丽来自纽约。
可数名词前有物主代词、指示代词、不定代词或名词所有格等修饰。	Lily's bedroom is bigger than mine. 莉莉的卧室比我的大。
某些节日、季节、月份、星期、三餐、(与 play 连用时的)球类和棋类、学科名词前。	March 8th is Women's Day. 三月八号是妇女节。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

表示称呼语或头衔的名词前。	What's the matter with you, Granny? 你怎么了，奶奶?
与 by 连用的表示交通工具的名词前。	by car/bus/train/plane 乘坐汽车 / 公共汽车 / 火车 / 飞机
用于固定短语。	on foot 步行 go to bed 去睡觉

速记小筏：

零冠词的用法（顺口溜）：
下列情况不用冠，名词之前代词限。
复数名词表泛指，球类学科和三餐。
专有名词不可数，星期月份季节前。
交通手段和节日，习语称谓和头衔。

考题在线 9 Among all traditional Chinese arts, Nancy likes _____ Beijing Opera best because it is really _____ fun.[泰州改编]

A. /; a　　B. /; /

C. the; a　　D. an; /

数词

数词是指表示数目多少或顺序先后的词，有基数词和序数词两种。

考点 1 基数词

考向 1：基数词表示数量的多少。其构成方式是：

1. 1–12 特殊记；13–19 以 -teen 来结尾；20–99 之间的整十数以 -ty 结尾；21–99 之间的两位数个位和十位之间要加连字符“-”。

2. 100 以上的基数词，百位数和十位数之间用 and 相连。

3. 表达 1 000 以上的基数词，应从后向前数，每三位数加“，”，自后向前第一个逗号前读 thousand；第二个逗号前读 million；第三个逗号前读 billion，然后一节一节地表示。

注意：英语中没有“万”和“亿”这两个读数单位，一万用 ten thousand 表示；一亿用 one hundred million 表示。

考题在线 10 —How many books are there on the shelf?

—Well, I think there are _____ books.[湘西]

A. two hundred and forty-six

B. two hundreds and forty

C. two hundred fourteen

考向 2：基数词的常见用法有：

用法	举例
表示“几点钟、几点过几分或差几分几点”。	five to ten 九点五十五 twenty-five past five 五点二十五
表示“年、月、日”，年份用基数词，日期用序数词。	on 12th April, 2013 在 2013 年 4 月 12 日
表示“编号”。	Lesson One 第一课
表示数学算式中的数字。	Fifty and forty-five is ninety-five. 五十加上四十五等于九十五。
表示倍数、百分数。	Their house is three times as big as ours. 他们的房子是我们的三倍大。
“in+ 物主代词 + 逢十的基数词的复数形式”表示“在某人几十多岁时”。	in her sixties 在她六十多岁时
“in+the+ 逢十的基数词的复数形式”表示“在几十年代”。	in the thirties 在三十年代

考题在线 11 —How do you say “1:57” in English?

—It's _____.[天水]

A. three past two　　B. fifty-seven past one

C. three to one　　D. three to two

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

点拨:用时刻表达法解题。当分钟数小于30的时候,用“原分钟数+past+原小时数”,意为“几点过几分”;当分钟数大于30时,用“(60-原分钟数)+to+(原小时数+1)”,意为“差几分钟不到下一个钟点”。这里表示“一点五十七”,故用“three to two”。

考向3:【重点】基数词的特殊用法:

表示准确的数量时,hundred, thousand, million和billion用单数;

表示不确定的数量时,hundred, thousand, million和billion后面加-s并跟介词of。

考题在线12 Sweet wormwood(青蒿)is a common plant in China and Tu Youyou is the woman _____ used the special power of the plant to save _____ lives. [安顺]

A. which; millions of

B. who; millions of

C. whose; million of

D. who; million of

考点2 序数词

序数词表示事物排列的顺序,其用法如下:

用法	举例
序数词前面要加定冠词the。	The first thing you should do is to have a good rest. 你应该做的第一件事是好好休息一下。
序数词前有a、an时,表示“再一、又一”。	I've tried it three times. Must I try it a fourth time? 我已经试了三次了。我必须再试一次吗?

速记小筏:

基变序,有规律。

一二三,特殊记;八去-t,九去-e;

-f来把-ve替(fifth, twelfth);

看见-ty来结尾,-y变-ie,加-th莫迟疑。若是看见几十几,只变个位就可以。

考题在线13 —Which country do you think will win the first prize of the _____ FIFA World Cup?

—You mean the football match that will be held in _____? [达州]

A. twenty-one; Russia

B. twenty-first; Russian

C. twenty-first; Russia

D. twenty-one; Russian

考点3 分数

英语分数由基数词和序数词构成,基数词作分子,序数词作分母。当分子大于1时,分母用复数。

速记小筏:

英语分数不费事,“母序子基”四个字。分子若是大于1,分母还须加-s。

考题在线14 Nowadays, _____ people like HUAWEI phones better, and about _____ of them are adults. [安顺]

A. the number of; four-fifths

B. a number of; four-fifth

C. a number of; four-fifths

D. the number of; four-five

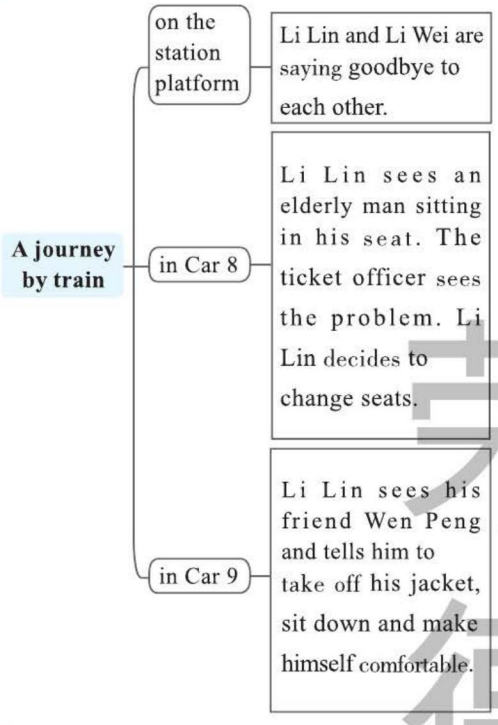
点拨:用语法分析法解题。the number of表示“……的数量”,跟复数名词连用作主语时,中心词是number,谓语动词要用单数;a number of表示“许多”,相当于many,修饰可数名词复数。作主语时,谓语动词用复数。据此排除A、D项。英语中表达分数时,分子用基数词,分母用序数词,当分子大于一时,分母用序数词的复数形式。

考题在线答案 1. strawberries 2. C 3. C 4. C 5. D 6. C 7. C 8. C 9. B 10. A 11. D 12. B 13. C 14. C

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅳ. 写作一课一法 夺取中考写作 20分

写作小练笔



模块话题

假如你是李明，本周日由你组织国际交换生去the Dream City游玩。请用英语拟一份口头通知。内容要点如下：

1. 集合时间和地点：上午九点，the Dream City入口处；
2. 观看楚剧，学习剪纸，制作陶土作品；
3. 自由活动一小时，可游玩、拍照等，五点乘地铁返校；
4. 天气炎热，着轻便装；
5. 请补充一至两点个人的想法或建议。

注意：1. 词数：60~80；开头已给出，不计入总词数。
2. 内容连贯，不要逐条翻译；

参考词汇：entrance *n.* 入口处；Chu Opera 楚剧；clay piece 陶土作品

Hello, everyone! We are going to the Dream City this Sunday. _____

审题指导（把握中心，得方向分）

1. 本文是一则旅游通知，介绍活动要言简意赅、条理清楚，用一般将来时。
2. 注意要用第一人称。

写作技法（学会方法，巧得高分）

“三步法”写旅游活动类作文：

“三步法”就是按“总—分—总”模式介绍：第一步总述引出下文；第二步分述介绍活动；第三步总述表达祝愿。

写作模板（学会套路，得基本分）



经典词句（妙用句式，得出彩分）

单词	meet, start, watch, learn, so, but
短语	of course, such as, and so on, take the underground, enjoy oneself
句子	1. But it'll...so we'd better wear... 2. I think that it will be an exciting tour...

范文赏析（书写工整，得印象分）

Hello, everyone! We are going to the Dream City this Sunday.

We are going to meet at the entrance of the Dream City at 9:00 am. We will start our tour here. We are going to watch Chu Opera. And then we are going to learn traditional Chinese folk arts — paper cutting and making clay pieces. Of course, we also have an hour of free time to do something we like, such as playing games, taking photos and so on.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

We are going to take the underground back to school at five in the afternoon. But it'll be too hot on Sunday, so we'd better wear light clothes and soft shoes.

I think that it will be an exciting tour and we will enjoy ourselves.

名师点评：本文用"三步法"介绍旅游活动，内容完整，层次清晰，时态正确。第一步，总述点明主题，言简意赅；第二步，分述具体介绍一天的游览活动。运用短语 such as, and so on 举例，有助于文章的脉络清晰；使用 had better 句型表达建议为文章增色；第三步，总述表达个人祝愿。很好地运用了 think+ 宾语从句，表现了作者深厚的语言功底。



V. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20 分

(答案见238页)

一、根据汉语提示完成句子

1. 格林一家正在吃午饭。

_____ _____ are having lunch.

2. 当你横过马路时一定要小心。

Be careful when you walk _____ the road.

3. 别吃太多垃圾食品，这对我们的健康有害。[福州]

Don't _____ too much junk food. It is _____ for our health.

4. 这个女孩太小，还不能清理她书包里的物品。[黄冈]

The girl is too young _____ _____ _____ the things in her schoolbag. (clear)

5. 从广州飞到悉尼需要多长时间? [广州]

_____ _____ does _____ _____ to fly from Guangzhou to Sydney?

二、语法专练

6. If I leave my house at 9 o'clock and drive to the airport, I'll arrive at about 11. So it's about two _____ drive from my house to the airport. [临沂]

A. hours' B. hour's C. hours

7. I'm going to have _____ picnic on _____ Sunday. [天津]

A. the; an B. an; the C. a; / D. an; /

8. —Dad, about _____ of our classmates wear glasses.

—Oh, that's terrible. You all should take good care of your eyes. [黄冈]

A. three fourth B. third fourth C. third fourths D. three quarters

9. Our country is nearly _____ years old. We'll celebrate its _____ birthday on October 1, 2019 around the country. [鄂州]

A. seventy; seventy

B. seventy; seventieth

C. seventieth; seventy

D. seventieth; seventieth

10. We gave away _____ books to the school library last year. [兰州]

A. six thousands B. six thousand

C. six thousands of D. six thousand of

三、模块知识浓缩

Last week, the Zhangs flew d_____[11] to Beijing. The f_____[12] was a bit late. But the p_____[13] s_____[14] in landing on time. It was very hot so Mr Zhang took off his j_____[15]. This was their first trip to Beijing. The roads were f_____[16] of cars and people. He told his children to take c_____[17] when they crossed the road. There were many things to do in Beijing. First they went to Tian'anmen Square w_____[18] having breakfast, and then they went to the Great Wall. It t_____[19] them three hours to visit it. They didn't go to the Summer Palace b_____[20] of the heavy rain. Mr Zhang was very happy though he was tired.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Module 2 Education

词汇表听写

魔法六维导图

语言能力

听：听对话，学会获取信息（介绍当地天气并参观朋友的学校）。（Unit1: Activity2）

说：通过询问托尼的伦敦之行，引出关于中英学校的对比，了解托尼喜欢那所学校的原因不在于其设施，而在于交很多朋友；熟练掌握 Did you enjoy yourself? Let's have a look. It looks really great. 等日常用语。（Unit1: Activity3）

读：能记住所学文章的关键词，用自己的语言复述文章（Unit2: Activity2）；了解英国孩子的校园生活，包括学校、日程、课程及课外活动等。

写：学会如何写学校生活类作文。

知识小集

高频单词
pass ◂ 动词
tie, row, pool, bell ◂ 名词
absent ◂ 形容词
ours ◂ 名词性物主代词

重点短语：enjoy oneself // a bit // instead of // above all // be able to // set up

常考句型：
1. What is/are...like?
2. Let's do sth.
3. It looks/sounds/smells/feels+*adj.*
4. If 条件状语从句 + 主句

模块语法：代词、介词及介词短语

方法大观

听力技巧：联想推理法（37 页）

阅读策略：逻辑推理法（41 页）

写作技法：“三段式法”写学校生活类作文（58 页）

解题方法：词义辨析法（35,56,239 页），语境法（52,55 页），语法分析法（34,35,44 页），关键词法（51 页）

文化意识

通过对 Unit1 Activity3 的学习，多了解世界名校及中外学校的不同，关键在于广交朋友、珍视友谊；通过对 Unit2 Activity2 的学习，了解英国孩子的校园生活，在素质教育方面中英之间有什么差异。

学习能力

在报纸、杂志或网络上查找国际上知名学校的信息，了解它们的优势；搜集关于孔子学院和外国人学汉语的信息资料，了解中国发展对世界的重大影响。

英语思维

结合语境尝试用英语解释英语，培养用英语思考问题的能力。通过阅读要学会仿写，内容包括自我介绍、学习简介、学校的日程安排、主要课程和课外活动。

记忆大师

Unit 1

必背单词

1. **ours** *pron.* 我们的 →we（主格）我们 →us（宾格）
   我们 →our（形容词性物主代词）我们的
2. **tie** *n.* 领带
3. **row** *n.* 一排；一行；一列
4. **pool** *n.* 水池；游泳池

必背短语

5. enjoy oneself
   玩得开心
6. a bit 有点儿
7. look at 看
8. one day 有一天
9. play with… 和……玩
10. a few 几个
11. sit in rows 坐成排

必背句子

12. **How many pupils** are there in a class in England?
    在英国每个班有多少名学生？

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

13. What **are** English schools **like**?
英国的学校是什么样子的?

14. It **looks really** great.
它看起来真的很棒。

15. **Let's have** a look.
让我们看一看。

Unit 2

必背单词

1. **pass** *v.* 及格；通过（考试或检查）→passes（第三人称单数形式）
2. **absent** *adj.* 缺席的；不在的 →present *adj.*（反义词）在场的
3. **secondary** *adj.*（教育）中等的；次要的；间接的
4. **bell** *n.* 钟；铃

必背短语

5. from…to… 从……到……
6. two more lessons 还有两节课
7. instead of 代替，而不是
8. such as 例如
9. once a term 一学期一次
10. above all 最重要的是
11. have a break 休息一下
12. away from 离 ..... 远

必背句子

13. **If** I **pass** my exams next year, **I'll stay** here until I'm eighteen.
明年如果我通过考试，我将在这里呆到 18 岁。

14. **Each** lesson **lasts** for **an** hour.
每堂课持续一个小时。

15. It's **lucky** we don't have exams in **every** subject.
幸运的是我们并不是每门科目都要考试。

16. Before class, our teacher checks **which** pupils are present **or** absent.
上课之前，我们的老师检查学生的出勤情况。

Unit 3

必背短语

1. ask for one's advice 寻求某人的建议
2. be able to 能，会
3. have to 不得不
4. as...as... 和……一样……
5. take place 举行；发生
6. set up 安装
7. to one's surprise 令某人惊讶的是

必背句子

8. **How** did your exams **go** last term?
你上学期的考试怎么样?

9. I **did** really **well in** English.
我英语学得很好。

10. A good teacher is someone **who is** helpful and kind.
一位好老师是乐于助人、和蔼可亲的人。

必背语法

11. I took **them myself**.
我自己拍的。

12. So **ours** is a bit bigger.
所以我们的班级大一点儿。

13. **Everyone** is wearing a jacket and tie!
每个人都穿夹克戴着领带!

14. We go to school every weekday **from** 8:45 am **to** 3:15 pm.
我们每个工作日从上午 8:45 到下午 3:15 上课。

15. We have a large sports ground **for** football and tennis, where we can play both **during** and **after** school hours. 我们有一个大的运动场可供我们课内外踢足球和打网球。

A thousand-li journey is started by taking the first step.
千里之行，始于足下。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 1 They don't sit in rows.

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

Listening and vocabulary 听力与词汇

1 Work in pairs and talk about your school.
结对练习并谈论你们的学校。

—What do you like best about our school?
你最喜欢我们学校的什么?

—I like... 我喜欢……

2 Listen and complete the sentences. 听并完成句子。

课文听力

1. The weather was _____ when Tony was in London.
当托尼在伦敦的时候，天气_____。
2. Tony played football with _____.
托尼和_____踢足球。
3. Daming is surprised to hear that Tony _____. 大明听到托尼_____很惊讶。
4. Tony didn't go to lessons. He was _____.
托尼没有去上课。他_____。

3 Listen and read.
听一听，读一读。

课文朗读

Betty: Hey, Tony! Did you enjoy yourself① in London?
嘿，托尼！你在伦敦玩得开心吗?

Tony: Yes! I went to see my friend Susie. And I visited her school. 开心！我去看望了我的朋友苏茜。并且我参观了她的学校。

Betty: What are English schools like?②
英国的学校是什么样子的?

Tony: Here are a few③ photos. I took them myself. 这儿有几张照片。我亲自拍的。

Daming: Let's have a look.④让我们看一看。

Tony: So this is Susie's school. It's got about 700 pupils, like most schools in England.
所以这是苏茜的学校。这大约有 700 名学生，如同英国的大部分学校。

Betty: How many pupils are there in a class in England?
在英国每个班有多少名学生?

Tony: About thirty.
大约三十名。

Daming: We have forty in our class. So ours/aʊəz/ is a bit bigger. Look, everyone is wearing⑤ a jacket and tie/taɪ/!
我们班有四十名。所以我们的班级大一点儿。看，人人都穿着夹克，戴着领带!

Tony: Yes, every student wears school clothes in England.
是的，在英国每个学生都穿校服。

Daming: And everyone is sitting around tables in the classroom.
并且在教室里人人都围着桌子坐。

Tony: That's right. They don't sit in rows/rəʊz/. Look at the swimming pool/puːl/ and the huge sports ground. Most English schools have sports grounds. Kids there really enjoy playing football.
你说得很对。他们不成排坐。看这个游泳池和大型的运动场。大部分的英国学校有运动场。那里的孩子真的喜欢踢足球。

Daming: We like playing football too. And we also have an excellent swimming team.
我们也喜欢踢足球。并且我们也有一支出色的游泳队。

Betty: I hope⑥ I can visit Susie's school one day⑦. It looks⑧ really great. 我希望有一天能参观苏茜的学校。它看起来真的很棒。

主语 谓语 宾语从句(引导词that省略) 时间状语

Tony: Our school is great too, and we have

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

more students here. This means ⑨ more people to play with.
我们的学校也很棒，并且我们这儿有更多的学生。这意味着和更多的人玩。

Betty: And more friends too.
也意味着有更多的朋友。

Everyday English 日常英语

- Did you enjoy yourself? 你玩得开心吗?
- Let's have a look. 让我们看一看。
- It looks really great. 它看起来真的很棒。

Now complete Susie's column in the table.
现在完成表格中苏茜的一栏。

	Susie's school 苏茜的学校	Your school 你的学校
Number of pupils in the school 在校学生数		
Number of pupils in a class 班级学生数		
Arrangement of seats in the classroom 教室中座位的排列		
Sports areas 运动区		

4 Answer the questions. 回答问题。

1. Who did Tony visit in London?
在伦敦，托尼看望了谁?
2. How did Tony get the photos of Susie's school? 托尼是如何得到苏茜学校的照片的?
3. Which class is a bit bigger, Susie's or Daming's?
哪个班更大一点儿，苏茜的还是大明的?
4. What does Betty hope to do one day?
贝蒂希望有一天干什么?

5 Complete the passage with the correct form of the words in the box.
用方框内单词的正确形式完成文章。

enjoy 喜欢　pool 水池　row 一排
tie 领带　wear 穿

Pupils in England do not sit in (1) _____ in the classroom. They sit around tables. Everyone (2) _____ a jacket and (3) _____. Most schools have sports grounds, and English children (4) _____ playing football, just as pupils in China do. Some English schools have swimming (5) _____, but not all of them do. 英国的学生在教室里不 (1)_____坐。他们围着桌子坐。人人都要 (2)_____夹克衫和 (3)_____。大部分学校都有运动场，并且英国的孩子 (4)_____踢足球，就像中国的学生一样。一些英国学校有游泳 (5)_____，但是并不是所有的学校都有。

Pronunciation and speaking 发音与会话

6 Read and predict which words the speaker is likely to stress.
阅读并预测说话者可能会重读哪些单词。

Betty: Hey, Tony! Did you enjoy yourself in London? 嘿，托尼！你在伦敦玩得开心吗?

Tony: Yes! I went to see my friend Susie. And I visited her school. 开心！我去看望了我的朋友苏茜。并且我参观了她的学校。

Betty: What are English schools like?
英国的学校是什么样子?

Tony: Here are a few photos. I took them myself. 这儿有几张照片。我亲自拍的。

Now listen and check. 现在听并核对。

7 Work in pairs. Read the conversation in Activity 6 aloud.
结对练习。大声朗读活动 6 中的对话。

8 Complete the Your school **column in Activity 3.** 完成活动 3 中"你的学校"一栏。
Now work in pairs and compare your school with Susie's school. Say: 现在结对练习并将你的学校和苏茜的学校对比。说一说:

- what both schools have 两所学校都有什么
- what one school has but the other does not 一所学校有但另一所学校没有的是什么

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

·考点批注 ·考点应用

★Did you enjoy yourself in London?

enjoy oneself 相当于 have a good time, have fun; 反身代词 oneself 随主语的人称和数的变化而变化。

enjoy 后接 v.-ing 形式，后接动名词的还有：mind, finish, practise, avoid, suggest, can't help, feel like, be worth 等。

① enjoy oneself 玩得开心

e.g. I hope you enjoy yourself this evening.
我希望你今晚过得愉快。

考题在线 1 Welcome you all to China and enjoy _____ here. [黔南]

A. yourself　　B. yourselves
C. themselves　　D. himself

点拨：用语法分析法解题。句意：欢迎你们所有人到中国来，希望你们在这里过得愉快。all 表示三者或者三者以上“全部的”，所以 you 指的是“你们”，故玩得愉快要用：enjoy yourselves。

② What is/are ...like? ……是什么样的？/……怎么样？

What is/are...like?
①用于询问对某人/某物的评价。
②用于询问某人的长相或性格。
③用于询问天气情况。

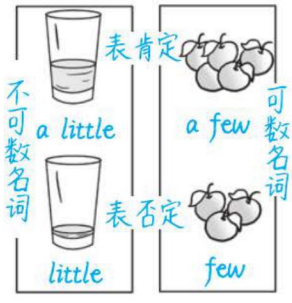
e.g. —What was the exam like? 这次考试怎么样？
—It was very difficult. 难极了。
—What is he like? 他是怎样一个人？
—He is very kind. 他很友善。
—What was the weather like? 天气怎么样？
—It was very windy. 风很大。

考题在线 2 —I don't care _____. In this camp, there's only one hairstyle—short! Understand?
—Yes, madam! [无锡改编]

A. what you are used to liking　　B. what you used to be like
C. what are you used to liking　　D. what did you use to be like

点拨：用语法分析法解题。宾语从句需用陈述语序，由此排除答案 C 和 D；由句意可知空白处是强调外貌，因此要用 used to be like 过去看起来……，而不能用 be used to doing 习惯于……。

★Here are a few photos.



辨析：few, a few, little 与 a little
①few 修饰可数名词复数，表否定概念。
②a few 修饰可数名词复数，表肯定概念。
③little 修饰不可数名词，表否定概念。
④a little 修饰不可数名词，表肯定概念。

③ a few 几个

e.g. He has few friends here. He feels lonely.
他这里没朋友。他感觉寂寞。

There are a few eggs in the basket.
篮子里有几个鸡蛋。

There is little ink in my bottle. Can you give me a little ink?
我的瓶子里没有墨水了。你能给我点儿墨水吗？

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考题在线 3 He got up to get some hot water but found there was _____ left in the bottle. [泰州]

A. a few　　B. few　　C. a little　　D. little

点拨: 考查不定代词辨析。前文不可数名词 water 提示用 little 和 a little 来修饰; but 引导的转折句意提示用 little，表示否定意义。

★Let's have a look.

let's do sth. 否定句式是 let's not do

④ **let's do sth.** 让我们做某事 sth.“让我们不要做某事”。

e.g. Let's go to the zoo. 我们去动物园吧。



不包括此人



包括此人

辨析: let's 与 let us

let's	包括对方在内，表示建议或劝说，陈述部分是 let's ... 的反意疑问句的附加问句要用 shall we。
let us	不包括对方在内，含有请求允许或命令的意味，陈述部分是 let us... 的反意疑问句的附加问句要用 will you。

考题在线 4 — _____ fresh air it is now!

—Yes. _____ go out for a walk. [安顺]

A. How; Let　　B. What a; Let's

C. What; Let's　　D. How; Let us

点拨:语法分析法。第一句感叹部分是 fresh air，适合“What+*adj.*+不可数名词”句式，排除 A、B、D 项；第二空所在句是祈使句，Let's 后面接动词原形 go。

★Look, everyone is wearing a jacket and tie!

知识微课

⑤ **wear** /weə/ *v.* (to have sth. on your body as a piece of clothing) 穿；戴

e.g. If you wear jeans, the teacher won't let you in.
如果你穿牛仔裤，老师不会让你进去。

Mrs Baker dressed her child.
贝克夫人给她的孩子穿衣服。

Jenny put on her hat and went out.
珍妮戴上帽子就出去了。

The girl in red is my sister.
穿红衣服的女孩是我妹妹。

辨析：wear、dress、put on 与 in

- wear 强调“穿、戴”的状态，后接表衣服、鞋帽类的词。
- dress 强调“穿”的动作，后接 sb. 或 oneself 作宾语。
- put on 表示“穿”的动作，后接表示衣服、鞋帽类的词。
- in 指“穿、戴”的状态，为介词，其后常跟表示颜色的词或衣服类的名词。

考题在线 5 As a teacher, I really feel worried to see so many students _____ glasses. [滨州]

A. wearing　　B. dressing

C. putting on　　D. being in

点拨:用词义辨析法解题。wear 强调“穿、戴”的状态，其宾语是衣帽或眼镜等名词; dress 意为“打扮”，其后常接人；put on 强调“穿上”的动作；be in 表示状态，其后接衣服或颜色。空缺处表示状态，且宾语是 glasses，故用 wear。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★I hope I can visit Susie's school one day.

"主语+hope(that)+宾语从句"结构可以转换为hope to do sth.结构，意为"希望……"。

⑥ **hope** /həʊp/ *v.* (to want sth. to happen and think that it is possible) 希望

e.g. I hope that I can visit the Great Wall one day.

=I hope to visit the Great Wall one day. 我希望有一天能去游览长城。

考题在线6 All of the teenagers hope that they will achieve their dreams one day.(改为同义句)

All of the teenagers hope _____ _____ their dreams one day.

⑦ **one day** 有一天

- one day意为"有一天"，既可指将来的某一天，也可指过去的某一天；
- some day意为"有一天"，也可以写作someday，仅指将来的某一天。

e.g. I'd like to go and visit Africa one day.

有朝一日我想去非洲看看。

He saw his classmates in the supermarket one day.

有一天，他在超市里看见了他的同班同学。

考题在线7 将来有一天我们能去火星旅行。

We'll be able to travel to Mars _____.

★It looks really great.

⑧ **look** *v.* 看起来

look是感官系动词，其后加形容词作表语，常见这类词还有：feel（摸起来），sound（听起来），smell（闻起来），taste（尝起来）。

e.g. They look very cool.

他们看起来很酷。

What food tastes delicious?

什么食品尝起来好吃?

考题在线8 —Do you enjoy Chinese folk songs?

—Yes, the folk songs _____ nice. [福建]

A. sound B. smell C. look

点拨：考查感官动词。句意：——你喜欢中国民歌吗？——是的，民歌听起来不错。欣赏歌曲需要用耳朵听，sound听起来，smell闻起来，look看起来。

速记小筏：

连系动词歌诀

一"是"(is, am, are)，

一"感觉"(feel)，

一"保持"(keep)，

三个"变了"(become, get, turn)，

四个"起来"(taste, smell, look, sound)。

一句话概括为：

一是一觉一保持，

起来四个，变了三个。

★This means more people to play with.

⑨ **mean** /mi:n/ *v.* (to have sth. as a result or a likely result) 意味着

e.g. The red light means "stop". 红灯意味着停。

In some parts of London, missing a bus means waiting for another hour.

mean doing sth."意味着做某事"，其主语通常是表示事物的词。

在伦敦的一些地方，错过一辆公共汽车就意味着再等一个小时。

I didn't mean to upset you.

我并不是故意要让你伤心的。

mean to do sth."打算/意欲做某事"。

考题在线9 这个标志意味着此路不通。

The sign _____ the road is blocked.

考题在线答案 1. B 2. B 3. D 4. C 5. A 6. to achieve 7. one day 8. A 9. means

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

敲黑板 提前看题，认真倾听，速记关键词！

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

☞（答案见238页）

听力技巧

联想推理法（根据对录音全文的理解，结合所记录的有关信息对各道试题做出正确的判断，如果在短文中找不出直接的答案，应用联想推理的办法，通过分析比较、综合概括做出符合逻辑的选择。）

听力过程

课文听力

听教材 **Activity 2**，选择正确答案

1. What was the weather like when Tony was in London?

A. It was rainy. B. It was cloudy. C. It was nice.

2. Tony visited a friend named _____.

A. Daming B. Susie C. Lucy

3. Tony played football with _____ at lunch time.

A. Daming B. his friend

C. some of Susie's friends

4. Daming is _____ to hear that Tony went to school on holiday.

A. surprised B. happy C. sad

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

☞（答案见238页）

一、根据句意及首字母或汉语提示完成句子

1. We buy a house with a big swimming p_____.

2. These are their books and those are o_____.

3. They are waiting in a r_____ to welcome the visitors.

4. He is wearing a shirt and a beautiful _____（领带）.

5. If you _____（比较）British football with American football, you'll find many differences.

二、单项选择

6. —Did you enjoy _____ in Chengdu last week?

—Yes, I had great fun there. [德州]

A. myself B. yourself

C. ourselves D. themselves

7. If you have any spare milk, could you give me _____? [通辽]

A. a few B. few

C. a little D. little

8. Tom is unhappy today. Let's _____.[巴中]

A. cheer up him B. cheer him up

C. to cheer him up

9. It's windy outside. _____ your jacket, Bob. Don't catch a cold. [成都改编]

A. Wear B. Put on C. Dress D. Be in

10. She said she hoped _____ her daughter. [邵阳]

A. to see B. you to see C. seeing

三、根据汉语提示完成句子

11. 张老师很友好，总是面带微笑。

Miss Zhang is very _____ and always _____ a smile _____ her face.

12. 他怎么做，我就怎么做。

I will do the same _____ _____ _____.

13. 我希望有一天能去月球旅行。

I hope I can visit the moon _____ _____.

14. 他们的房子里面是什么样子的?

_____ their house _____ inside?

15. 做好一件事并不意味着事事都做好。

Doing one thing well _____ _____ doing everything well.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 2 What do I like best about school?

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文及导读

导读批注 | 原文译文 · 导读

Reading and vocabulary 阅读和词汇

Pre-reading（读前）

Qs:1. What subjects do you have in your school?

2. What do you do in your school except learn in class?

1 Look at the photos and say what you can see.

看照片并说说你能看见什么。

2 Read the passage and answer the questions. 读文章并回答问题。

While-reading（读中）

Qs: 1. How long has Susie been at River School? 苏茜在里弗学校多久了?

2. How long does her schoolday last? 她的上课日持续多久?

3. Do all the students at River School have the same subjects?
里弗学校所有的学生都上同样的课吗?

4. How do you like Susie's school life? Why?
你认为苏茜的学校生活怎么样? 为什么?

批 标题：点明中心式
由"My school life 我的学校生活"可知本文是关于介绍作者学校生活的，标题点明文章主旨。

My school life 我的学校生活

批 体裁：
说明文

批 说明顺序：
时间顺序
School starts: 8:45 am
Lessons start: 9:05 am
Break: 11:05 am–11:15 am
Lessons start: 11:15 am
Lunch: 12:15 pm–1:15 pm
Lessons start: 1:15 pm
School ends: 3:15 pm

课文朗读

1 My name is Susie Thompson, and I'm fifteen. I've been at River School, London, since① I was eleven. If I pass/pɑːs/② my exams next year, I'll stay here until③ I'm eighteen.

我叫苏茜 · 汤普森，我 15 岁。我从 11 岁开始就在伦敦里弗学校上学。明年如果我通过考试，我将在这里呆到 18 岁。

2 River School is a secondary/'sekəndərɪ/ school, about twenty minutes away from my home by bike. Before I came here, I went to the primary school near my home. I started primary school when I was five and stayed there for six years. 里弗学校是一所中学，从我家骑自行车到那儿大约需要 20 分钟。来这儿之前，我在我家附近的小学上学。我 5 岁开始上小学，并在那儿上了 6 年。

3 We go to school every weekday from 8:45 am to 3:15 pm. Before class, our teacher checks which pupils are present④ or absent/'æbsənt/⑤. Then everyone goes to the main hall. There, our head teacher tells us news about the school. At 9:05 am the bell/bel/ rings, and lessons start. Each⑥ lesson lasts⑦ for an hour. We have a break⑧ from 11:05 am until 11:15 am, then another⑨ lesson, and then lunch for an hour. In the afternoon, we have

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

two more lessons[10] before school finishes. 我们每个工作日上午 8：45 到下午 3：15 上课。上课前，我们的老师检查学生的出勤情况。然后大家都去主厅。在那里，我们的校长告诉我们关于学校的新闻。上午 9：05 铃声一响，开始上课。每堂课持续一个小时。上午 11：05 至 11：15 是课间休息。然后再上一节课，之后是一个小时的午饭时间。下午在放学之前，我们还要再上两节课。

4 This year I have ten subjects: maths, English, physics, chemistry, French, history, geography, music, IT and PE. Some people learn German instead of[11] French. It's lucky we don't have exams in every subject.
今年我学 10 门科目：数学、英语、物理、化学、法语、历史、地理、音乐、信息技术和体育。一些人学德语而不是法语。幸运的是我们并不是每门科目都要考试。

5 We have a large sports ground for football and tennis, where we can play both during and after school hours. After-school activities, such as[12] sports clubs and language societies, are popular too. During the school year there are usually visits to museums and to camps for activities such as climbing and walking in the country. Last year a group of us even went to Japan. There are parties and a sports day, and school plays are really popular. Once a term[13], there is a parents' meeting, so our parents and teachers can talk about our progress. 我们有一个大的运动场可供我们课内外踢足球和打网球。像运动俱乐部和语言社团这样的课外活动也很受欢迎。在学年期间，通常有去博物馆参观和去野营的活动，例如爬山和在乡间散步。去年，我们中的一组人甚至去了日本。有聚会和运动会。并且校园剧真的很受欢迎。每学期要召开一次家长会，所以我们的父母和老师可以谈谈我们的进步。

6 What do I like best about school? English, chemistry, music, sports clubs, school plays...and above all, my friends! 关于上学我最喜欢什么？英语、化学、音乐、运动俱乐部、校园剧……最重要的是我的朋友们！

批 段落结构：
层进结构
Para 1: Susie Thompson
↓
Para 2: River School
↓
Para 3: school days
↓
Para 4: subjects & exams
↓
Para 5: other activities
↓
Para 6: the writer's feeling

批 词语赏析：
such as 巧妙地用于举例中，体现出课外活动之丰富。

Post-reading（读后）

写作小练笔 ☞（答案见 57 页）

3 **Put the statements into the correct group.** 将这些陈述放在正确的分组中。

1. Susie has been at school since she was five and she will be at school until she is eighteen.
苏茜从 5 岁以来就开始上学，并且将一直上到 18 岁。
2. All schools in the UK are like River School. 英国所有的学校都像里弗学校一样。
3. Lessons start at 9:05 am. 上午 9：05 开始上课。
4. The fourth lesson starts at 1:15 pm. 下午 1:15 开始上第四节课。
5. There is a parents' meeting each term. 每个学期有一次家长会。

We can get the information from the passage directly: _____ 我们能从文章中直接获得信息：_____

We can get the information from the passage indirectly: _____

我们能从文章中间接获得信息：_____

We cannot get the information from the passage: _____ 从文章中我们不能获得信息：_____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

4 Complete the questions with the words in the box. 用方框中的单词完成问题。

absent 缺席的	bell 钟，铃	pass 及格，通过	weekdays 工作日

1. When do you hear a _____ at school? 在学校你什么时间听见一阵_____?
2. Who is _____ from school today? 今天在学校谁_____?
3. What do you usually do on _____? 在_____你通常干什么?
4. How many marks do you need to _____ the English exam?_____英语考试你需要多少分?

Now work in pairs. Ask and answer. 现在结对练习。问和答。

Learning to learn 学会学习

When you write a composition, remember: 当你写作文时要记住：

Write about what you know best. 写你最了解的事。

This usually means your family, friends, school and yourself.

这通常意味着你的家庭、朋友、学校和你自己。

Use something you have read as a model. So **My school life** can be a model for your writing.

用你曾读过的东西作为例子。因此《我的学校生活》可以是你写作的例子。

Use ideas and sentences from the model and change the details. This will help you decide what to write and how to write it. 用例子中的观点和句子，并改变一下细节。这将帮助你决定写什么和如何去写。

Writing 写作

5 Make a timetable for your schoolday. 为你的上学日制作一份时间表。

Time when school starts 上学时间		Afternoon lessons 下午上课	
Morning lessons 上午上课		Time when school ends 放学时间	
Lunch break 午休		After-school activities 课外活动	

6 Make a list of other events and activities during your school year.

制作一份你一学年期间其他事件和活动的清单。

7 Write a passage about your school life. Use the timetable in Activity 5 and the list you made in Activity 6 to help you. Say:

写一篇关于你学校生活的文章。利用活动 5 中的时间表和你在活动 6 中制作的清单来帮助你。说一说：

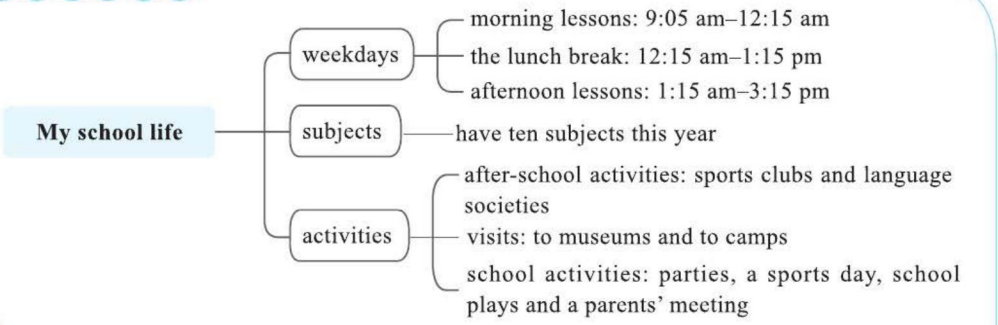
- when you go to school 你什么时间上学
- how you get there 你如何到达那儿
- how long you have been at this school 在这所学校你呆了多长时间
- what your daily timetable is 你每天的课程表是什么
- what subjects you are taking this term 你本学期正在上的科目是什么
- what other events and activities there are during your school year 你一学年期间有什么其他的事件和活动
- what you like best about school 关于上学你最喜欢什么

My name is Zhang Lin and I'm a pupil at No 1 Junior High School in...

我的名字是张林。我是……第一中学的学生。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课文背诵指南



Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练 专攻中考阅读 60分

(答案见239页)

阅读策略

逻辑推理法(做阅读理解题首先要掌握问题的类型。客观信息题可以直接从原文中找到答案;而逻辑推理题则必须经过对作者的态度、意图以及对整篇文章深一层的推理。)

阅读过程

拓展阅读

一、速读文章,回答问题

1. What's the main idea of the passage?

(主旨大意题)

二、细读文章,完成下列题目

2. ⊙ How long has Susie been at River School?

(逻辑推理题)

A. Two years. B. Three years.

C. Four years. D. Five years.

3. What's the Chinese meaning of the word "present" in Paragraph 3? (词义猜测题)

A. 礼物 B. 在场的

C. 缺席的 D. 主要的

4. ⊙ Do all the students at River School have the same subjects? (逻辑推理题)

A. Yes, they do. B. No, they don't.

C. Yes, they did. D. No, they didn't.

Ⅲ. 考点精讲点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用 •考点批注

★I've been at River School, London, since I was eleven.

① **since** /sɪns/ *conj.* (from a time in the past until a later past time, or until now) 自从;自……以来

e.g. Mary has lived here since she became a teacher.

玛丽自从当了教师就住在这里。

敲黑板 同学们要注意:"since+时间点/一般过去时的句子"可与"for+时间段"相互转换,但含有for的句子应用延续性动词(短语)。

【重点】辨析: since与for

since	常用来引导时间状语,后常接时间点或过去时态的句子,该时间状语通常为完成时态的标志。
for	后常接时间段,用来说明动作或状态持续的时间,"for+时间段"也通常为完成时态的标志。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

"since+时间段+ago"与"for+时间段"都表示一段时间。



考题在线1 —Where do you live, Lin Tao?

—I live in Beijing now. I _____ here for ten years. [湘西]

A. moved B. have moved C. have been

点拨：考查动词时态。由 for ten years 可推知用完成时，排除 A；和"一段时间"连用，完成时的谓语动词用延续性动词 been。

★**If I pass my exams next year, I'll stay here until I'm eighteen.**

② **pass** /pɑːs/ *v.* (to achieve the required standard in an exam, a test, etc.) 及格；通过（考试或检查）

e.g. She was glad to pass the Chinese exam. 通过了语文考试，她很高兴。

Pass the book to me, please. 请把那本书递给我。

I pass by the shop every day. 我每天经过那家商店。

A week passed before his letter arrived. 一个星期过去了他的信才到。

Here is your pass, Mary. 玛丽，这是你的入场证。

pass的其他含义：
1. pass作动词，还意为"传递；经过；度过；终止"。
2. pass作名词，意为"及格；入场证；通行证"。

考题在线2 根据句意及汉语提示写出单词。

Please _____（传递）the ball to me. [聊城]

③ **until** /ənˈtɪl/ *conj.* (up to the point in time or the event mentioned) 直到……为止

e.g. Walk straight on until you see the traffic lights.

一直向前走直到你看见交通信号灯。

He didn't watch TV until he finished homework.

他直到完成作业才看电视。

until用于肯定句时，主句的谓语动词常为延续性动词，表示动作一直延续到某时。

until常和not连用，not...until...意为"直到……才……"。此时主句的谓语动词为非延续性动词，表示某个动作直到某时才发生。

考题在线3 —Excuse me. Is it my turn now?

—Not yet. Please wait outside _____ your name is called. [恩施]

A. until B. since C. so

点拨：考查连词。"打扰一下。轮到我了吗？""还没呢。请在外面等着，一直到念你名字的时候。"B、C 选项填入意思不通。

考题在线4 Some people won't realize the importance of their health _____ they lose it. [随州]

A. because B. after C when D. until

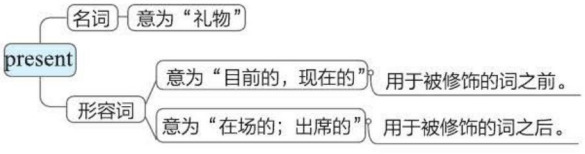
★**Before class, our teacher checks which pupils are present or absent.**

④ **present** /ˈpreznt/ *adj.* (being in a particular place) 在场的；出席的

e.g. Sophie was the only French present. 苏菲是在场的唯一法国人。

Foreign observers were present at the elections. 外国观察员出席了选举。

拓展：present 的一词多义：



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

e.g. Did you receive my present yesterday?

昨天你收到我的礼物了吗?

Who is the present head teacher in your school?

你们学校的现任校长是谁?

Did you see the actors present? 你见到在场的男演员了吗?

present 形容词，意为"在场的；出席的"，通常作表语，也可作后置定语。
常用短语：be present at 出席……。

考题在线 5 根据句意及汉语提示写出单词。

Every member of the club was _____ (出席的，在场的).

⑤ **absent** /'æbsənt/ *adj.* (not in a place because of illness,etc.) 缺席的；不在的

absent 既可作定语，也可作表语。常用短语：be absent from，意为"缺席，没有到场"。

e.g. That's why he was absent.

那就是他缺席的原因。

Mr Li was absent from the meeting today.

李先生缺席了今天的会议。

考题在线 6 根据首字母填单词。

Today he didn't come to school again. He has been a _____ from classes for a week. [黄石]

★Each lesson lasts for an hour.

⑥ **each** /i:tʃ/ *adj.* 各自的 *& pron.* 每个，各自

e.g. Each school has its library. 每个学校都有自己的图书馆。

【易错】辨析: each 与 every

each	两个或两个以上的人或物，侧重个体	可作主语、宾语、定语或同位语	能与 of 搭配修饰名词
every	三个或三个以上的人或物，侧重全体	只能作定语	不能与 of 搭配修饰名词

兼顾个体和全体



every 每个都

侧重个体



each 各自

考题在线 7 There are many shops on _____ side of the street.

A. each　　B. every

C. all　　D. both

点拨：由空格后的名词 side 为单数，可排除 C、D 选项，又因 each 指两个或两个以上的人或物中的"每个"，符合语境。

⑦ **last** /lɑ:st/ *v.* (to continue for a particular period of time) 持续；延续

敲黑板 大家一定要注意：last 为不及物动词，后常跟"for+一段时间"，不能用于进行时态。

e.g. The performance lasted for three hours. 表演持续了三个小时。

The school football team scored in the last few minutes and won the match. 校足球队在最后几分钟得分，赢得了比赛。

last 还可用作形容词，意为"最后的；最近的"。

考题在线 8 根据汉语提示完成单词。

—How long will the fog and haze _____ (持续)?

—I've no idea. There is no sign of an end.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

have a break 属于“have a/an+ 可数名词单数”结构，相当于 take a break 或 have/take a rest。

★**We have a break from 11:05 am until 11:15 am, then another lesson...**

⑧ **have a break** 休息一下

e.g. We should have a break between two classes.

我们应该在两节课之间休息一下。

敲黑板 break 的过去式和过去分词分别为 broke，broken，这是考点，大家要牢记啊！

拓展：break 作动词，常见短语有：

break out 爆发　break down 出故障　break in 闯入（行窃）

break a record 打破纪录　break one's heart 使某人伤心

break a rule 破例

考题在线 9 你累了吗？我们停下来歇会儿吧。

Are you tired? Let's stop to _____ _____ _____ .

another 此处用作限定词，意为“又一，再一”，泛指三者或三者以上中的另一个。其后可接单数可数名词、“of+ 复数名词”或“基数词 + 名词”。

⑨ **another** /əˈnʌðə/ *pron.* (one more; one extra thing or person) 又一，再一

e.g. We need another computer. 我们还需要一台电脑。

Is this another of your plans to make money? 这是你的又一个赚钱计划吗？

考题在线 10 —There is _____ in Tina's WeChat shop.

—So that's why I decide to buy the present in _____ shop. [天水]

A. something special; other　　B. special something; the other

C. nothing special; another　　D. special nothing; others

点拨：用语法分析法解题。形容词修饰不定代词，要放在不定代词之后；故先排除选项 B 和 D。根据语境可知：这里表示“蒂娜的微店里没有什么稀罕的东西”，因此第二个人打算再找一家商店买礼物。

★**In the afternoon, we have two more lessons before school finishes.**

⑩ **two more lessons** 再上两节课　数字 +more+ 名词复数 =another+ 数字 + 名词复数

e.g. After I read books, I have 30 more/another 30 new words to write every evening. 每天晚上我读过书以后，我还有 30 个生词要写。

more 构成的固定短语：

more or less 或多或少
more than 超过，多于
} more {
no more than 不超过，仅仅
no more/not...any more 不再……

考题在线 11 —If you prefer the red evening dress, you'll have to pay _____ 30 dollars, because it's made of silk.

—OK. Here you are.

A. other　　B. the other　　C. more　　D. another

辨析：instead 与 instead of

- instead“代替；反而；却”，作副词，常位于句首或句末。
- instead of“代替，而不是”，后面跟名词、代词或 v-ing 形式，常位于句中。

★**Some people learn German instead of French.**

⑪ **instead of** 代替，而不是

e.g. Meg doesn't play computer games. Instead, she studies hard.

(=Instead of playing computer games, Meg studies hard.)

梅格不玩电脑游戏。相反，她学习很努力。

考题在线 12 我更愿意呆在家里看电视，而不是跟朋友出去闲逛。

I prefer to watch TV at home, _____ _____ hanging out with friends.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★**After-school activities, such as sports clubs and language societies, are popular too.**

⑫ **such as 比如；例如**

e.g. Cartoon characters such as Mickey Mouse and Snoopy are still popular.

像米老鼠、史努比等卡通形象仍然流行。

Table tennis, for example, is the most popular sport in China.

比如，乒乓球是中国最受欢迎的运动。

考题在线 13 我对很多学科都感兴趣，例如音乐、英语和历史。 [重庆]

I am interested in many subjects _____ _____ music, English and history.

辨析：such as 与 for example

- such as 表示列举，通常列举出两个或两个以上的例子，放在被列举的事物之前。
- for example 相当于 for instance，表示举例说明，往往用逗号与句子其他成分隔开，可放在被列举的事物之前或之后。

★**Once a term, there is a parents' meeting, so our parents and teachers can talk about our progress.**

⑬ **once a term 每学期一次**

once 意为"一次"，"两次"为 twice，"三次及三次以上"用"基数词 +times"。

e.g. We have a sports meeting once a term. 我们每学期举行一次运动会。

Take the medicine twice a day. 这个药每天服两次。

—How many times have you been to Beijing? 你去过北京几次?

—Once. 一次。 对"次数"提问用 how many times；

—How often are you late for school? 你多长时间上学迟到一次?

—Once a term. 每学期一次。 对"频率"提问用 how often。

速记小筏：英语次数不难记，一次 once，两次 twice；三次及三次以上要用 times。要是来问多少次，how many times 莫忘记。

考题在线 14 —_____ do your parents come to visit you in the US, Tim?

—Once a year. [黔南]

A. How often B. How long C. How soon D. How far

点拨：考查固定搭配。how often 对频率提问，多久一次；how long 对时间提问，多长时间；how soon 多久以后；how far 对距离提问，多远。

考题在线答案 1. C 2. pass 3. A 4. D 5. present 6. absent 7. A 8. last 9. have a break 10. C 11. D 12. instead of 13. such as 14. A

核心素养之文化意识

英国最著名的贵族中学——伊顿公学

◆伊顿公学 (Eton College) 位于距伦敦 20 英里的温莎小镇，地处白金汉郡泰晤士河河畔，与温莎宫隔岸相望，由亨利六世于 1440 年创办。伊顿以"精英摇篮"、"绅士文化"闻名世界，也素以军事化的严格管理著称，学生成绩大都优异，被公认是英国最好的中学，是英国王室、政界、经济界精英的培训之地。

◆【素养行动】上网查阅世纪名校，了解这些学校的学科优势及信息，弄清如何申请名校、如何修读课程、中国学生的最大挑战是什么。

◆【素养行动结果】揭开世界名校面纱，带来对名校的全新解读，拓宽国际视野。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

☞(答案见239页)

一、根据句意及汉语提示写出单词

1. They're pleased to _____ (通过) the exams.
2. The man is a math teacher in a _____(中等的，次要的) school.
3. The students must walk into the classroom when the _____ (钟，铃) rings.
4. How many people were _____ (出席的) in the ceremony?
5. All the students are present. Nobody is _____ (缺席的，不在的).

二、用所给词的适当形式填空

6. They went swimming instead of _____ (have) a picnic.
7. We all know physics _____ (be) an important subject.
8. Each of the students _____ (ask) to take a dictionary to the English class. [白银]
9. After class, we can take part in many _____ (activity).
10. If it _____ (not rain) tomorrow, we'll go to the park.

三、单项选择

11. There are many kinds of pollution around us, _____ air pollution, soil pollution, noise pollution and light pollution. [黔西南]

A. such as　　B. for example
C. such like　　D. as well as

12. —How often do your teachers have a meeting?
—_____. [天水]

A. For one week　　B. One week ago
C. In one week　　D. Once a week

13. I didn't realize he was a famous scientist _____ you told me. [益阳]

A. until　　B. because
C. since

14. Our teachers have been with us for nearly three years _____ we came to junior high school.We should thank them for what they have done for us. [山西]

A. until　　B. before
C. since

15. The twins look exactly the same. _____ of them are in my class. [黄石]

A. Each　　B. Both
C. Either　　D. None

四、根据汉语意思完成句子

16. 自从我来到中国，我已经学到了很多关于我家乡的历史。
I _____ _____ a lot about the history of my hometown _____ I came to China.
17. 炎热的天气将持续半个月。
The hot weather will _____ _____ half a month.
18. 为什么不停下来休息一下呢?
Why not stop to _____ _____ _____?
19. 我要喝茶，而不是咖啡。
I'll have tea _____ _____ coffee.
20. 你能再给我五分钟吗?
Could you please give me _____ _____ _____?

One today is worth two tomorrows.
一个今天胜似两个明天。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 3 Language in use

I. 课文原文、译文

Language practice 语言练习

I took **them myself**. 我亲自拍的。
So **ours** is a bit bigger. 所以我们的大一点儿。
Everyone is wearing a jacket and tie!
人人都穿着夹克，戴着领带！
We go to school every weekday **from** 8:45 am **to** 3:15 pm.
我们每个工作日上午 8:45 到下午 3:15 上课。
We have a large sports ground **for** football and tennis, where we can play both **during** and **after** school hours. 我们有一个大的运动场可供我们课内外踢足球和打网球。

1 Underline the correct words.

在正确的词下画线。

Anna: Hi, Bob. How did your exams go last term? 你好，鲍勃。你上学期的考试怎么样？

Bob: Great! I got good marks in (1) both/each maths and geography. What about you? 很好！我数学和地理 (1) 都 / 每一个取得了好成绩。你呢？

Anna: I did really well in English. That's (2) anything/something I've always enjoyed. My marks in history and art weren't so good because (3) none/neither is my favourite subject. What will you study this term? 我英语学得很好。那是我一直喜欢的 (2) 任何事物 / 某物。我的历史和美术成绩不是很好，因为 (3) 没有一个 / 两者都不是我最喜欢的科目。这学期你要学习什么？

Bob: I've still got (4) a few/few days before I have to decide. I'm going to speak to (5) both/all my teachers and ask for their advice. 在不得不作出决定前我还有 (4) 一些 / 几乎没有天的时间。我要去和我的 (5) 两个 / 所有的老师谈论，并且询问他们的意见。

Anna: The teachers say that we must decide for (6) themselves/ourselves and that(7) none①/neither② of them can tell us what to do. 老师说我们必须为 (6) 他们自己 / 我们自己作出决定，他们 (7) 没有一个人 / 两个都不能告诉我们做什么。

Bob: But I have to get (8) some/any information because there are so (9) much/many subjects and it's very hard to choose. 但是我必须得到 (8) 一些 / 任何信息，因为有如此 (9) 多 / 多的科目，这很难选择。

2 Complete the passage with the words and expression in the box.

用方框内的单词和短语完成文章。

both 两者都　each other 互相　His 他的
mine 我的　myself 我自己

A good teacher is someone who is helpful and kind, like my history teacher, Mr Miller. (1) _____ knowledge of the subject is excellent. Because of him, I love history and even read history books by (2) _____ after the lessons. A friend of (3) _____ called Mark also loves this subject and sometimes we lend (4) _____ books or DVDs about history. I like reading (5) _____ Western and Chinese history books, but I think Chinese history is my favourite subject. 一位好老师是乐于助人、和蔼可亲的人，像我的历史老师，米勒先生。(1) _____学科知识是渊博的。因为他，我热爱历史，甚至课后 (2) _____读历史书。(3) _____一位叫马克的朋友也喜欢这门学科，并且有时我们借给 (4) _____关于历史的书或

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

DVD。我喜欢读(5)_____西方和中国的历史书籍，但我认为中国历史是我最喜欢的科目。

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in the box.
用方框内单词的正确形式完成句子。

he 他	her 她的	him 他	himself 他自己
our 我们的	she 她	their 他们的	
themselves 他们自己		they 他们	
us 我们	we 我们		

1. John's homework is too difficult. _____ is not able to ③ do it _____, so I'm going to help _____ with it. 约翰的家庭作业太难了。_____不能做它_____，所以我打算帮助_____做。
2. Some people do not have time to wash _____ pets _____, so _____ pay someone to do it at the pet shop.
有些人没有时间洗_____宠物_____，所以_____在宠物店付钱让别人洗。
3. —Jane is doing a project about family history. _____ has asked us to give _____ some of _____ photos that were taken when we were young. Have _____ got any, Becky? 简正在做一个关于家族历史的课题。_____已让我们给_____一些我们年轻时拍的_____照片。贝基_____有一些吗?
—Yes, there is a photo of _____ with all the children in our family. 是的，有一张_____的照片，上面有我们家的所有孩子。

4 Complete the passage with the words in the box. You need to use one word more than once. 用方框内的单词完成文章。有一个单词你需要使用不止一次。

at 在……	for 为……
in 在……里面	on 在……上面

The school cinema shows lots of foreign films. Next week (1) _____ Friday and Sunday it is showing a French film called *Never Say Goodbye*. The story is set (2) _____ Paris (3) _____ the 1960s. The film lasts two hours and fifteen minutes and starts (4) _____ 6:30 and 9:30 (5) _____ the evenings. Tickets are £ 5, but there is a special half-price ticket (6) _____ students from our school. Please bring your student card if you want a cheap ticket. 学校影院放映许多外国电影。下周(1)_____星期五和星期天要上映一部叫《永远不说再见》的法国电影。这个故事以(2)_____巴黎(3)_____二十世纪六十年代为背景。电影持续两个小时十五分钟并(4)_____晚上(5)_____6：30和9：30开始。票价为5英镑，但(6)_____我们学校的学生有一个特殊的半价票。如果你想要便宜的票请带上你的学生证。

5 Complete the sentences so they are true for you. 根据你的实际情况完成句子。

1. I study _____ subjects: English, _____.
我学习_____科目：英语、_____。
2. I don't study _____.
我不学习_____。
3. I take exams in _____, but I don't take exams in _____. 我参加_____考试，但我不参加_____考试。
4. My favourite sport is _____ because _____. 我最喜欢的运动是_____因为_____。
5. I usually play sports on _____.
我通常在_____进行体育运动。
6. After-school activities, such as _____ are very popular at our school. 课外活动，例如_____在我们学校很受欢迎。

6 Listen and answer the questions. 听并回答问题。



1. Where does Kate want to go

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

on holiday next year?
凯特明年想去哪里度假?

2. What game has Pete played since primary school? 皮特从小学以来玩过什么游戏?
3. When do Kate and Pete have sports practice? 凯特和皮特什么时间进行体育练习?

7 Listen again and complete the table.

再听一遍并完成表格。

	School year 学年	Special subject 特殊科目	Club 俱乐部	Sport 运动	Plan for next year 明年计划
Kate 凯特					
Pete 皮特					

8 Read the passage and say where you think it comes from.

阅读文章并说一说你认为它出自哪里。

a) A dictionary. 一本词典。
b) A school website. 一个学校网站。
c) A storybook. 一本故事书。

课文朗读

1. The schoolday begins at 9 am. Class teachers meet the class and check who is present or absent at the start of the day. All the classes meet once a week on Fridays. The head teacher speaks to the whole school. Morning lessons begin at 9:20 am. There are three forty-minute lessons, with a twenty-minute break in between. The lunch break is from 12 pm to 1 pm. Afternoon lessons begin at 1 pm and the schoolday finishes at 3 pm. 上午9点开始一天的学校生活。在一天的开始，班主任与全班学生见面，并检查学生的出勤情况。每周五举行一次全校大会。校长对全校师生讲话。上午 9：20 开始上课。有三节 40 分钟的课，每两节课之间有一段 20 分钟的休息时间。午休时间从 12 点到下午 1 点。下午 1 点开始上课，下午 3 点一天的学校生活结束。
2. All the students study and take exams in maths, science and English. They also choose one subject from history, geography, art, French and Chinese. All the students take PE lessons, but no exams are required. 所有的学生都要学习并参加数学、科学和英语的考试。他们还从历史、地理、美术、法语与汉语中选修一科。所有的学生都要上体育课，但不需要考试。
3. The chess, music, language and theatre clubs often have meetings after school. Students may join as many clubs as ④ they like, but they must join at least one. 国际象棋、音乐、语言和戏剧俱乐部经常在放学后安排会面。学生们可以参加所有他们喜欢的俱乐部，但他们必须至少要参加一个。
4. After-school sports practice and matches take place ⑤ on Wednesday afternoons and Saturday mornings. The school has a good record in sports. Last year, we were the best in football and tennis, and some students won prizes for swimming and running. 课外体育练习和比赛在每周三下午和每周六上午举行。学校在体育方面有很好的纪录。去年，我们在足球和网球方面是最好的，并且一些学生获得游泳和赛跑方面的奖品。

Now match the headings with the paragraphs.

现在将标题与段落搭配起来。

a) Clubs 俱乐部 ☐
b) School hours 学校作息时间 ☐
c) Sports 体育运动 ☐
d) Subjects 课程 ☐

9 Read the passage again and check (√) the true sentences.

再读一遍文章，在正确的句子处画（√）。

1. The head teacher speaks to the whole school

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

on Fridays. 校长每周五向全校师生讲话。 ☐

2. The lunch break is less than one hour. 午休时间不到一小时。 ☐

3. Students take exams in all the subjects they study.
学生们参加他们学习的所有科目的考试。 ☐

4. Students can join more than one club. 学生们可以加入不止一个俱乐部。 ☐

Around the world 世界各地

No teachers needed?

不需要老师吗?

When it comes to learning, the environment has a big part to play. This has been shown in a long-term study by Professor Mitra from India. He set up [6] computers in a village in India where children could not speak English. They did not know what a computer looked like or what the Internet was. To everyone's surprise [7], children taught themselves how to use the machines in a very short period of time. This suggests that children can learn fast with little help. Professor Mitra thinks this could change schools. He is now working on so-called SOLEs (Self-Organised Learning Environments). He explains that SOLEs include at least a computer and a bench big enough for four pupils. SOLEs have also been tested in some other countries such as the UK and Italy, with encouraging results. 当说到学习时，环境起着很大的作用。这是由来自印度的米特拉教授长期研究证明的。他在印度的一个村庄里安装了电脑，在那儿孩子们不会讲英语。他们不知道电脑是什么样子的，也不知道因特网是什么。令人人感到惊讶的是，孩子们在很短的时间内自学了如何使用这些机器。这表明孩子们在几乎没有帮助的情况下也能学得很快。米特拉教授认为这能改变学校。他现在正从事所谓的 SOLEs（自我组织学习环境）的工作。他解释 SOLEs 至少包括一台电脑和一个足够四位学生坐的长凳。SOLEs 也已经在一些其他国家例如英国、意大利被测试，并有了令人鼓舞的结果。

Module task 模块任务：

Making a leaflet about your school 制作一个关于你们学校的宣传单

10 Work in pairs. Discuss and write sentences about your school.

结对练习。讨论并写关于你们学校的句子。

- Write sentences about the facts. 写出关于事实的句子。

  There are...students and... teachers in our school. Students can study...

  我们学校有……学生和……老师。学生们能学习……

  After school, there are...and... 放学后，有……和……

- Write sentences about your opinions. 写出关于你的观点的句子。

  The thing I like best about our school is...because...

  关于我们的学校我最喜欢的事情是……因为……

11 Make a leaflet about your school for new students.

为新生制作一个关于你们学校的宣传单。

- Make a leaflet to introduce your school to new students. Use the sentences in Activity 10.
  制作一个宣传单向新生介绍你们学校。使用活动 10 中的句子。
- Draw pictures and make designs where necessary. 必要的地方可以画图画和设计一下。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

•考点应用 •考点批注

★**The teachers say that we must decide for ourselves and that none of them can tell us what to do.** none 表示“三个（及三个以上）事物或人都不”。

① **none** /nʌn/ *pron.* (not any) 没有人，没有任何东西

e.g. None of the boys likes dancing.

这些男孩没有一个喜欢跳舞。

—How many apples do you have?

你有多少个苹果?

—None. 一个也没有。

—Who can answer the question?

谁能回答这个问题?

—No one. 没有人。

辨析：none 与 no one

- none 用于指人或物，意为“一个也没有”，可以用来回答 how many 引导的问句，可与 of 连用。
- no one 只可指人，不可与 of 连用；经常回答 who 提问的句子。

考题在线 1 When Flight 3U833 finally landed in Chengdu, _____ of the women cried. Fortunately, _____ of the 119 passengers in the plane were hurt in the incident (事件). [黄石]

A. some; none B. some; neither

C. any; none D. any; neither



点拨：用关键词法解题。some 表示“一些；某些”，用在肯定句中；由关键词 Fortunately (幸运的是) 可知，飞机上的 119 名乘客中没有一人在事故中受伤，故第二个空用 none。

考题在线 2 —How many birds can you see in the tree?

—_____. All the birds have flown away.

A. None B. No one C. Nothing D. A little

② **neither** *pron.* (not one nor the other of two things or people) 两者都不

neither 三考点：

e.g. The two cups are both ugly. I like neither.

这两个杯子都很难看。我都不喜欢。

①作代词：意为“两者都不” 常用于“neither of+ 可数名词复数 / 代词复数”，作主语时，谓语动词用单复数均可。

e.g. Neither of them likes/like traveling.

他们两个都不喜欢旅游。

②作连词：构成短语：neither...nor... 既不……也不……，其后接句子的同等成分。

e.g. Neither he nor I am in Class Four.

我和他都不在四班。 连接两个主语时，谓语由第二个主语决定（即就近原则）。

③作副词：意为“也不”，放在句首，表示前面否定的内容也适用于另一个人或物，句子采用部分倒装。此时也可用 nor 替换 neither。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料



e.g. If you don't support the plan, neither/nor will I.
如果你不支持这项计划，我也不支持。

考题在线 3 —Do you like rock music or light music?
—_____. I like Beijing Opera. [温州]
A. Either B. None
C. Both D. Neither

点拨：用语境法解题。由后文 I like Beijing Opera. 可判断，此处表示“两者都不”，用 neither。

考题在线 4 —Why don't you get used to the life in Beijing?
—_____ the crowded traffic _____ the high living cost. The only reason is the badly polluted air. [达州]
A. Not only; but also B. Either; or
C. Both; and D. Neither; nor

点拨：考查并列连词词义辨析。not only…but also… 不但……而且……；either…or… 或者……或者……；both …and… 两者都；neither…nor… 既不……也不……。从句意知，前后构成“既不是 A 也不是 B”的关系。

★**He is not able to do it himself...**

③ **be able to 能，会**

e.g. The workers are able to improve the machine.
工人们能改进这台机器。
Can she play the piano?
她会弹钢琴吗？

考题在线 5 幸运的是，他终于逃出了大火。
Luckily, he _____ escape from the big fire in the end.

辨析：be able to 与 can
① be able to 可根据需要使用多种时态，还可以和情态动词、助动词等连用，还可用动词不定式等非谓语形式；主要指具体做某事的能力。
② can 只有现在和过去式两种形式；主要泛指一般的能力。

★**Students may join as many clubs as they like, but they must join at least one.**

④ **as...as 和……一样**

e.g. Lucy writes as carefully as Lily.
露西写得和莉莉一样认真。
You've made as many mistakes as I have.
你犯的错误和我犯的一样多。

as...as 表示同级比较，中间用形容词或副词的原级。若涉及数量或程度，可用“as many+ 可数名词复数 +as”和“as much+ 不可数名词 +as”。as...as possible 意为“尽可能……”，中间也用原级。

拓展：not as/so...as... 意为“不如 ……”，是 as...as... 用于否定句中的情况。

★**After-school sports practice and matches take place on Wednesday afternoons and Saturday mornings.**

⑤ **take place 举行；发生**

e.g. The wedding will take place in May.
婚礼将在五月举行。
The traffic accident happened at 10:30 pm.

辨析：take place 与 happen
① take place：一般指非偶然事件的发生，即事件的发生一定有某种原因或事先的安排。
② happen：指未经筹划而偶然发生，多指发生不好的事情。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

那场交通事故发生在晚上 10 点半。

考题在线 6 In the past few years, great changes _____ in Lianyungang. [连云港]

A. take place　　B. took place

C. have taken place　　D. have been taken place

点拨：考查句子时态。根据时间状语 In the past few years 可判断本句时态应为现在完成时。

A man knows his companion in a long journey and a little inn.
路遥知马力，日久见人心。

★**He set up computers in a village in India where children could not speak English.**

大家一定要记住：若代词作 set up 的宾语，要放在两词中间。 敲黑板

⑥ **set up 安装；建立，创立**

e.g. How long will it take to set up a new machine?

安装一台新机器要花费多长时间?

The university was set up in 1911.

这所大学建于 1911 年。

The workers are building railways.

工人们在修建铁路。

辨析：set up 与 build

① set up 强调机构、组织及相应设施的建立。

② build 意为“建筑，建造”，常指建造房屋、桥梁、道路、高楼等大型建筑物。

考题在线 7 —What should we do for the disabled children?

—You should _____ a study group to help them. [贵港]

A. take up　　B. set up

C. look up　　D. put up

点拨：考查动词短语辨析。take up 占据；set up 创立；look up 查阅；put up 张贴。句意：——我们应该为残疾儿童做点什么呢？——你们应该成立一个学习小组来帮助他们。

★**To everyone's surprise, children taught themselves how to use the machines in a very short period of time.**

⑦ **to one's surprise 令某人惊讶的是**

通常用作插入语，放在句首，用逗号与其他成分隔开。

e.g. To his surprise, the lost pencil is in his pencil box.

令他吃惊的是，那支丢失的铅笔就在他的铅笔盒里。

She looked up in surprise.

她惊讶地抬起头。

in/with surprise 意为“惊讶地”，用作状语。

He gasped with surprise at her strength.

发现她有这么大的力气，他大吃一惊。

考题在线 8 根据句意及首字母提示写出单词。

To his s_____, his father agreed with him to watch the football match together. [新疆]

考题在线答案　1. A　2. A　3. D　4. D　5. was able to　6. C　7. B　8. surprise

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 模块语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

代词

英语中的代词主要有：人称代词、物主代词、反身代词、不定代词、指示代词和疑问代词。

考点1 人称代词

人称＼数和格	单数		复数	
	主格	宾格	主格	宾格
第一人称	I	me	we	us
第二人称	you	you	you	you
第三人称	he, she, it	him, her, it	they	them

速记小筏：
人称代词分主宾，只有八对要区分。
you 和 it 主宾相同不用分；
其他五对应记清。

考向1：考查主格。人称代词主格经常在句中作主语。

e.g. She often walks to the park in the morning.
早晨她经常步行去公园。

考向2：考查宾格。动词或介词后要用代词的宾格形式。

e.g. I didn't notice her. 我没有注意到她。

考题在线1 —Linda, why do you often go to see the pandas?
—I go to see _____ because they are very interesting. [湘西]
A. they B. them C. their

考点2 物主代词

人称＼数和分类	单数		复数	
	形容词性物主代词	名词性物主代词	形容词性物主代词	名词性物主代词
第一人称	my	mine	our	ours
第二人称	your	yours	your	yours
第三人称	his, her, its	his, hers, its	their	theirs

速记小筏：
形容词性物主代词变为名词性物主代词口诀：
一变：my 变 mine；二留：his, its 不变；
三 s：其他的在形容词性物主代词后加 s。

考向1：考查形容词性物主代词后跟名词。

e.g. This isn't my book. There's Lily's name on it. Maybe it's her book. 这不是我的书。上面有莉莉的名字。或许是她的书。

考题在线2 She is new here. I don't know _____ name. [邵阳]
A. hers B. her C. she

考向2：【重点】考查名词性物主代词单独使用，其后不跟名词。

e.g. —Is the bike yours? 这辆自行车是你的吗？
—No, mine is over there. 不是，我的在那边。

考题在线3 —I'm sorry I took your school uniform by mistake. But where is _____?
—Don't worry. Let me help you find it. [连云港]
A. he B. his C. mine D. yours

考点3 反身代词

人称＼数	单数	复数
第一人称	myself	ourselves
第二人称	yourself	yourselves
第三人称	himself, herself, itself	themselves

速记小筏：
反身代词有规律，一、二人称用物主；
第三人称是宾格；
单数 self 复数 selves 很好记。

考向1：考查反身代词作宾语。

考题在线4 You're the future of this country. Don't keep asking what this country can do

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

for you. Ask _____ what you can do for this country. [无锡]

A. us B. ourselves

C. you D. yourselves

点拨：考查代词辨析。根据后面的“what you can do”可知此处应用“you”的反身代词yourselves，前面出现了“you”，再次出现则用其反身代词。

考向2：考查某些固定搭配，如：enjoy oneself 玩得高兴，过得愉快；learn...by oneself 自学……；help oneself to... 随便吃……

考题在线5 —Do you often help your sister with her English?

—No, she learns English by _____. [德阳]

A. himself B. herself

C. myself D. yourself

考点4 不定代词

不定代词分两类：

1. 普通不定代词

some, any, much, many, each, few, little, one等。

2. 复合不定代词

someone, anyone, everybody, nobody, anything, something等。

考向1：it和one

one指的是前面提到的同类事物	The shirt is too small for me. Will you please show me a bigger one? 这件衬衫对于我来说太小了。请给我一件较大的好吗?
it指的是前面提到的那个事物，指同一个事物	My father bought me a bike as my birthday present. I like it very much. 我爸爸给我买了一辆自行车作为我的生日礼物。我非常喜欢它。

考题在线6 —The fridges are on sale in the supermarket today.

—Really? Let's go and buy _____ for your new kitchen. [安徽]

A. one B. it C. that D. them

点拨：用语境法解题。one指代前面提到的物品中的一个；it指代前面提到的物品；that那个；them它们。从语境知，这里指的是去买这些冰箱中的一个。

考向2：some, something和any, anything

some和something一般用于肯定句中。	There're some birds in the tree. 树上有一些鸟。 There's something new in today's newspaper. 今天的报纸上有些新东西。
any和anything一般用于否定句和疑问句中。	There're not any vegetables in the fridge. 冰箱里没有蔬菜。 Did Linda tell you anything interesting? 琳达告诉了你一些有趣的事情吗?

考题在线7 —Did you find _____ funny in the book?

—Yes. It talks about how to be a good kid. [泸州]

A. nothing B. something

C. anything D. everything

考向3：other家族系列

other意为“别的，其他的，另外的”，常作定语。	There're other ways to solve the problem. 还有其他办法来解决这个问题。
another指“三者或三者以上中的另一个”；后跟“数词+名词”时表示“再、又”的意思。	If you don't like this one, try another. 如果你不喜欢这个，试试另一个。 Would you like another two cakes? 你想再要两块蛋糕吗?
the other表示“两者中的另一个”，the others表示“两部分中的另一部分”。	I have two sisters. One is a teacher, and the other is a nurse. 我有两个姐姐，一个是教师，另一个是护士。 There're forty students in my class. One is from England, and the others come from China. 我的班里有四十个学生。一个来自英国，其余的来自中国。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考题在线 8 Catherine has two cousins. One is quiet, and _____ is noisy. [上海]

A. another　　B. the other

C. other　　D. others

考点 5 指示代词

this 指近处的物体；打电话时用 this 介绍自己。	Is this your book? 这是你的书吗? Hello.This is Sally speaking. 你好，我是萨莉。
that 指远处的物体；打电话时用 that 指代对方。	Look at that new car over there. 看那边那辆新轿车。 Is that Jack speaking? 你是杰克吗?
these 为 this 的复数形式，指代近处的物体。	Are these Lily's parents? 这是莉莉的父母吗?
those 指代远处的物体，为 that 的复数形式。	Those pens are Lily's. 那些钢笔是莉莉的。

考题在线 9 —Mr. Han, how is the weather in Anshun now, please?

—Actually, it is cooler than _____ in Guiyang. [安顺]

A. it　　B. that　　C. this　　D. those

考点 6 疑问代词

常见的疑问代词有 who, whom, whose, what, which 等。

e.g. I know whose camera this is.

我知道这是谁的相机。

考向：考查特殊疑问词的用法，what 是问什么；whose 问所属；who 问是谁；which 问哪一个。

考题在线 10 _____ pencil is this, Tom's or Henry's? [武威]

A. What　　B. When

C. Who　　D. Whose

介词与介词短语

介词是一种用来表示词与词、词与句子之间关系的词。在本模块中，我们将重点介绍介词短语的使用和介词的兼词现象。

考点 1 介词的分类

结构分类	简单介词	由一个词构成的介词	in; at; on
	合成介词	由两个词合在一起构成的介词	into; outside
	介词短语	由两个或多个单词组成的起介词作用的短语	next to; thanks to
意义分类	地点介词	表示事物之间空间和方位的介词	among; beside
	时间介词	表示时间的介词	after; in; at
	手段介词	表示方式、方法、手段的介词	by; with; like
	其他介词	about; except; towards	

考题在线 11 —The population of the poor is getting smaller and smaller.

—_____ the government, their living conditions have improved. [宜昌]

A. As for　　B. Thanks to

C. As a result of　　D. Thanks for

点拨：用词义辨析法解题。as for "至于"，thanks to "多亏了，由于"，as a result of "结果是"，thanks for "感谢……"。结合句意可知，"多亏了政府的帮助，他们的生活条件已经提高了。"

考点 2 介词短语

介词与其后的宾语构成介词短语，介词短语中介词的宾语可以由名词、代词、数词、*v*-ing 形式、"疑问词 + 不定式"、从句等充当。介词短语的语法功能如下：

①作表语

e.g. I was on the train at that moment.

那时我在火车上。

②作状语

e.g. Can you sing this song in English?

你能用英语唱这首歌吗?

③作定语

e.g. The man under the tree is my father.

树下的那个男人是我爸爸。

④作宾语补足语

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

e.g. When she woke up, she found herself in the hospital. 当她醒来时，她发现自己在医院里。

考题在线 12 —Excuse me, is there a computer room in your school?

—Yes. It's _____ the fifth floor. [重庆]

A. on B. in C. at D. to

考点 3 介词的兼词现象

有些单词既可以用作连词也可以用作介词，而有些单词既可以用作介词又可以用作副词，应注意区分。

考向 1：【重点】after 和 before 可以用作连词，其后可接句子。

e.g. What did you do after you called the police? 报警之后，你做了什么？

before 和 after 也可用作介词，其后接名词或动词的 -ing 形式。

e.g. I'm going to the playground to play basketball after school.

放学后我要去操场打篮球。

考题在线 13 Bob, dinner is ready. Please wash your hands _____ you eat. [河北]

A. until B. after C. while D. before

考向 2：till/until 与 since

till/until 和 since 既可以作介词，也可以作连词。作介词时后面通常跟表示时间点的词或短语，作连词时后面跟句子。

e.g. The shop's open till/until nine o'clock on Fridays.

这家商店周五营业到 9 点。（作介词）

Wait here till/until I get back.

在这儿等到我回来。（作连词）

I haven't heard from him since last year.

自去年以来我就未曾收到过他的信。（作介词）

It has been ten years since he came here. 他来这里已有 10 年了。（作连词）

考题在线 14 —Excuse me, can you tell me the way to the nearest underground station?

—Walk straight on _____ you see a white building. It's right there. [苏州]

A. though B. since C. until D. if

考向 3：above 和 below 可以用作介词，也可以用作副词。

e.g. Do not write below the line.

请勿写在线下。（作介词）

Please write to me at the address below.

请按照下面的地址给我写信。（作副词）

考题在线答案 1. B 2. B 3. C 4. D 5. B 6. A 7. C 8. B 9. B 10. D 11. B 12. A 13. D 14. C

Ⅳ. 写作一课一法 夺取中考写作 20分

写作小练笔

介绍 name 及 school

(My name is Susie Thompson. I'm at a secondary school—River School now.) It's about twenty minutes away from my home by bike. (We have five lessons every weekday from 9:05 am to 3:15 pm 介绍 lessons and each lesson lasts for an hour.) (Once a term, 介绍 a parents' meeting we have a parents' meeting for our parents to talk about our progress.) (When school finishes, we can 介绍 other activities do some after-school activities, such as sports clubs and language societies. Parties, the sports day and school plays are also popular among students.) I like everything here! 表达 feeling

模块话题 [遂宁]

你的初中生活即将结束。此时此刻，正是回顾过去，展望未来之际。请写一篇英语短文，谈谈你对初中三年学习生活的感受和对高中生活的向往。

短文需包括如下要点，可适当拓展以使行文连贯：

1. 师生关系；2. 学业成就；3. 生活乐趣；4. 感受初中；5. 向往高中。

注意：

1. 文章的开头和结尾已给出，不计入总词数；

2. 词数：80 左右。

I'll graduate from my junior school. At the moment of looking back at the three years

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

and looking forward to the senior high school, many words have come to my mind.

In a word, my junior school life is an unforgettable experience. And I believe my senior high school will be more meaningful.

审题指导（把握中心，得方向分）

1. 本文为三段式，一、三段已给出，要求考生根据提示补全第二段。

2. 第二段内容主要回顾三年的初中生活，要用第一人称，时态可用一般现在时或一般过去时。

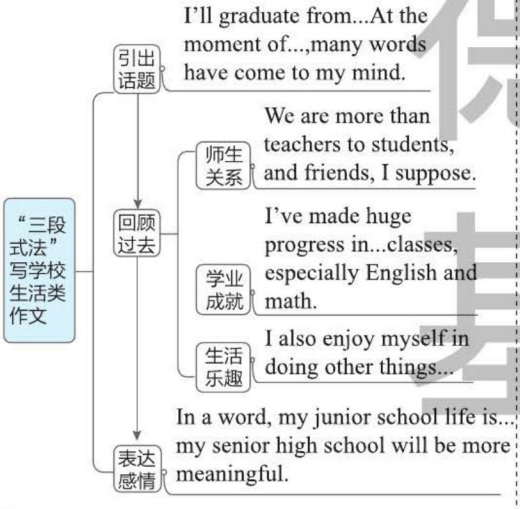
3. 在介绍学校生活时可分几个方面，要条理清楚，感情真挚。

写作技法（学会方法，巧得高分）

“三段式法”写学校生活类作文：

“三段式法”的模式写法通常为：首段引出话题；第二段回顾过去；第三段表达感情。

写作模板（学会套路，得基本分）



经典词句（妙用句式，得出彩分）

单词	unbelievable, accompany, suppose
短语	more than, frankly speaking, with their great help, make huge progress, full of
句子	1. It's quite unbelievable that they've accompanied me for more than 1 000 days. 2. I've made huge progress in regular academic classes, especially English and math.

范文赏析（书写工整，得印象分）

I'll graduate from my junior school. At the moment of looking back at the three years and looking forward to the senior high school, many words have come to my mind.

The first to pop into my mind are my teachers. It's quite unbelievable that they've accompanied me for more than 1000 days. Frankly speaking, we are more than teachers to students, and friends, I suppose. With their great help, I've made huge progress in regular academic classes, especially English and math. What's more, I even got into the top three in our class once. I also enjoy myself in doing other things, including taking various clubs, doing sports with nice classmates and teachers. However, those golden days full of laughter and tears are gone.

In a word, my junior school life is an unforgettable experience. And I believe my senior high school will be more meaningful.

名师点评：本文用“三段式法”回顾初中生活并表达对未来高中生活的向往，层次清晰，语言丰富。

第一：从“师生关系－学业成就－学校生活”三方面详细介绍了初中生活，层次感强，信息点全部得到覆盖。

第二：frankly speaking, with their great help, what's more 等插入语的使用使文字叙述条理分明，且环环紧扣。

第三：文中使用了较为精彩的句式和短语，如“It's ...that...”“with their great help”等，均彰显了作者扎实的基本功。



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅴ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础20分

(答案见239页)

一、根据汉语提示完成句子

1. I'll _____ speak English in another few months. 【导学号：7764826】

A. can　　B. could

C. be able to　　D. am able to

2. —How was your life in England?

—Quite different from here. _____, people there drink tea with milk. [山西]

A. In my opinion

B. To my surprise

C. At the beginning

3. —What should we do for the disabled children in the Children's Home?

—You're supposed to _____ a study group to help them.

A. take up　　B. fix up

C. set up　　D. stay up

4. —What about these two coats, madam?

—_____ of them fits me. Could you show me _____ one? [达州]

A. Either; other

B. Neither; another

C. Neither; else

D. Either; another

5. Mr. Smith said his son was as _____ as his daughter. [邵阳]

A. hard-working

B. more hard-working

C. the most hard-working

二、语法专练

6. As a child, I would sit for hours by the river doing _____—simply daydreaming. [河南]

A. nothing　　B. everything

C. something　　D. anything

7. —Hi, Anna. Are these your sister's pencils?

—Oh, no. They're not _____. [黄石]

A. her　　B. him

C. hers　　D. his

8. —Where would you like to go tomorrow, Beijing or Xi'an?

— _____ is OK. It's up to you. [扬州]

A. Either　　B. Neither

C. Both　　D. All

9. Let's put the piano over there, _____ the wall. [无锡]

A. above　　B. against

C. across　　D. around

10. In China, we are using the FAST to find stars _____. Now more and more people want to know about the largest radio telescope (望远镜) in the world. [山西]

A. in person　　B. in public　　C. in space

三、模块知识浓缩

根据首字母提示完成短文。

I've been at Yuying School since I was eleven. If I p_____[11] my exams next year, I'll stay here u_____[12] I'm eighteen. Yuying School is a s_____[13] school.

Before class, our teacher checks which pupils are present or a_____[14]. Then the b_____[15] rings, and lessons start. This year I'll choose to learn English i_____[16] of Japanese.

Look at this photo about our school that I took myself. E_____[17] in this photo is wearing a shirt and t_____[18].

Tom says his school isn't as big as o_____[19]. I h_____[20] our school will become more and more beautiful.

基德

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Module 3 Life now and then

词汇表听写

魔法六维导图

语言能力

听：听对话，学会获取信息（讨论过去和今天的生活变化）（Unit1: Activity2）

说：对话是贝蒂和妈妈讨论现在的生活是否比过去的生活更好，对话涉及过去和现在健康、医疗、交通、工作等方面的变化；熟练掌握 Nearly finished. That's true. I suppose... 等日常用语

读：能记住所学语段的关键词，用自己的语言复述课文：从家庭生活、妇女地位、交通出行和娱乐等方面了解今昔生活的变化。（Unit2: Activity2）

写：学会如何写生活变化类作文

知识小集

高频单词
- double ◂ 动词
- fear, wealth, light, cold, heat, education, transport ◂ 名词
- wealthy, deaf, tiny, full-time ◂ 形容词
- seldom ◂ 副词

重点短语：used to // spare time // speak up // more than // the number of // get married // be busy doing sth. // generally speaking

常考句型
1. 主语 +know+how to do sth.
2. I suppose/think + 宾语从句.
3. Why don't you do sth.?
4. It's so+ 形容词 +to do sth.

模块语法：形容词与副词

方法大观

听力技巧：观察标注法（68 页）

阅读策略：排除法（73 页）

写作技法："对比法"写生活变化类作文（87 页）

解题方法：词义辨析法（74, 75, 239 页），语法分析法（67, 240 页），标志词法（64 页），同义词法（65 页），主谓一致法（66 页），分析句子结构法（73 页），关键词法（84 页），推理法（85 页）

文化意识

通过 Unit1 Activity3 的学习，多了解中国社会经济发展和人民生活水平的提高（如：中国的新四大发明）；通过 Unit2 Activity2 的学习，从多方面比较现在和过去的生活（如电影《厉害了，我的国》）。

英语思维

结合语境尝试用英语解释英语，培养用英语思考问题的能力。通过阅读要学会课文缩写或英语演讲，内容包括介绍过去的生活状况和现在生活的变化，带有自己评论性观点。

学习能力

1. 进行小组辩论：把全班分为"正方"和"反方"，就"Is life today better than it was in the past?"这个话题进行辩论，提高自己的口语技能；
2. 在网上搜索关于"科技改变生活"的视频，感知科技在生活各方面给我们带来的变化。

记忆大师

Unit 1

必背单词

1. **wealthy** *adj.* 富有的；富裕的→ wealthier（比较级）更富有的 →wealthiest（最高级）最富有的→ wealth *n.* 财富；财产
2. **fear** *n.* 担心，害怕→ be fearful of 担心
3. **double** *v.* 使加倍；把……增加一倍 *adj.*（成）双的；两个……→ a double bed 一张双人床
4. **seldom** *adv.* 很少地；不常 →rarely（同义词）很少地
5. **spare** *adj.* 空余的；备用的
6. **deaf** *adj.* 聋的

必背短语

7. in the past 在过去
8. deal with 处理
9. used to 过去常常
10. the number of……的数量
11. spare time 业余时间；闲暇

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

12. speak up 大点声说

必背句子

13. **Nearly** finished. 快完成了。
14. I **suppose that's because** more people have cars.
我想那是因为更多的人们有小汽车。
15. That's **a good idea**.
那是个好主意。
16. That's **true**.
的确如此。

Unit 2

必背单词

1. **tiny** *adj.* 微小的；极小的 →tinier（比较级）更微小的 →tiniest（最高级）最微小的
2. **postman** *n.* 邮递员 →postmen *pl.* 邮递员
3. **cold** *n.* 寒冷；冷空气 →cold *adj.* 冷的，寒冷的
4. **heat** *n.* 高温；热度 →hot *adj.* 热的，炎热的
5. **full-time** *adj.* 专职的；全日制的 →part-time（对应词）兼职的
6. **light** *n.* 电灯 →light *adj.* 轻的 →heavy（反义词）重的
7. **education** *n.* （个人的）教育；学业 →educate *v.* 教育
8. **electric** *adj.* 用电的；电动的
9. **candle** *n.* 蜡烛
10. **role** *n.* 作用；职责；角色
11. **transport** *n.* 运输业；交通

必背短语

12. live in 居住
13. all one's life 某人的一生
14. go out 外出
15. look after 照顾
16. once or twice a year 一年一两次
17. what's more 而且
18. get married 结婚
19. on foot 步行
20. more than 多于；不只是
21. be busy doing sth. 忙于做某事
22. generally speaking 总而言之，总的来说

必背句子

23. I **asked** her **about** life today and in the past.
我向她了解有关现在和过去的生活。
24. I **wasn't sent** to school because my family **couldn't afford** it.
我没被送去上学因为我的家里供不起。
25. **It's** so difficult **to cross** the road.
横穿马路太困难了。
26. **Generally speaking**, I think life is better today.
总的来说，我认为现在的生活更好了。

Unit 3

必背短语

1. a lot 很，非常
2. think of…as 把……看作
3. find out 找出，查明
4. thousands of 成千上万
5. as a result 结果
6. stop doing sth. 停止做某事

必背句子

7. **Not all** the changes are good ones.
并不是所有的变化都是好的。
8. We **must** all work harder **to reduce** pollution.
我们必须都更加努力地减少污染。
9. I **hope** this is **helpful**.
我希望这能有帮助。
10. **Write to** me if you need **more information**.
如果你需要更多的信息，写信给我。

必背语法

11. People are **wealthier** today, and they live **longer** than they did in the past.
现在的人们比过去富有了，也比过去长寿了。
12. But people don't take **as much exercise as** they used to.
但是人们不如从前那样锻炼得多了。
13. **More** people have cars, and they walk or use their bikes **less**.
更多的人买了汽车，他们走路少了，骑车也少了。
14. We eat **better** and we live **longer**.
我们吃得更好了，也更长寿了。
15. Do you think that life is **better** today than in the past?
你认为现在的生活比过去的好吗？

基德英语

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 1 They sometimes work harder.

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

Listening and vocabulary 听力与词汇

1 Talk about the photo. Say what life was like in the early 1980s and what life is like today. 谈论这张照片。说一说二十世纪八十年代初期的生活是什么样子的以及现在的生活又是什么样子的。

课文听力

There weren't so many cars as there are today.

没有像现在这么多的汽车。

2 Listen and answer the questions.

听一听并回答问题。

1. What is the history homework?
   历史家庭作业是什么?
2. What is the question they need to answer?
   他们需要回答的问题是什么?
3. What does Betty ask? 贝蒂问了什么?
4. What does Daming ask? 大明问了什么?

3 Listen and read.

听一听，读一读。

课文朗读

Mum: It's getting late, Betty. How is your homework?

天很晚了，贝蒂。你的作业（完成得）怎么样?

Betty: Nearly ① finished. Mum, do you think that life is better today than in the past?

快完成了。妈妈，你觉得现在的生活比过去（的生活）更好了吗?

Mum: Yes, of course, I do.

是的，当然，我认为更好了。

Betty: I do too. People are wealthier ② /'welθiə/ today, and they live longer than they did in the past.

我也这样认为。现在的人们更富有了，他们比过去更长寿了。

Mum: That's true. We know more about medicine today, and there's less fear ③ /fɪə/ of getting ill because we know how to deal with ④ the ordinary diseases. But people don't take as much exercise as they used to ⑤ /'ju:st tu/. 确实如此。现在我们对医学懂得更多，对生病的恐惧更少了，因为我们知道如何处理常见的疾病。但是人们不如以前锻炼得多了。

Betty: I suppose ⑥ that's because more people have cars, and they walk or use their bikes less.

我想那是因为更多的人们有小汽车，他们更少步行或者更少使用他们的自行车。

Mum: Some people think life in the past was simpler and healthier than today. More wealth/welθ/ sometimes means less health. When the number of ⑦ cars is doubled, the pollution is also doubled ⑧ /'dʌbld/, or even worse. 有些人认为过去的生活比现在（的生活）更简单和更健康。有时更多的财富意味着更少的健康。当小汽车的数量加倍时，污染也会加倍，或者甚至更严重。

Betty: What about work? Do people work as hard as they did fifty years ago?

工作呢? 人们工作和 50 年前一样努力吗?

Mum: Yes, and they sometimes work harder. People seldom ⑨ /'seldəm/ say they have enough ⑩ spare/speə/ time! Why don't you go and ask Mrs Li, our neighbour? ⑪ She's over seventy years old. She's seen how life has changed.

是的，他们有时工作更辛苦。人们很少说他们有足够的空余时间! 你为什么不去问问我们的邻

未经许可

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

居——李太太呢？她 70 多岁了。她已经目睹了生活是怎样变化的。

Betty: That's a good idea. I'll go and ask her.
那是个好主意。我去问问她。

Mum: Remember to [12] speak up [13]! She's a bit deaf/def/ now.
记得大点声说！她现在有点耳聋。

Everyday English 日常英语

- Nearly finished. 快完成了。
- That's true. 的确如此。
- I suppose... 我想……

Now choose the correct answer.
现在选出正确的答案。

1. People live longer today because _____.
现在人们更长寿了，因为_____。
a) we know more about medicine
我们对医学了解得更多
b) they do not work as hard as they did
他们工作不如以前辛苦
c) they take more exercise 他们锻炼得更多

2. There is less fear of getting ill _____.
（人们）对于生病的恐惧更少了，_____。
a) so people live longer 因此人们更长寿了
b) because people know how to deal with the ordinary diseases
因为人们知道如何处理常见的疾病
c) so people work harder than before
因此人们工作比以前更辛苦

3. People take less exercise because _____.
人们运动较少，因为_____。
a) they do not need to 他们不需要
b) they drive cars instead 他们用开车替代
c) they do not have cars or bikes
他们没有汽车或自行车

4. People work harder today and _____.
现在人们工作更辛苦并且_____。
a) they do not live as long as they did
他们不如过去那么长寿
b) they do not usually have enough free time 他们通常没有足够的空闲时间
c) they live a healthier life
他们过着更健康的生活

4 Complete the questions with the words or expression in the box.
用方框中的单词或短语完成问题。

deaf 聋的　doubled 使加倍　fear 害怕
spare 空闲的　used to 过去常常　wealth 财富

1. What kinds of things do you _____?
你_____什么样的东西?
2. What do you do in your _____ time?
你在_____时间里干什么?
3. What can someone not do if they are _____?
如果某人_____他们不能做什么?
4. If something is _____, is it more or less? 如果某物_____，它是更多还是更少?
5. Do you think people _____ take more exercise than they do today?
你认为人们_____比现在锻炼得多吗?
6. Do you think people have more _____ today than they used to?
你认为人们现在比过去拥有更多的_____吗?

Now work in pairs. Ask and answer.
现在结对练习。问和答。

Pronunciation and speaking 发音与会话

5 Read and predict which words the speaker is likely to stress.
阅读并预测说话者可能会重读哪些单词。

Some people think life in the past was simpler and healthier than today. More wealth sometimes means less health. When the number of cars is doubled, the pollution is also doubled, or even worse. 一些人认为过去的生活比今天（的生活）更简单和更健康。有时

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

更多的财富意味着更少的健康。当汽车的数量加倍时，污染也会加倍，或者甚至更糟糕。

Now listen and check. 现在听并核对。

6 Read the paragraph in Activity 5 aloud.

大声阅读活动 5 中的段落。

7 Work in pairs. Answer the question and give your reasons.

结对练习。回答问题并给出你的理由。

—Is life better today than in the past?

今天的生活比过去（的生活）更好吗?

—Yes, it is. I think it's because.../

是，是的。我认为它是因为……/

No, it isn't. I think...

不，不是的。我认为……

Now say what is better or worse in:

现在说一说什么在哪一方面更好或者更坏：

- education 教育
- environment 环境
- health 健康

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注 •考点应用

★Nearly finished.

① **nearly** /'nɪəli/ *adv.* (almost; not quite) 几乎，差不多

e.g. There is almost nothing left.
几乎什么也没留下。

考题在线 1 She said _____ nothing.

A. nearly B. almost

C. hard D. hardly

点拨：用标志词法解答。almost 可以和表示否定意义的词连用，由句中的标志词 nothing 可知。

① nearly 可与 not 连用，not nearly 意为"远非"；

② almost 可与 never, no, none, nothing, nobody 等否定意义的词连用。

③ almost 的差距比 nearly 要小。

辨析：nearly 与 almost

almost 与 nearly 在肯定句中可以互换，且都可以用于行为动词的否定形式前，但两者仍存在着许多区别。

★People are wealthier today...

② **wealthy** /'welθi/ *adj.* (rich;having a lot of money) 富有的；富裕的

e.g. His father is a wealthy man. 他父亲是位有钱人。

her great wealth 她的巨额财富

考题在线 2 The man is famous for his great _____(财富).

考题在线 3 The man is _____ (wealthy) of this city.

wealthy 的名词形式为 wealth，意为"财富"。wealthy 的比较级为 wealthier，最高级为 wealthiest。其同义词为 rich，反义词为 poor。

★We know more about medicine today, and there's less fear of getting ill because we know how to deal with the ordinary diseases.

③ **fear** /fɪə/ *n.* (the bad feeling that you have when you are in danger) 担心；害怕

e.g. Her brother feels no fear. 她弟弟什么也不怕。

I couldn't move for fear. 我害怕得动弹不得。

She fears mice. 她害怕老鼠。

She feared for her safety. 她担心她的安全。

fear 形容词为 fearful：主语 +be fearful of sth./doing sth.

主语 +be fearful+ that 从句。

fear 既可作及物动词也可作不及物动词

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

拓展：fearless *adj.* 不怕的，大胆的，勇敢的，无畏的

考题在线 4 He got to the station early _____ missing his train.

A. in need　　B. instead of

C. for fear of　　D. in search

④ 【高频】**deal with 处理，应对** deal with 的同义词组为 do with；但 deal with 常与 how 搭配；而 do with 则与 what 搭配。

e.g. I have a difficult case to deal with.

我遇到一件难以应对的事情。

I don't know how to deal with the problem.=I don't know what to do with the problem. 我不知道如何处理这个问题。

考题在线 5 The best way of solving the problem is by asking the teacher for help. [黔南州]

A. dealing with　B. agreeing with　C. looking up　D. giving up

点拨：用同义词法解题。solve 解决，与 deal with 处理，意思接近。

★**But people don't take as much exercise as they used to.**

⑤ **used to 过去常常**

【重点】相似结构辨析：

used to do sth.	过去经常做某事	used to 后跟动词原形，用于描述过去经常做的事情。
be used to doing sth.	习惯做某事	be used to 后要跟名词、代词或动名词，be used to 同 get used to, become used to。
be used to do sth.	被用于做某事	该结构是被动结构，表示"被用于做某事"，同 be used for doing sth.。



Never put off till tomorrow what you can do today.
今日事今日毕。

e.g. He used to ride a bike to go to school. 以前他经常骑自行车去上学。

We are used to living in the countryside. 我们已经习惯在农村居住了。

The knife is used to cut things. 刀是用来切东西的。

考题在线 6 —How does your father go to work every day?

—He used to _____ a bus but now he is used to _____. [铜仁]

A. take; walk　　B. taking; walking

C. taking; walk　　D. take; walking

★**I suppose that's because more people have cars, and they walk or use their bikes less.**

⑥ **suppose** /sə'pəʊz/ *v.* (to imagine what would happen if sth. were true) **猜想；假设**

suppose 常见用法：
① be supposed to do/to be sth. 意为"应该做某事/是某事"
② suppose+名词(短语)/代词+to be 意为"认为……是……"
③ I suppose +that+从句，意为"我认为……"

e.g. You were supposed to be here an hour ago. 你本该在一小时以前就到这儿。

They had supposed me to be a doctor. 他们原以为我是名医生。

I suppose (that) I'll see her again.

我以为我会再见到她。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料



考题在线 7 完成句子。

青少年应该勇于质疑。

Teenagers are _____ be brave enough to ask questions.

敲黑板 大家一定要记住：在"I think/suppose/believe+(that)从句"中，对从句的否定通常转移到主句中。

★When the number of cars is doubled, the pollution is also doubled, or even worse.

⑦【高频】**the number of** ……的数量

e.g. The number of students who are absent is five.

有五名学生缺席。

A number of people come from China.

许多人来自中国。

辨析：the number of 与 a number of

① the number of 后接可数名词复数，作主语时，谓语动词用单数。

② a number of 意为"大量的"；后接可数名词复数，作主语时，谓语动词用复数。

考题在线 8 —The number of tourists _____ over 33 million this year.

—Yes. A large number of tourists _____ so far because of the new look of our city. [天水]

A. is; have come

B. is; has come

C. are; has come

D. are; have come

方法真题练

点拨：用主谓一致法解题。考查主谓一致。the number of 意为"……的数量"，作主语时，其后的谓语动词用单数形式；a large number of 意为"许多的；大量的"，后跟"可数名词复数＋谓语动词（复数）"。根据句意可知：第一个空格用单数 is；第二个空格用 have come。

⑧ **double** /'dʌbl/ *v.* (to become,or make sth. become twice as much or as many) 使加倍；把……增加一倍；*adj.*（成）双的；两个

e.g. a double bed

一张双人床

We should double steel output.

我们应该把钢铁产量增加一倍。

double 的不同含义：

①形容词，意为"两倍的；双的；供两者用的"；

②动词，（使）加倍

考题在线 9 根据句意及汉语提示写出单词。

Trade between us has almost _____（加倍）in the past five years.

★People seldom say they have enough spare time!

⑨ **seldom** /'seldəm/ *adv.* (not often) 很少地；不常

seldom 为否定副词，相当于 rarely 或 not often。一般放在实义动词之前，连系动词 be 或助动词之后。

e.g. They seldom go out for dinner.

他们很少到外面用餐。

Tony is seldom late for school.

托尼很少上学迟到。

He seldom goes to see the film,does he?

他很少去看电影，是吗？

敲黑板 含 seldom 的句子常被看作否定句。若用于反意疑问句，附加问句部分应用肯定式。类似的单词还有 hardly，never 等。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

考题在线 10 —Would you like some green tea?

—No, thanks. I _____ drink green tea. It hurts my stomach.[南京]

A. almost　　B. seldom　　C. only　　D. still

⑩ **enough** /ɪ'nʌf/ *det.* (as many or as much as sb. needs or wants) 足够的，充分的

enough 作定语修饰名词时，可位于名词前，也可位于名词后。

e.g. We have enough time to catch up with the first.

我们有足够的时间来赶上第一名。

enough 还可用作副词，修饰动词、形容词或副词时，应位于所修饰词之后。

The parcel is light enough for me to carry.

这个包裹足够轻，我能搬得动。

"...not+ 形容词 / 副词 +enough to do..." 常与"...too+ 形容词 / 副词（反义词）+to do" 相互转换。

The little girl is not old enough to take care of herself.

=The little girl is too young to take care of herself.

这个小女孩太小了，不能照顾自己。

考题在线 11 His joke is _____ to make us all _____. [天水]

A. enough funny; laugh

B. funny enough; laugh

C. enough funny; to laugh

D. funny enough; to laugh

点拨：用语法分析法解题。enough 在这里用作副词，意为"足够地"，可修饰形容词或副词，要放在所修饰的形容词或副词之后，故第一个空格用 funny enough。使役动词 make 后跟不定式作宾语补足语要省去不定式符号 to，即 make sb. do sth. 意为"让某人做某事"，故第二个空格用 laugh。

★ **Why don't you go and ask Mrs Li, our neighbour?**

⑪ **Why don't you do sth.?** 你为什么不做某事呢？

Why don't you do sth.？常用来向对方提出建议，相当于"Why not do sth.？"常用的肯定答语：Good idea./Sounds great./All right./Sure. 等；否定答语：No, I don't think so./Sorry, I can't. 等。

e.g. —Why don't you go shopping with us?

你为什么不和我们一起去购物呢？

—Good idea.

好主意。

其他提建议的表达方式：Let's do sth./Shall we do sth.?/ What/How about（doing）sth.?

Let's listen to the tape now.

现在让我们听录音吧。

How about going swimming this afternoon?

今天下午去游泳怎么样？

考题在线 12 —Bob, I'm not good at English. What should I do?

—Why not _____ an English club to practise _____ English?

[眉山]

A. to join; speaking　　B. join; to speak

C. to join; to speak　　D. join; speaking

点拨：考查非谓语动词。由"Why not+do sth.?"可知，第一空用 join；再由 practise doing sth.（练习做某事）可知第二空用 speaking。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

有些动词后接宾语时，既可接不定式，又可接动名词，但有区别，常见情况如下：

(1) forget to do sth. 忘记去做某事
forget doing sth. 忘记做过某事

(2) try to do sth. 尽力做某事
try doing sth. 试着做某事

★Remember to speak up!

⑫ remember to do sth. 记得去做某事

【难点】辨析: remember to do sth. 与 remember doing sth.

remember to do sth.	意为“记得去做某事”，指事情还未做。	e.g. Remember to invite Tom to your birthday party. 记得邀请汤姆参加你的生日聚会。
remember doing sth.	意为“记得做过某事”，指事情已经做了。	e.g. I remembered inviting him this morning, but he was too busy to come. 我记得今天早晨邀请过他了，可他太忙不能来了。

考题在线 13 Please stop _____ and go out for a walk. Remember _____ warm clothes. [黔南]

A. to study; wearing　　B. studying; to wear
C. to study; to wear　　D. studying; wearing

与 speak 相关的短语有：
speak to sb. 和某人谈话
speak to sb. about sth. 跟某人谈某事

⑬ speak up 大点声说

e.g. Speak up, please. I can't hear clearly.
请大点声说，我听不清楚。

敲黑板 speak up 为“动词＋副词”型短语，但相当于不及物动词。

考题在线 14 完成句子。
那个害羞的女孩不敢大声说话。
The shy girl is afraid of _____ _____.

考题在线答案 1. B　2. wealth　3. the wealthiest　4. C　5. A　6. D　7. supposed to　8. A　9. doubled　10. B　11. B　12. D　13. B　14. speaking up

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

(答案见239页)

听力技巧

观察标注法（在听力训练开始之前，应注意观察听力题目，从已给出的问题中获取有用的信息，必要时做好标注。也就是我们平时所说的“三分观察三分标，剩下四分要听好”。因此听力的很多工夫在“听”之外。）

听力过程

听教材 Activity 2，完成以下习题

1. For _____ homework, Mr Jackson asks the students to write about life in the past and life today.
A. Chinese
B. English
C. history

课文听力

2. There are _____ people in the dialogue.
A. five
B. two
C. three

3. Mr Jackson thinks the _____ is an important part of our lives today.
A. environment
B. homework
C. traffic

4. Why are we safer today according to Daming?
A. Because there are more accidents today.
B. Because our life is better today.
C. Because there are so many laws to protect us today.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

☞(答案见239页)

一、根据句意及首字母提示完成句子

1. The old woman is d_____, so she can't hear anything.

2. Mrs Wu hardly had s_____ time to look after her daughter.

3. Junk food is bad for our health, so we should s_____ eat it.

4. Everyone looked at each other in f_____.

5. We are s_____ to behave properly in public places. [日照]

二、用方框内单词或短语的适当形式完成句子

deal with, wealth, be supposed to, remember, double

6. In China students _____ greet the teachers when classes begin.

7. How shall we _____ this problem?

8. You must _____ to start your work at 8 a.m. every day.

9. This rich man gave all his _____ to his country.

10. Membership almost _____ in two years.

三、单项选择

11. Amanda read the article _____, and found something important in it. [黔南]

A. enough careful

B. carefully enough

C. enough carefully

D. careful enough

12. According to a recent survey, _____ three fifths of working mothers in China don't want to have a second child. [广东]

A. mostly B. especially

C. partly D. nearly

13. —Did your father use to _____ to work?

—Yes, but now he likes using public transportation. He is used to _____ the bus. [自贡]

A. drive; taking

B. driving; taking

C. driving; take

14. A number of visitors _____ visiting the West Lake and the number of the visitors _____ increasing. [齐齐哈尔]

A. are; is B. is; are C. are;are

15. Remember _____ some fruit when you come back. [邵阳]

A. buying B. to buy

C. buy

四、按要求完成句子

16. I suppose that the man comes from Canada. (改为否定句)

I _____ _____ that the man _____ from Canada.

17. There are forty students in our class. (改为同义句)

_____ _____ _____ the students in our class is forty.

18. He seldom watches TV on Monday, _____ _____?(完成反意疑问句)

19. Speak loudly! I can't hear you. (改为同义句)

_____ _____! I can't hear you.

20. Why don't you watch a talk show? (改为同义词)

_____ _____ watch a talk show?

未德基

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 2 I think life is better today.

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文及导读

导读批注

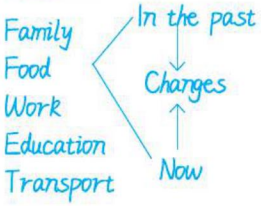
批 体裁：议论文

批 标题：点明中心式

由"Life now and then 现在和过去的生活"可知文章内容是介绍过去和现在生活变化的，标题点明了文章主旨。

批 议论方法：举例子

Para. 2–Para. 6



原文译文 · 导读

Reading and vocabulary 阅读和词汇

Pre-reading（读前）

Qs: 1. What life was like in the past? 2. What life is like today?
3. Is life today better than it was in the past?

1 **Look at the woman in the photo. How do you think she feels? Think about what she will talk about:**
看照片中的这位妇女。你认为她感觉如何？思考一下她将会谈论什么：

• family 家庭 • work 工作 • health 健康 • education 教育

2 **Read the passage and take notes on what Mrs Li says about the points in Activity 1.** 阅读文章，并将李太太对活动 1 中的要点所说的内容做笔记。

While-reading（读中）

Qs: 1. Where does Mrs Li live?
2. How often could Mrs Li eat meat in the past?
3. Why does Mrs Li feel lonely sometimes?

Life now and then 现在和过去的生活

By Betty King 贝蒂 · 金

1 Mrs Li is over seventy years old. She has lived in Beijing all her life. I asked her about life today and in the past. 李太太 70 多岁了，她一辈子生活在北京。我向她了解了有关现在和过去的生活。
What was your life like in the past? 过去你的生活是什么样子的？

课文朗读

2 My family lived in a tiny[①] /'taɪnɪ/ house. There were no electric/ɪ'lektrɪk/ lights/laɪts/, only candles/'kændlz/. My father was a postman/'pəʊstmən/, and he often worked twelve hours a day outside in the winter cold/kəʊld/ or in the summer heat[②] /hi:t/. My mum was a farm girl before she met my father. She was a kind and loving mother. She didn't go out to work. There were five children in my family, and looking after us[③] was more than a full-time/'fʊl,taɪm/ job. 我的家人住在一个极小的房子里。没有电灯，只有蜡烛。我的父亲是一位邮递员。他经常一天在外面冒着冬日严寒或夏日酷暑工作 12 个小时。我妈妈在遇见我父亲之前是一位农村女孩。她是一位和蔼、慈爱的母亲。她没有外出工作。我家里有五个孩子，照顾我们比做一份全职工作更辛苦。

3 I remember the family meals. The food was simple. We could only eat

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

meat once or twice a year. I wasn't sent to school because my family couldn't afford④ it, and what's more⑤, because I was a girl. 我记得当时家里的饭菜。食物很简单。一年我们只能吃一次或两次肉。我没被送去上学因为我的家里供不起，更重要的是，因为我是一个女孩。

How has life changed? 生活如何改变的呢?

❹ Families have got smaller than they were in the past. Today most people only have one child! The role⑥ /rəʊl/ of women has changed too. My daughter is really lucky. She has a good education⑦ /ˌedjʊˈkeɪʃn/, and she goes to work even after getting married⑧. I'm happy to see she's busy working⑨ every day, but sometimes I feel lonely⑩ because she can't come to see me often. 家庭比过去更小了。现在大部分人只有一个孩子！妇女的角色也改变了。我女儿真的很幸运。她受到了良好的教育，甚至在结婚后她也去上班。看到她每天忙于工作我很开心，但有时我会感到寂寞，因为她不能经常来看望我。

❺ Transport/'trænspɔ:t/ and travel are easier today. When I was young, I went everywhere on foot or sometimes by bike. Now you can take the bus everywhere, and there's also the underground. And you young people can take a plane to anywhere in the world. The only thing I don't like, though⑪, is that there's so much more traffic. It's so difficult to cross the road. 现在交通和旅游更容易了。我年轻时，去每个地方都步行或有时骑自行车。现在你可以乘公共汽车到任何地方，也可以乘坐地铁。你们年轻人可以乘坐飞机去世界的任何地方。然而我唯一不喜欢的事情是车辆更多了。横过马路太困难了。

Of course, we didn't have television when I was a child. I really enjoy watching television today. There're so many good programmes, like the Beijing Opera and old films. But some of the shows are too noisy for me. 当然，我小的时候我们没有电视。现在我真的喜欢看电视。有那么多好看的节目，如京剧和老电影。但是有些节目对我来说太吵闹了。

❻ Generally speaking⑫, I think life is better today. We eat better and we live longer. 总的来说，我认为现在的生活更好了。我们吃得更好了，更长寿了。

Now complete the notes and add more points of your own.

现在完成笔记，并加入更多你自己的观点。

Life in the past 过去的生活	Life now 现在的生活
1. Family: bigger; five children 家庭：比较大；五个孩子	1. Family: smaller; one child 家庭：比较小；一个孩子
2. Food 食物：_____	2. _____
3. Work 工作：_____	3. _____
4. Education 教育：_____	4. _____

Post-reading（读后）

写作小练笔 ☞（答案见86页）

批 词语赏析：右边画〰处

lonely, difficult, noisy 三个形容词体现了 Mrs Li 对在家的"寂寞"、横过马路的"困难"、电视节目的"吵闹"的真实感受，丰富了论据，很具说服力。

批 观点态度：

本段为 Mrs Li 对生活变化的评论性观点，呼应全文，使文章的结构更完整。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

3 Complete the passage with the words and expression in the box. 用方框中的单词和短语完成短文。

candles 蜡烛	cold 冷的	generally speaking 总的来说
postman 邮递员	tiny 极小的	traffic 交通

Mrs Li's father was a (1) _____. He often worked outside for twelve hours a day in the summer heat or in the winter (2) _____. They lived in a (3) _____ house and used (4) _____ for light. Mrs Li says that (5) _____, life is better today. But not everything [13] is satisfying. There are some things that she is not happy with, for example, the (6) _____.

李太太的父亲是一位 (1)_____。无论是夏日酷暑还是冬日 (2)_____，他常常一天在外工作 12 个小时。他们住在一所 (3)_____房子里用 (4)_____来照明。李太太说 (5)_____，今天的生活更好了。但并不是事事都令人满意。有一些事情让她不高兴，例如 (6)_____。

Writing 写作

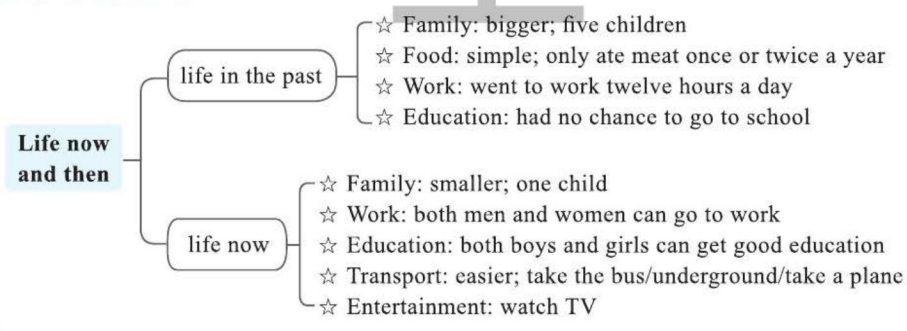
4 Write a passage about the advantages and disadvantages of life today.

写一篇关于现在生活利弊的文章。

- Choose two or three points from the notes in Activity 2 to write about.
  从活动 2 的笔记中选出两个或三个观点写一写。
  Families are smaller... 家庭更小了……
- Give examples or reasons to support those points. 给出支持那些观点的事例或理由。
  Most people only have one child today. 现在大部分人仅有一个孩子。
- For each of the points you choose, write about an advantage and/or a disadvantage. Use the words *however, but, although* or *used to* where appropriate. 对你选择的每一个观点，写出一个优点和 / 或一个缺点。在合适的地方用上词语 however, but, although 或 used to。
  Families are smaller because most people only have one child today. As a result, families have more money to spend on their child. However, an only child may feel lonely ... 家庭更小了，因为现在大部分人仅有一个孩子。结果，家里有更多的钱花在他们的孩子身上。然而，独生子女可能会感到寂寞……
- Finish the passage with your conclusion. 用你的结论完成文章。
  Generally speaking, I think... 总的来说，我认为……

5 Present your passage to the class. 向全班展示你的文章。

课文背诵指南



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练 专攻中考阅读 60分

(答案见239页)

阅读策略

排除法(快速阅读全文，根据所给出的题目和选项，仔细分析思考，与原文信息进行比较，排除不符合原文细节的选项，从而推敲出正确答案。)

阅读过程

一、速读文章，完成下面的题目

1. The passage mainly tells us about the differences between _____.

(主旨大意题)

二、细读文章，选择正确答案



2. How old is Mrs Li?

(细节查找题)

A. Seventy. B. Over seventy.

C. Eighty. D. Over eighty.

3. What's the meaning of the word "tiny" in the passage? (词义猜测题)

A. 漂亮的

B. 极小的

C. 精致的

D. 巨大的

4. ⊙ Why is Mrs Li's daughter lucky?

(细节查找题)

A. Because she has a good education.

B. Because she only has a child.

C. Because she has a big house.

D. Because she can make some money.

Ⅲ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用 •考点批注

★My family lived in a tiny house.

① **tiny** /'taɪnɪ/ *adj.* (very small in size or amount) 微小的；极小的

e.g. She keeps a tiny cat. 她养着一只小猫。

My little sister is very lovely.

我的小妹妹很可爱。

The apple is small. 这个苹果是小的。

辨析：little、small 与 tiny

① little 常指数量、程度、年龄等方面的小，有感情色彩。

② small 常指面积、体积等方面的小，客观陈述，无感情色彩。

③ tiny 指无法与其他事情相比较的异乎寻常的小。

考题在线 1 根据句意及汉语提示写出单词。

There is a _____ (微小的，极小的) insect on the ground.

★My father was a postman, and he often worked twelve hours a day outside in the winter cold or in the summer heat.

② **heat** /hi:t/ *n.* (the quality of being hot) 热度；高温

e.g. He can't stand the summer heat. 他受不了夏天的高温。

heat 的形容词形式为 hot。

辨析: fever, temperature 与 heat

fever	疾病的热；发烧
temperature	气温；体温
heat	太阳或火的热


heat


fever


temperature

考题在线 2 用所给单词的适当形式填空

It is very _____ (heat) today. Please take off your coat.

点拨：此题用分析句子结构法。空格处在句中作表语，应用形容词，heat 的形容词形式为 hot。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

★**… and looking after us was more than a full-time job.**

句中的 looking after us 为动名词短语，在句中作主语。动名词短语作主语时，谓语动词用单数形式。

③ 动名词作主语

e.g. Saying is easier than doing. 说比做容易。

考题在线 3 Playing computer games too often _____ bad for us.[永州]

A. am　　B.is　　C. are

★**I wasn't sent to school because my family couldn't afford it, and what's more, because I was a girl.**

④ **afford** /əˈfɔːd/ *v.* (to have enough money or time to be able to buy or to do sth.) 负担得起……

e.g. We can't afford to go abroad this summer.

今年夏天，我们没有足够的钱去国外。

Reading affords us pleasure. 阅读给我们带来快乐。

She can afford to buy a new car. 她能买得起一辆新车。

afford 的用法：
afford to do sth. 负担得起做某事
afford sb. sth. 提供给某人某物
afford 常与 can, could, be able to 等连用

考题在线 4 I am afraid we cannot _____ to take a taxi. Let's go by underground instead. [天津]

A. refuse　　B. afford　　C. forget　　D. fall

点拨：用词义辨析法解题。refuse 意为“拒绝”，afford 意为“买得起；负担得起”，forget 意为“忘记”，fall 意为“摔倒”；根据句意分析可知应该用 afford to do sth.，意为“负担得起做某事”。

⑤ **what's more** 而且；更重要的是；另外

e.g. You should remember it, and what's more, you should get it right.

你应该记住它，更重要的是，应该正确理解它。

what's more 是插入语，常用于对刚说过的话作进一步补充，既可放在句中，也可放在句首。

考题在线 5 The car looks nice. _____, it's much greener because it uses electricity instead of gas.

A. However　　B. What's more　　C. Even though　　D. What's worse

★**The role of women has changed too.**

⑥ **role** /rəʊl/ *n.* (the function or position that sb. has) 作用；职责；角色

e.g. the leading role 主角

It plays an important role in developing products.

它在产品开发中起着重要的作用。

role 的不同含义：
1. 角色；
2. 作用，职责

考题在线 6 在这项工作中她起了重要的作用。

She played _____ _____ _____ in the work.

★**She has a good education, and she goes to work even after getting married.**

⑦ **education** /ˌedjʊˈkeɪʃn/ *n.* (a process of teaching, training and learning) （个人的）教育；学业

education 常用短语：
primary education 初等教育
have a good education 接受良好的教育
动词形式：
educate
educate oneself 自修

考题在线 7 根据句意及汉语提示写出单词。

My grandpa is a man of _____（教育）.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

⑧ **get married** 结婚

e.g. He married a pretty girl. 他娶了个漂亮的姑娘。

The girl got married to a doctor. 这个女孩嫁给了一个医生。

Her parents married her to Tom. 她父母把她嫁给了汤姆。

marry 常见短语：
① marry sb. 嫁给某人；娶某人
② be/get married to sb. 与某人结婚
③ marry...to sb. 把……嫁给某人；为……娶某人

考题在线 8 —How happy the grandparents are!

—Yes, they _____ for fifty years.

A. have been married　　B. have married

C. have got married　　D. married

点拨：考查动词时态。根据答语中的“for fifty years”可知用现在完成时，排除D项；动词 marry 与动词短语 get married 是非延续性概念，不能与表示时间段的状语连用，故排除B、C两项。与表示时间段的状语连用时，用 be married。

★**I'm happy to see she's busy working every day, but sometimes I feel lonely because she can't come to see me often.**

⑨ **be busy doing...** 忙于做……

e.g. Tom is busy growing flowers and vegetables. 汤姆忙于种花种菜。

be busy with sth. = be busy doing sth. 意为“忙于做某事”，两者可以进行同义转换。

考题在线 9 —Why doesn't the surgeon stop _____ lunch?

—Because he is too busy _____ a dying patient in the operation room. [常州]

A. to have; to save　　B. having; to save

C. to have; saving　　D. having; saving

点拨：考查非谓语动词。句意：——为什么这名外科医生不停下来吃午饭？——因为他在手术室忙着挽救一位垂死的病人。stop to do sth. 是“停下来去做某事”；“忙于做某事”用 be busy doing sth. 表达。



alone 单独　　lonely 孤独，荒凉

⑩ **lonely** /'ləʊnli/ *adj.* (unhappy because you have no friends or people to talk to) 孤独的；寂寞的

e.g. She's quite lonely living on her own. 她独自生活十分孤独。

辨析 lonely 与 alone

lonely & alone	lonely用作形容词，意为“孤独的；荒凉的”，作定语或表语，强调主观上的感受，带感情色彩。
	alone用作形容词或副词，意为“单独的（地）；独自的（地）”，不能作定语，不带感情色彩。

知识微课

考题在线 10 —I know Old Joe lives _____.

—We are supposed to visit him from time to time. Then, he won't feel _____. [南充]

A. alone; alone　　B. lonely; lonely

C. lonely; alone　　D. alone; lonely

点拨：用词义辨析法解题。alone 强调独自一人，lonely 指感情孤独。前一个空指独自一人，后一个空指感情孤独。

一语辨异：

I was traveling alone in the lonely mountain. I didn't feel lonely though I was alone. 我独自在荒凉的山里旅行，虽孤身一人，但并不感到寂寞。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★**The only thing I don't like, though, is that there's so much more traffic.**

though 可作连词，意为"虽然；尽管"，引导让步状语从句，相当于 although。在英语里，一个句子中 though/although 和 but 不能同时出现。

①**though** /ðəʊ/ *conj.* (in spite of the fact that) 尽管；虽然

e.g. Though it was very late, he still went on working.
虽然天很晚了，但他还在继续工作。

Though they were quite tired, they continued working.
尽管他们相当累，但他们仍然继续工作。

考题在线 11 —What do you think of your junior high school life?
—I think it is enjoyable, _____ I sometimes have some trouble in study. [滨州]

A. if B. though C. while D. until

速记小筏：though，though"尽管"来让步；but，but"但是"表转折，汉语成对现，英语用其一。

★**Generally speaking, I think life is better today.**

②**generally speaking** 总而言之，总的来说（同 **in a word, all in all**）

e.g. Generally speaking/In a word/All in all, he did a good job!
总而言之，他做得很好！

Generally speaking/In general, the more expensive the mobile phone is, the better it is. 一般而言，手机越贵越好。

generally speaking 还表示"一般而言"，同 in general。

考题在线 12 根据首字母填单词
G_____ speaking, she has made great progress this term. [恩施]

not everything 表达的意思是"部分否定"，意为"并不是所有的……都……"。当 not 与 all，every，both 等词连用时，均属于部分否定。

★**But not everything is satisfying.**

③**not everything** 不是所有的东西

e.g. Not all that glitters is gold. 发光的并不都是金子。

考题在线 13 在北美，并非所有的学生都乘坐公共汽车去上学。
In North America, _____ _____ students take the bus to school.

考题在线答案 1. tiny 2. hot 3. B 4. B 5. B 6. an important role 7. education 8. A 9. C 10. D 11. B 12. Generally 13. not all

核心素养之文化意识

《厉害了，我的国》

◆该片记录了中国桥、中国路、中国车、中国港、中国网等一个个非凡的超级工程，展示了磁悬浮列车、5G 技术等引领人们走向新时代的里程碑般的科研成果，也将其背后的故事娓娓道来，在彰显国家实力的同时，也体现了中国人不畏艰险、埋头苦干、开拓进取，创造出一个美好的新时代的精神风貌。

◆《厉害了，我的国》（*Amazing China*）在关注"大国"的同时，也把"小家"作为重点加以展现。影片后半部分从"小家"的角度切入，讲述平凡百姓的生活变迁，通过讲述"大国"与"小家"密不可分的关系，生动记录了我国在扶贫、生态文明建设、医疗保障、国家安全体制等各方面取得的卓越成就，充分展现了中国人民在全面建成小康社会征程上的伟大奋斗。透过影片，一幅幸福民生的壮美画卷渐渐展开。

◆【素养行动】观看电影《厉害了，我的国》，让我们从电影中了解中国非凡的超级工程及国家发展的进步之大。

◆【素养行动结果】展现大国风采，传递中国力量，为观众带来视觉与心灵的双重震撼。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见239页)

一、根据句意及汉语提示写出单词

1. Sometimes we feel _____ (孤独的) even though there are lots of people around. [广安]
2. The girl is fond of the _____ (极小的) cat.
3. Most people in China couldn't _____ (买得起) cars twenty years ago. [宿迁]
4. Children should be _____ (教育) to respect and help other people. [来宾]
5. —What does your father do?
   —He is a _____ (邮递员).

二、用括号内所给词的适当形式填空

6. _____ (read) more books is good for the students. 【导学号：7764826】
7. We can't afford _____ (buy) such a big house.
8. Sandy's grandparents _____ (marry) for 50 years. [鄂州]
9. The sun gives us its light and _____ (heat).
10. _____ (luck), the man got hurt badly in the accident. [鄂州]

三、单项选择

11. The girl got married _____ a teacher.
    A. with　　B. on
    C. to　　D. for
12. He went to Beijing two days _____. He has never been there _____.
    A. ago; ago　　B. before; ago
    C. ago; before　　D. before; before
13. The workers are busy _____ windows to the new building these days. [上海]
    A. fix　　B. fixed
    C. fixing　　D. to fix
14. _____ Mr. Smith has learned Chinese for only half a year, he can speak it very well. [贵港]
    A. But　　B. So
    C. Although　　D. And
15. Old Mr. Green doesn't feel _____ because some students visit him regularly. [上海]
    A. sadly　　B. gently
    C. lonely　　D. angrily

四、根据汉语意思完成句子

16. 现在孩子们能接受良好的教育。
    Now children can have a _____ _____.
17. 总体来说，这个产品满足了大部分顾客的需求。 [扬州]
    _____
18. 并不是所有的学生都喜欢看电视。
    _____ _____ the students like watching TV.
19. 苏州有着2500多年的历史。
    Suzhou has a history of _____ _____ 2500 years.
20. 学校在教育中起着最为重要的作用。 [淄博]
    Schools _____ the most important _____ _____ education.



There is no royal road to learning.
学习没有捷径。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 3 Language in use

I. 课文原文、译文

Language practice 语言练习

People are wealthier today, and they live longer than they did in the past.
人们现在更富有了，他们比过去更长寿了。
But people don't take as much exercise as they used to. 但是人们不如以前锻炼得多了。
More people have cars, and they walk or use their bikes less. 更多的人有（了）小汽车，他们更少步行或骑自行车更少了。
We eat better and we live longer.
我们吃得更好，我们更长寿了。

1 Complete the passage with the correct form of the words in brackets.
用括号内单词的正确形式完成短文。

For many people, life is a lot (1) _____ (easy) today. Medicine and diet are improving, and people are getting (2) _____ (healthy) and living (3) _____ (long). But communication is changing (4) _____ (fast) of all. Today, with the Internet, people can communicate ① (5) _____ (easily) than ever before with friends all over the world.

对许多人来说，现在的生活 (1)_____（容易的）多了。医学（水平）和饮食（质量）正在提高，并且人们正变得 (2)_____（健康的）和活得 (3)_____（长的）。但是交流在所有中正变得 (4)_____（快地）。现在，使用因特网，人们能比以前 (5)_____（容易地）和全世界的朋友们交流。

Not all the changes are (6) _____ (good) ones. More people drive cars instead of riding bikes, so they are not as (7) _____ (fit) as they were. Increasing traffic makes the roads (8) _____ (crowded) than ever, and it also makes pollution (9) _____ (bad). We must all work harder to reduce pollution.

并不是所有的变化都是 (6)_____（好的）。更多的人开车而不是骑自行车，所以他们不如以前 (7)_____（健康的）。持续增长的车辆使道路比以前 (8)_____（拥挤的），而且也使污染 (9)_____（糟糕的）。我们必须都更加努力地减少污染。

2 Work in pairs. Look at the two pictures and talk about how the town has changed. Use the words in the box to help you.
结对练习。看这两幅图谈一谈这个城镇发生了怎样的变化，用方框中的单词来帮助你。

big 大的　building 建筑物　busy 繁忙的
house 房子　modern 现代的　more 更多的
shop 商店　street 街道　tall 高的
traffic 交通　tree 树

3 Complete the sentences with the words or expressions in the box.
用方框内的单词或短语完成句子。

heat 高温；热度　more than 超出；多于
seldom 很少地；不常　spare 空余的
speak up 大点声说

1. We _____ have time to go on holiday.
我们_____有时间去度假。
2. We do not have much _____ time because we have important exams this year. 今年我们没有很多_____时间因为我们有重要的考试。
3. Never go out in the _____ of the day without a hat.
不戴帽子就不要在一天的_____时外出。
4. You have to _____ because the students in the back cannot hear you.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

你不得不_____因为后面的学生听不见你说话。

5. Mr Smith is _____ a teacher. Most of his pupils think of him as② their friend.
史密斯先生是_____一位教师。他的大部分学生把他当作他们的朋友。

4 Read the email and find three examples that show life was harder in the past than it is today. 阅读这封邮件并找出三个事例表明过去的生活比现在(的生活)更艰苦。

课文朗读

FROM 发件人：Gran 格兰

TO 收件人：Christine 克里斯廷

SUBJECT 主题：The lives of children in Victorian Britain 在英国维多利亚时期的孩子们的生活

Dear Christine, 亲爱的克里斯廷：

You asked me for help about your school project—the lives of children in Victorian Britain. I was also interested. I searched online and found out③ the following.
你就你的学校课题——英国维多利亚时期孩子们的生活向我寻求帮助。我也感兴趣。我上网搜了一下，找到了下面的资料。

In Victorian Britain, thousands of people came to the cities to work in the factories. Instead of the green, open countryside, people lived in very small houses, very close to each other, with no space for children to play. Families in those days were quite big. Often, there were four or five children in one family, and they all had to sleep in houses of just two rooms. Sometimes, a whole street had to share one outside toilet. Can you imagine that?
在英国维多利亚时期，成千上万的人涌进城市，去工厂上班。人们居住在拥挤的、没有地方供孩子们玩耍的很小的房子里，而不是绿树环绕而又开阔的乡村。那时的家庭很大。经常是一个家庭就有四、五个孩子，并且他们都不得不睡在仅有两个房间的房子里。有时一整条街道上的人不得不共用一个室外厕所。你能想象出那种情形吗?

Most of the big cities were dirty and unhealthy. The pollution④ from factories filled the air. People put their rubbish outside in the streets. As a result⑤, there were many illnesses.
大多数的大城市又脏又不利于健康。来自工厂的污染物弥漫在空气中。人们把他们的垃圾堆放在外面的街道上。结果引起了很多的疾病。

And life was harder for children in those times. They didn't always go to school, because they had to work instead. Many children started work in factories when they were only four or five years old. They worked twelve hours a day in dangerous jobs for very little money. Many were hurt⑥ in accidents with machines.
而且在那时，对孩子们来说生活更艰苦。因为他们不得不工作，所以他们并不总是去上学。很多孩子在他们仅仅四、五岁时就开始在工厂工作了。他们从事危险的工作，为那微薄的收入他们一天要工作12个小时。很多孩子在机器事故中受伤。

I hope this is helpful. Write to me if you need more information.
我希望这能有帮助。如果你需要更多的信息，写信给我。

With love, 爱你的，

Gran 格兰

5 Read the email again. Find sentences that tell us: 再读一遍这封邮件。找出句子告诉我们：

1. There was not enough living space for people. 人们没有足够的居住空间。
2. Most of the big cities were dirty and unhealthy. 大多数的大城市很脏而且不健康。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

3. Life was harder for children in those times.

在那时对孩子们来说生活更艰苦。

Write examples. 写例子。

1. *People lived in very small houses, very close to each other, with no space for children to play.*

人们住在拥挤的、没有地方供孩子们玩耍的很小的房子里。

2. _____.

3. _____.

Learning to learn 学会学习

When you do a listening or reading exercise, you should read the instructions carefully. Then you can focus your attention just on the information you need. You don't have to understand every word. 当你做听力或阅读练习时，你应该仔细阅读说明。然后你就能把你的注意力只集中在你需要的信息上。你不必理解每一个单词。

6 Listen and complete the table.

听并完成表格。

课文听力

	Grandmother 奶奶	Mother 妈妈
Age to start school 开始上学的年龄		
Age to start work 开始工作的年龄		
Age to get married 结婚的年龄		
Number of children 孩子的数量		
Age to stop working ⑦停止工作的年龄		

7 Write a passage comparing the lives of the speaker's grandmother and mother in Activity 6.

写一篇比较活动 6 中说话者的奶奶和妈妈的生活的文章。

The speaker's grandmother and mother have lived very different lives. Her grandmother had a much bigger family... 说话者的奶奶和妈妈过着非常不同的生活。她的奶奶有一个大得多的家庭……

Around the world 世界各地

Cars 小汽车

The modern car has changed life a great deal. Before the invention of the car, people had to travel by rail, on horseback or by horse-drawn carriage, or on foot. Using horses for travel was slow, and of course walking was even slower. Cars allow ⑧ people to travel long distances quickly, in comfort and convenience. 现代汽车极大地改变了生活。在汽车发明前，人们不得不乘火车、骑马或乘马车或步行来旅行。借助马旅行很慢，当然走路甚至更慢。小汽车使人们快捷、舒适和方便地去远的地方旅行。

The car also solved an enormous problem caused by using horses for transport in cities: manure! There were so many horses in large cities that it was almost impossible to get rid of the manure. Modern people are used to the idea that cars cause pollution, but the first cars actually made cities cleaner! 汽车也解决了在城市里用马作为交通工具的一个巨大问题：粪便！大都市有如此多的马，以至于几乎不可能清除掉粪便。现代人类习惯认为汽车引起了污染，但是第一批汽车实际上让城市更干净！

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Module task 模块任务：

Organising a debate 组织一次辩论

8 Work in groups. Read the motion of the debate. 分组练习。阅读这个辩论的提议。

Health is more important than wealth.

健康比财富更重要。

Now decide who is for the motion and who is against it. You can use some of the following ideas: 现在决定谁支持这个提议，谁反对这个提议。你可以使用下面的一些观点：

For: 支持：

- Without health, wealth means nothing.
  没有健康，财富毫无意义。
- You can enjoy life better if you are healthy.
  如果你是健康的，你会更好地享受生活。

Against: 反对：

- It is hard to be healthy without wealth.
  没有财富，很难保持健康。
- You can enjoy life better if you are wealthy.
  如果你是富有的，你可以更好地享受生活。

9 Prepare your arguments. Give examples to support your ideas.

准备好你们的论据。举例支持你们的观点。

10 Hold the debate. 举行辩论。

- Those for the motion give their opinions.
  支持这个提议的人给出他们的观点。
- Those against the motion give their opinions. 反对这个提议的人给出他们的观点。
- Take turns to say what you think about each other's arguments.
  轮流说一说你们如何看待彼此的论据。

11 Discuss and find out whether most people are for or against the motion.

讨论并弄清楚大多数人支持还是反对这个提议。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用 •考点批注

★Today, with the Internet, people can communicate(5) _____ (easily) than ever before with friends all over the world.

① **communicate** /kə'mju:nɪkeɪt/ *v.* (to exchange information, news, ideas, etc. with sb.) 联系；交流

表示“与某人交流”，用 communicate with sb.。其名词形式为 communication，意为“交流；通信”。

e.g. WeChat has become a popular communication tool for people to communicate with others.

微信已经成为一个很受人们欢迎的用来与他人交流的通信工具。

考题在线 1 根据汉语提示完成句子

Listening is a better skill to _____ （和……交流）others.

★Most of his pupils think of him as their friend.

② **think of...as** 把……看作

think of...as 意为“把……看作”，此处的 as 是介词，后可接名词（短语）等。类似的短语还有 consider...as，look on...as，regard...as 等。

e.g. I think of this place as my home.

我把这个地方当成了家。

考题在线 2 翻译句子。

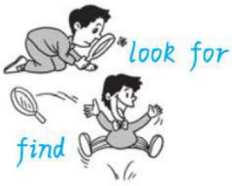
我们把我们的老师看作我们的朋友。(think of... as)

_____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★ **I searched online and found out the following.**

③ **find out** 找出；查明。其后可接名词（短语）、代词或从句等。

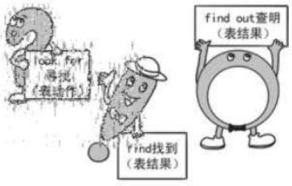


e.g. We must find out who broke the window today.

今天我们一定要查出谁打坏了窗户。

辨析: find, find out, look for 与 discover

find 意为“找到；发现”，强调寻找的结果。	I found a wallet on my way to school. 在我上学的路上，我发现了一个钱包。
find out 意为“找出；查明”，指通过观察、调查和探索而发现事情的真相。	We should find out the cause of fire. 我们应该找出火灾的原因。
look for 意为“寻找”，强调寻找的动作和过程。	What are you looking for? 你在找什么?
discover 意为“发现”，多指目前客观存在的，却不为人知的事物。	In the 19th century, gold was discovered in California. 19 世纪时，在加利福尼亚发现了金子。



考题在线 3 Our geography teacher told us to _____ more information about our city and share it next week. [安徽]

A. find out　B. keep away　C. turn off　D. use up

★ **The pollution from factories filled the air.**

④ **pollution** /pə'lu:ʃn/ *n.* (the process of making air, water, soil, etc. dirty) 污染

pollution 是不可数名词，其动词形式为 pollute。

e.g. Waste water from the factory is the main cause of the pollution of local rivers. 来自那家工厂的污水是当地河流污染的主要原因。

Many things pollute water, such as tires, trash, and plastic bags.

很多东西污染水，例如轮胎、垃圾和塑料袋。

考题在线 4 Our earth is becoming more and more _____ (pollute) because of the rapid increase in population. [宿迁]

点拨：根据前面的“becoming more and more”可知此处应用形容词 polluted，表示“污染越来越严重”。

考题在线 5 The use of new energy cars helps to reduce air _____ (污染). [宁波]

★ **As a result, there were many illnesses.**

⑤ **as a result** 因此，结果

辨析：as a result 与 as a result of

① as a result 意为“因此；结果”，后跟表示事情结果的句子。

② as a result of 意为“由于；作为……的结果”，常用作状语，后常跟名词（短语）、代词等，相当于 because of。

e.g. He fell off the bike and hurt his leg yesterday. As a result, he had to be away from school for three months.

昨天他从自行车上掉下来，摔伤了他的腿。因此他不得不休学三个月。

He was unable to go to work as a result of falling off the horse.

由于他从马上摔了下来，他不能去上班了。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考题在线 6 He was late _____ the heavy snow.

A. result　　B. as a result

C. as a result of　　D. result from

点拨：as a result of 相当于 because of，后跟名词（短语）、代词等；由句中的“the heavy snow”可知答案。

★ Many were hurt in accidents with machines.

⑥ **hurt** /hɜːt/ *v.* (to injure sb./yourself) 伤害（感情）；使受伤

e.g. My younger brother fell off the bike and hurt himself.

我弟弟从自行车上摔了下来，伤着了自己。

I'm sorry. I didn't mean to hurt you.

对不起，我不是故意伤害你的。

hurt 表示肉体上、感情上或精神上受到伤害，其过去式、过去分词分别为 hurt, hurt。

考题在线 7 他从一棵树上跌下，摔伤了胳膊。

He fell out of a tree and _____ his arm.

★ Age to stop working

⑦ **stop doing sth.** 停止做某事

e.g. The teacher is coming; please stop talking.

老师要来了，请停止谈话。

You've done a lot of work. Please stop to have a rest.

你已经做了许多工作了，请停下来休息一下。

They can't / couldn't stop taking many photos.

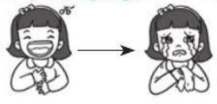
他们忍不住拍了许多照片。

拓展：① stop to do sth. 停止正在做的事而去做另一件事

② can't/couldn't stop doing sth. 情不自禁地做某事



stop crying 停止哭



stop to cry 停下来哭

考题在线 8 Sometimes you have to stop _____ too much and just go where your heart takes you. [湘潭]

A. think　　B. to think　　C. thinking

★ Cars allow people to travel long distances quickly, in comfort and convenience.

⑧ **allow** /əˈlaʊ/ *v.* (to let sb./sth. do sth.) 允许

e.g. The teacher doesn't allow us to use mobile phones. 老师不允许我们用手机。

考题在线 9 Children under 12 years old _____ ride sharing bikes. It's too dangerous. [贵港]

A. shouldn't allow to　　B. shouldn't allow

C. shouldn't be allowed to　　D. shouldn't be allowed

点拨：考查被动语态。句意：12 岁以下的孩子们不应该被允许骑共享单车。太危险了。根据语境可知应用 allow 的被动语态形式 be allowed to do sth. 被允许做某事。

allow 的相关搭配：

allow sb. to do sth. 允许某人做某事

allow doing sth. 允许做某事

be allowed to do sth. 被允许做某事

考题在线答案　1. communicate with　2. We think of our teachers as our friends.　3. A　4. polluted　5. pollution　6. C　7. hurt　8. C　9. C

来德基

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 模块语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

形容词与副词

考点 1 形容词的句法功能

形容词
- 修饰名词作定语：Country music is a kind of sweet music.乡村音乐是一种动听的音乐。
- 位于系动词之后作表语：As a singer, Zhang Liangying is very popular.作为一名歌手，张靓颖很受欢迎。
- 用作宾语补足语：You should keep your bedroom clean and tidy.你应该保持你卧室干净和整洁。

考向 1：修饰不定代词如 something, anything, nothing, somebody, anybody, nobody 等时，形容词要放在这些词之后。

e.g. I have something interesting to tell you.
我有有趣的事情要告诉你。

考题在线 1 —Tom, please come here. I have _____ to tell you.
—OK. I'm coming. [恩施]
A. anything important
B. important something
C. something important

考向 2：当多个形容词作定语修饰同一个名词时，它们的排列顺序为：限定词＋数词＋描述性形容词＋表示特征的形容词＋表示颜色的形容词＋国籍＋材料＋用途＋类别＋被修饰的名词。（注：限定词包括冠词、指示代词、物主代词、不定代词等）

e.g. It's the first beautiful little white Chinese stone bridge. 它是第一座美丽的中国小白石桥。

速记小筏：
多个形容词作定语的顺序口诀：
限定描述大长高；形状年龄与新旧；
颜色国籍和材料；用途类别往后靠。

考题在线 2 They have got such a _____ table.
A. round wooden brown
B. round brown wooden
C. brown round wooden

点拨：根据多个形容词修饰名词的排列顺序可知，这三个形容词的排列顺序为：形状＋颜色＋材料。

考点 2 副词的句法功能及分类

考向 1：副词的句法功能：副词一般用作状语，修饰动词、形容词、副词以及全句，表示程度、方式等。

e.g. Tom can speak Chinese very well.
汤姆能够说汉语说得很好。

考题在线 3 —My grandpa practices playing the guitar _____ in the university for the elderly every day.
—Cool! It's never too old to learn. [广东]
A. hard B. hardly
C. great D. greatly

考向 2：副词的分类：副词可以分为以下几种：
①时间副词：now, today, then, soon 等。
②地点副词：everywhere, upstairs, outside 等。
③频度副词：always, often, usually, seldom, never 等。
④程度副词：much, quite, pretty, too, very 等。
⑤方式副词：clearly, slowly, politely, suddenly 等。
⑥疑问副词：when, where, how, why 等。
⑦关系副词：when, where, why 等。

考题在线 4 —Were you told _____ to arrive at the train station?
—Yes. The group leader said we would meet there at half past ten. [宜昌]
A. how B. why
C. when D. where

点拨：用关键词法解题。由答语关键词“at half past ten”可知，是问“时间”，应用疑问副词 when。

考点 3 以 -ly 结尾的形容词和副词

考向 1：形容词变为副词的规则如下：
1. 一般情况下，在形容词后加 ly。如：careful→carefully; quick→quickly
2. 以“辅音字母＋y”结尾的单词变 y 为 i，加

荣德基

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

ly。如：easy→easily

3. 一些以不发音字母e结尾的单词需去e加ly。如：true→truly

考题在线5 It was late. She opened the door _____ because she didn't want to wake up her parents. [随州]

A. heavily　　B. loudly

C. quietly　　D. angrily

点拨：用推理法解题。根据语境“时间很晚了”及原因“她不想吵醒她的父母”可推断：她“轻轻地”推开门。

考向2：有些单词虽然以ly结尾，但却是形容词，这类形容词大都是“名词＋ly”构成的。如：lovely, friendly等。

考题在线6 用括号内所给词的适当形式填空。

Tom likes China because Chinese people are _____ (friend). [绥化]

考点4 形容词和副词的同级比较及倍数表达

考向1：同级比较肯定句中一般用as...as...结构，意为“和……一样……”；否定句中经常用not so/as...as...，表示“不如……”。注意：as...as...之间一定要用形容词或副词的原级。

e.g. Li Lei writes as carefully as Kate.

李雷写得和凯特一样认真。

考题在线7 My math teacher lives an active life. She looks as _____ as she was ten years ago. [重庆]

A. young

B. younger

C. the youngest

D. youngest

考向2：表示倍数用“A＋谓语动词＋倍数＋as＋形容词/副词原级＋as＋B”。

e.g. Our school is twice as big as yours.

我们学校是你们学校的两倍大。

考题在线8 那座山比这座要高一倍。

That mountain is _____ _____ _____ _____ this one.

考点5 形容词和副词的比较级

考向：形容词副词比较级的结构：



考题在线9 Everyone knows that China is getting _____. [岳阳]

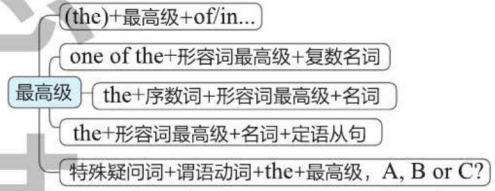
A. strong and strong

B. strongest and strongest

C. stronger and stronger

考点6 形容词、副词的最高级

形容词、副词的最高级结构：



e.g. My mother always gets up earliest in my family.

在我家我妈妈总是起得最早。

one of the tallest boys

最高的男孩之一

The Yellow River is the second longest river in China.

黄河是中国第二长的河。

This is the best film that I have ever seen.

这是我曾经看过的电影中最好的一部。

Who is the tallest, Jim, Jack or Peter?

谁是个子最高的，吉姆、杰克还是彼得?

来德基

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考题在线 10 The bridge between the two islands is _____ one in Shanghai.[上海]

A. long　　B. longer

C. longest　　D. the longest

考点 7 形容词和副词的比较级的修饰语

比较级的修饰语常置于所修饰的形容词或副词的比较级之前，常见的比较级修饰语有：much, a lot, even 等。

e.g. China is much larger than Japan.

中国比日本大得多。

考题在线 11 —Do the twins look the same?

—No, Jane is _____ taller than Claire.

[长沙]

A. little　　B. more　　C. a little

点拨：句意：——双胞胎看起来一样吗？——不，简比克莱尔更高一点。修饰比较级的词有：much, a lot, far, a little, a bit, still, even。

考题在线答案 1. C　2. B　3. A　4. C　5. C　6. friendly　7. A　8. twice as tall as　9. C　10. D　11. C

Ⅳ. 写作一课一法 夺取中考写作 20分

写作小练笔

My family lived in a tiny house. There were no electric lights, only candles. My father was a postman, and he often worked twelve hours a day outside in the winter cold or in the summer heat. My mother didn't go out to work. There were five children in my family, and looking after us was more than a full-time job. And I wasn't sent to school because my family couldn't afford it.

介绍"过去我家的生活"

Now families have got smaller than they were in the past. The role of women has changed too. My daughter has a good education, and she goes to work even after getting married.

介绍"现在的生活变化"

Today transport and travel are easier. You can take the bus everywhere, and there is also the underground and the plane. The only thing I don't like, though, is that there's so much more traffic.

I think life is better today. We eat better and we live longer.

表达作者思想感情

模块话题　[岳阳]

世界在发展，生活在变化，社会的进步让我们的生活越来越好。请通过下面表格，从信息来源、购物方式、居住环境、联系方式等方面，以"How Life Changes"为题写一篇短文。

	In the past	Now
①	newspaper radio TV	mobile phone computer
②	shop	online shop
③	old and dirty house	big and bright apartments
④	letter postcard	email WeChat
	（请再列举 1–2 个方面）	（请再列举 1–2 个方面）

要求：1. 词数 100 左右；

2. 请先简要介绍表格中的内容，再根据生活实际列举 1~2 个方面，可适当发挥；

3. 不得出现真实的人名、校名和地名；

4. 字迹工整，语言流畅，表达正确，逻辑清晰。

How Life Changes

审题指导（把握中心，得方向分）

1. 本文为生活变化类话题，一般是先描述过去的情况，然后描述现在的情况，将两者进行对比。注意表格提示要点不要遗漏，可适当发挥。

2. 在描述过去的情况时，一般用过去时态；描述现在的情况时，一般用现在时态。

3. 注意文中比较等级的运用。

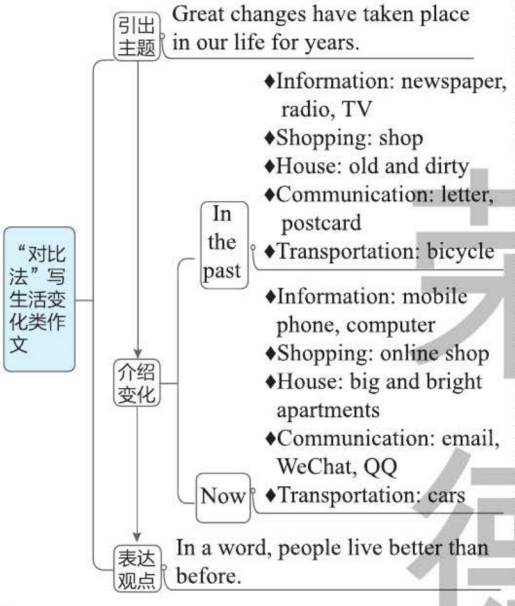
关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

写作技法（学会方法，巧得高分）

“对比法”写生活变化类作文

在写作时应根据主题，利用对比的手法介绍人们生活所发生的变化：引出主题——介绍变化（由过去到现在）——表达观点。

写作模板（学会套路，得基本分）



经典词句（妙用句式，得出彩分）

单词	change, information, mainly, send, dirty, online, whenever, enough
短语	take place, keep in touch, have to, by email, more and more, in a word
句子	1. Children used to go to school by bicycle. 2. What's more, people can talk to others by email, WeChat or QQ, with which they can send and receive messages whenever they like. 3. In a word, people live better than before.

范文赏析（书写工整，得印象分）

How Life Changes

Great changes have taken place in our life for years.

In the past, people read newspapers, listened to the radio and watched TV for news and other information. People kept in touch with each other mainly by writing letters or sending postcards. They would buy everything in the shop or market. Big families had to share small houses which were old and dirty. Children used to go to school by bicycle.

But now people can get information on the mobile phones or computers almost at any place and at any time. They can buy things online at home. What's more, people can talk to others by email, WeChat or QQ, with which they can send and receive messages whenever they like. More and more people live in big and bright apartments with several rooms. Some families are rich enough to send their children to school in their own cars.

In a word, people live better than before.

名师点评：本文开篇点题，接着根据提示及要求，用对比法具体介绍了过去和现在生活的变化。层次分明，要点齐全。同时，文中which引导的非限制性定语从句的使用提高了本文的档次。文中一些固定短语，如“take place, keep in touch, used to, more and more, in a word... ”等的妙用为文章增色不少，是一篇难得的佳作。

测试卷及听力



A life without a friend is a life without a sun.

人生没有朋友，犹如人生没有了太阳。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅴ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20 分

(答案见240页)

一、完成句子

1. 凌峰学习很刻苦。结果，他很容易地通过了考试。

Ling Feng worked very hard at his study. _____ _____ _____, he passed the exam easily.

2. 在许多大城市共享单车能使人们自由地到处旅行又无污染。 [乌鲁木齐]

In many big cities, _____ bikes can make people travel around freely without _____.

3. 请查清谁把窗户打坏的。

Please _____ _____ who broke the window.

4. 正如习总书记所说："只要我们撸起袖子加油干，中国梦就一定会实现"。 [恩施]

As President Xi says,"If we are _____ _____ energies to do everything, China Dream is sure to come true."

5. 我把你看作我的老师。

I think _____ you _____ my teacher.

二、语法专练

6. Mount Lao is one of _____ mountains in Qingdao. Many tourists like climbing it every year. [青岛]

A. famous　　B. the more famous

C. most famous　　D. the most famous

7. Alice does her homework as _____ as Peter. [湘西]

A. carefully

B. more careful

C. careful

8. Miss Brown tells us to remember that _____ careful we are, _____ mistakes we will make. [齐齐哈尔]

A. the more; the fewer

B. the fewer; the more

C. the more; the less

9. —Is it _____ cheaper and _____ enjoyable to travel by train than by plane?

—Yes, I think so. [达州]

A. very; very more　　B. even; a little

C. more; much more　　D. much; far more

10. Allen always behaves _____, so many people like him. [青岛]

A. easily　　B. politely

C. friendly　　D. lively

三、模块知识浓缩

根据首字母提示完成短文。

My grandma is over seventy years old. T_____[11] she is a bit d_____[12] now, I often ask her about life today and in the past.

Today people are w_____[13] than before. People u_____[14] to live in a t_____[15] house. But now they can a_____[16] to buy a big house. We also know more about medicine and there's less f_____[17] of getting ill. The r_____[18] of women has changed. They can get a good e_____[19].

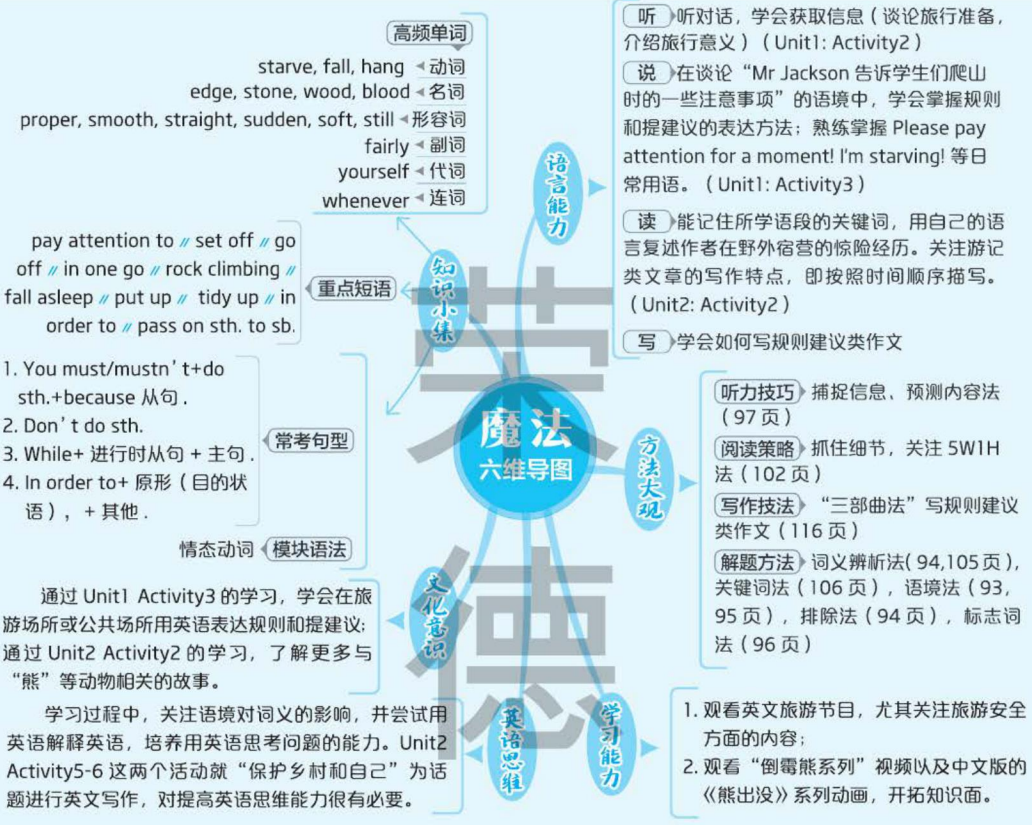
But not everything is satisfying. When the number of cars is d_____[20], the pollution is also doubled.

The first step is always the hardest.
万事开头难。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Module 4 Rules and suggestions

词汇表听写



记忆大师

Unit 1

必背单词

1. **whenever** *conj.* 每当；无论什么时候 → no matter when（同义短语）无论什么时候
2. **proper** *adj.* 合适的；恰当的 →properly *adv.* 恰当地
3. **edge** *n.* 边；边缘→ on the edge of 在……的边缘
4. **yourself** *pron.* 你自己 →yourselves *pl.* 你们自己→ your（形容词性物主代词）你的→ you（主格、宾格）你
5. **starve** *v.* 挨饿；饿死 →starving（现在分词）
6. **go** *n.* 尝试；努力 →go *v.* 去→ goes（动词的第三人称单数形式）→ went（过去式）→ gone（过去分词）
7. **fairly** *adv.* 相当；还算 →rather（同义词）相当
8. **smooth** *adj.* 无困难的；顺利的；光滑的；平坦的 → smoother（比较级）更光滑的；更顺利的；更平坦的→ smoothest（最高级）最光滑的；最顺利的；最平坦的→ smoothly *adv.* 顺利地；光滑地；平坦地
9. **straight** *adj.* 直的；笔直的 *adv.* 径直；直率地
10. **sock** *n.* 短袜

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

11. **rock** *n.* 岩；岩石
12. **stone** *n.* 石头

‖必背短语

13. pay attention 注意
14. set off 动身；出发
15. go off 离开
16. on one's own 独自
17. get lost 迷路
18. at noon 在中午
19. be careful of 当心；小心
20. in one go 一口气；一下子
21. rock climbing 攀岩
22. to begin with 起初；开始的时候

‖必背句子

23. Can we have **something to eat** now?
    我们现在能吃点儿东西吗?
24. I'm **starving**! 我快饿死了!
25. Let's **start** walking. 让我们开始走吧。
26. I'll **lead the way**. 我来带路。

Unit 2

‖必背单词

1. **fall** *v.* 变成；进入（某种状态）→fell（过去式）→fallen（过去分词）
2. **hang** *v.* 悬挂；吊 →hung（过去式）→hung（过去分词）
3. **sudden** *adj.* 突然的；急剧的 →suddenly *adv.* 突然地
4. **soft** *adj.* 软的；柔软的 →softly *adv.* 柔软地
5. **still** *adj.* 静止的；不动的 →still *adv.* 仍然，还是
6. **wood** *n.* （小）树林；林地 →wood *n.* 木头 →wooden *adj.* 木制的
7. **tent** *n.* 帐篷
8. **gun** *n.* 枪
9. **blood** *n.* 血；血液

‖必背短语

10. watch out 小心
11. fall asleep 入睡
12. in the middle of 在……的中间
13. look out of 向……外看
14. put up 支起；架起；搭建
15. tidy up 收拾；整理
16. go for a walk 散步
17. reach out 伸出（手等）
18. allow sb. to do sth. 允许某人做某事

‖必背句子

19. We **must keep** the camp **clean**.
    我们必须保持营区的清洁。
20. **No one** can run **faster** in the forest than a bear. 在森林里没有人会比熊跑得更快。
21. For the next ten days **every time** there was a **sudden noise**, my blood went cold. 之后的10天中，每次听到突然的声响，我都会浑身发凉。

Unit 3

‖必背短语

1. take care of 照顾
2. listen to 听
3. wake up to 意识到
4. pass on 传递
5. turn off 关上
6. in order to 为了
7. at the same time 同时
8. at all times 总是；一直
9. be known as 被称为……；作为……而出名

‖必背句子

10. **Wear** a hard hat at all times. 时刻戴着安全帽。
11. Don't talk on a mobile phone **while climbing**.
    攀登时，不要用手机交谈。
12. **To save** water is to save **lives**.
    节约用水就是拯救生命。

‖必背语法

13. You **must** be careful of falling stones.
    你一定要当心落石。
14. You **mustn't** walk too close to the edge of the hill path because you might fall and hurt yourselves. 你们不准太靠近山路的边缘行走，因为你们可能会掉下去摔伤自己。
15. You **should** always wear proper clothes.
    你们应该总是穿着合适的衣服。
16. Bears **might** think our rubbish is food.
    熊可能会认为我们的垃圾是食物。
17. —**Can** we go rock climbing? 我们可以攀岩吗?
    —No, you **can't**. 不，你们不可以。

基德

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 1 You must be careful of falling stones.

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

Listening and vocabulary 听力与词汇

1 Look at the photo. Then say what suggestions you can give to people who go walking in the mountains. 看这张照片。然后说说你能给去山区徒步（旅行）的人们什么建议。

2 Listen and answer the questions. 听一听并回答问题。

课文听力

1. When is Betty leaving for the trip?
   贝蒂什么时候动身去旅行?
2. What is Mr Jackson going to tell the students?
   杰克逊先生打算告诉学生们什么?
3. What does Betty's mum suggest Betty should not do?
   贝蒂的妈妈建议贝蒂不应该做什么?
4. Does Betty think the trip will be dangerous?
   贝蒂认为这次旅行会很危险吗?

3 Listen and read.

听一听，读一读。

课文朗读

Mr Jackson: OK, please pay attention ① for a moment! Before we set off ② /set ɒf/, there are a few rules and suggestions ③ for you.
好，请（大家）注意一下！在我们出发前，给你们几条规则和建议。

All: Yes, Mr Jackson. 好的，杰克逊先生。

Mr Jackson: First, is everyone wearing strong shoes and thick socks/sɒks/?
首先，大家都穿着结实的鞋和厚袜子了吗?

All: Yes, Mr Jackson. 是的，杰克逊先生。

Mr Jackson: OK, whenever ④ /wen'evə/ you go walking in the hills, you should always wear proper ⑤ /'prɒpə/ clothes. Now, you mustn't walk too close to the edge/edʒ/ of the hill path because you might fall and hurt yourselves/jɔ:'selvz/. Is that clear? 好，无论什么时候你们去山间徒步（旅行），你们应该总是穿着合适的衣服。现在（请注意），你们不准太靠近山路的边缘行走，因为你们可能掉下去伤了自己。明白了吗?

All: Yes. 明白了。

Mr Jackson: And you have to keep together so you don't get lost. You mustn't go off ⑥ /gəʊ ɒf/ on your own ⑦. 并且你们必须集体行动，那样你们就不会迷路。你们不许独自离开。

All: No, we won't, Mr Jackson.
是，我们不会的，杰克逊先生。

Daming: Can we have something to eat now? I'm starving ⑧ /stɑ:vɪŋ/!
我们现在能吃点儿东西吗? 我快饿死了!

Mr Jackson: No, you can't, Daming! You just had breakfast an hour ago. Let's start walking, and we'll stop at noon for our picnic. Don't drink all your water in one go/gəʊ/. You may need some later. 不，你不能，大明！一小时前你刚刚吃过早饭。让我们开始走吧，中午我们将停下来野餐。你们不要一口气把你们的水都喝光了。你们稍后可能需要一些。

Betty: Can we go rock/rɒk/ climbing ⑨?
我们可以去攀岩吗?

Mr Jackson: No, you can't. And you must be careful of ⑩ falling stones/stəʊnz/. OK, off we go, down this path, and across the stream, and then we'll... 不，你们不能。并且你们必须小心落石。好了，我们走吧，沿着这条路下去，穿过小溪，然后我们将……

Daming: ...have lunch?……吃午饭?

未经许可 禁止复制

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Mr Jackson: ...have lunch when we get up to the top. Come on ⑪! I'll lead the way. It should be a fairly ⑫ /'feəli/ smooth ⑬ /smu:ð/ walk to begin with ⑭ because it's a straight ⑮ /streɪt/ path, but it'll start to get difficult soon!

……当我们到达山顶时就吃午饭。加油！我来带路。开头应该是一段非常平坦的路途，因为它是一条笔直的小路，但是很快就会开始变得难走了！

Everyday English 日常英语

- Please pay attention for a moment!
  请注意一下！
- I'm starving! 我快饿死了！

Now choose the correct answer.
现在选出正确的答案。

1. Mr Jackson gives a lot of rules and suggestions, so he probably _____.
   杰克逊先生给了很多规则和建议，因此他可能_____。
   a) is happy about walking in the hills
      对在山里徒步（旅行）感到开心
   b) has never been to the hills
      从未去过山里
   c) has a lot of experience of walking in the hills 有很多在山里徒步（旅行）的经验
2. The children might hurt themselves if they _____. 如果孩子们 _____ 他们可能会伤到他们自己。
   a) walk along the edge of the hill path
      沿着山路的边缘走
   b) wear proper clothes 穿合适的衣服
   c) drink all their water before lunch
      在午饭前喝光他们所有的水
3. Before they have lunch, they _____.
   在吃午饭前，他们 _____。
   a) have to get up to the top
      必须到达山顶
   b) can have something to eat
      能吃一些东西
   c) can go rock climbing 能去攀岩

Learning to learn 学会学习

When you give suggestions, you may use *can*, *must*, *have to*, *should*, *mustn't* and *shouldn't*, depending on the strength of your advice. 当你给出建议时，依照你提出的建议的强度，你可以使用 can, must, have to, should, mustn't 和 shouldn't。

4 Make notes about Mr Jackson's rules and suggestions.
对杰克逊先生的规则和建议做笔记。

You should _____. You can't _____.
你们应该_____。你们不能_____。
You mustn't _____. Don't _____.
你们绝对不能_____。不要_____。
You have to _____. You can't _____.
你们不得不_____。你们不能_____。
You mustn't _____. You must _____.
你们绝对不能_____。你们必须_____。

5 Complete the passage with the correct form of the words in the box.
用方框内单词的正确形式完成短文。

smooth 平坦的　stone 石头　straight 笔直的
thick 厚的　whenever 无论什么时候

(1)_____ you walk in the hills, you must wear strong shoes and (2) _____ socks. The walk may be fairly (3)_____ at the start because the path is (4) _____, but later it may get difficult. You should also be careful of (5) _____ falling from above.

(1)_____你们在山间徒步（旅行），你们必须穿着结实的鞋子和(2)_____袜子。徒步（旅行）开始时可能相当地(3)_____，因为道路是(4)_____，但后来路就可能会变得难走。你们也应该小心从上方落下的(5)_____。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Pronunciation and speaking 发音与会话

6 Read and predict how the speaker is likely to link the words.

阅读并预测一下说话者可能怎样连读这些单词。

Whenever you go walking in the hills, you should always wear proper clothes. Now, you mustn't walk too close to the edge of the hill path because you might fall and hurt yourselves.

无论何时你们在山间徒步（旅行），你们应该总是穿着合适的衣服。现在，你们绝不能太靠近山路的边缘行走，因为你们可能掉下去伤了自己。

Now listen and check. 现在听并核对。

7 Read the paragraph in Activity 6 aloud.

大声朗读活动 6 中的段落。

8 Work in pairs. Talk about a trip to:

结对练习。谈论一次去……的旅行：

- the beach 海滨
- the mountains 高山
- the countryside 乡村
- the theatre 剧院

Now give rules and suggestions.

现在给出规则和建议。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

·考点应用 ·考点批注

★OK, please pay attention for a moment!

① pay attention 注意，留意

e.g. Please pay attention to your pronunciation.
请注意一下你的发音。

We must pay attention to protecting the environment.
我们一定要注意保护环境。

pay attention（to sb./sth.）意为“注意（某人/某物）”。to 为介词，后跟名词、代词或 v.-ing 形式作宾语。

考题在线 1 根据汉语提示完成句子

The teacher told the students to _____（注意）writing.

★Before we set off, there are a few rules and suggestions for you.

② set off 出发，动身

e.g. The Greens will set off for the railway station. 格林一家将要动身去火车站。

A group of children are setting off fireworks in the square.
一群小孩正在广场上放烟花。

set off 相当于 set out/start off，意为“出发；启程；动身”，其后常接“for +表示地点的名词（词组）”结构，表示“动身去某地”。

set off 还可意为“使（炸弹等）爆炸”。

get off 下车
run off 跑开
cut off 切断
off
take off 脱掉，起飞
see sb. off 为某人送行
turn off 关掉

考题在线 2 —The group of boys and girls _____ to study in college this morning, full of nice dreams.

—I believe their dreams can come true one day.

A. set off　　B. fell off　　C. put off　　D. kept off

点拨：此题用语境法解题。由语境“这群充满了美好梦想的男孩和女孩今天早上动身去大学里学习了”，可知空格处需用“出发，动身”。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考题在线3 We should stop _____ fireworks to reduce pollution. [扬州]

A. getting off B. turning off C. taking off D. setting off

点拨:用词义辨析法解题。fireworks“烟花”提示用动词短语 set off 和其构成动宾关系,表示“燃放烟花”。get off 下车; turn off 关掉; take off 脱下,起飞,都与句意不符。

③ **suggestion** /sə'dʒestʃən/ *n.* (an idea or a plan that you mention for sb. else to think about) **建议**

suggestion 的用法:可数名词,其同义词为 advice,为不可数名词。其动词形式为 suggest,其后可跟动名词形式。

e.g. some suggestions/advice 一些建议

Mary suggested asking her father for his opinion.

玛丽建议询问她父亲的看法。

考题在线4 —Could you give me a few _____ on how to spend the coming summer holiday?

—OK, let me see. [咸宁]

A. hobbies B. suggestions C. knowledge D. information

点拨:用排除法解题。根据 a few 修饰可数名词复数,排除 C、D。根据句意应该是寻求建议,排除 A。

★**OK, whenever you go walking in the hills, you should always wear proper clothes.**

④ **whenever** /wen'evə/ *conj.* (at any time that) **每当;无论什么时候**

(1) whenever 引导让步状语从句,表示“无论何时”,相当于 no matter when。

(2) whenever 引导时间状语从句,表示“每当”,与 when 用法相似,但语气更强。

e.g. The roof leaks whenever it rains.

这屋顶每逢下雨就漏。

Whatever (No matter what) you do, I'll support you.

无论你做什么,我都支持你。

Wherever (No matter where) he goes, I can find him.

无论他去哪里,我都能找到他。

However (No matter how) cold it is, Mary always goes swimming.

不管有多冷,玛丽总是去游泳。

与 whenever 用法类似的词:

- whatever 无论什么
- wherever 无论在哪里
- however 无论如何;不管怎样

考题在线5 Whenever you come to see me, I always have free time.

(改为同义句)

_____ _____ _____ you come to see me, I always have free time.

⑤ **proper** /'prɒpə/ *adj.* (right, appropriate or correct) **合适的;恰当的**

e.g. It is right and proper to arrange our time.

这么安排我们的时间很恰当。

proper 副词形式为 properly,意为“恰当地;合适地;正确地”。

考题在线6 根据句意及汉语提示写出单词。

To my surprise, the 3-year-old boy can spell all those words _____ (正确地). [无锡]

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★**You mustn't go off on your own.**

⑥ **go off 离开**

e.g. The alarm clock went off just now. 刚才闹钟响了。

Suddenly the light went off. 电灯突然灭了。

Meat goes off quickly in summer. 夏天肉很快就变质了。

go off 的一词多义：
1. 响起
2. 熄灭
3. 离开
4.（食物）变质

考题在线 7 The boss was late for the meeting because his alarm clock didn't _____. [株洲]

A. go off B. go out C. go on

点拨：用语境法解题。根据语境可推知，闹钟没响，所以老板开会迟到了。

⑦ **on one's own 独自地**

敲黑板 on one's own 相当于 by oneself 或 alone，可以进行相互转换。

e.g. You can't expect him to do it all on his own. 你不能期望他独自一人把它全部做完。

Mr Green has a house of his own. 格林先生有一座自己的房子。

辨析：on one's own 与 of one's own
① on one's own："单独地，独自地"，多作状语。
② of one's own："属于某人自己的"，一般用作定语。

考题在线 8 The laws are also for children who are old enough to be in the street on their own.（选出与画线部分意思相同或相近的一项）

A. by themselves B. by them C. by yourselves D. by you

★**I'm starving!**

⑧ **starve** /stɑ:v/ *v.* (to suffer or die because you do not have enough food to eat) **挨饿；饿死**

e.g. The country is starved for first-class technicians. 这个国家急需一流的技术人才。

He is simply starved to death. 他简直要饿死了。

starve 常用短语：
① be starved for 渴望；急需
② be starved to death 饿死

考题在线 9 用所给词的适当形式填空

—Mum, what will we have for breakfast? I'm _____ (starve).

—We'll have dumplings. They will be ready soon.

★**Can we go rock climbing?**

⑨ **go rock climbing 去攀岩**

e.g. It's a fine day today. Let's go rock climbing. 今天天气很好，咱们去攀岩吧。

★**And you must be careful of falling stones.**

⑩ **be careful of 当心；小心**

e.g. Be careful of the traffic. 小心车辆。

Be careful! The floor is wet. 小心！地板是湿的。

Please be careful with my glasses. 请当心我的眼镜。

Mike is careful to cross the road. 迈克过马路很小心。

① be careful "当心"，可单独使用，相当于 look out 或 watch out.
② be careful with sth. 当心某物
③ be careful to do sth. 做某事小心

考题在线 10 _____! There is some broken glass on the ground.

A. Go ahead B. Be careful C. Keep quiet D. Look up

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

★**Come on!**

come on 在不同语境中的不同含义：
1. 快点：表示催促别人。
2. 得了吧：表示知道某人所说的话不正确。
3. 来吧；来呀：用于挑战或激怒对方。
4. 加油：用于体育竞赛等场合鼓励队员。

⑪ **come on 来吧**

e.g. Come on, Lucy. We are looking forward to your English songs.
来吧，露西。我们正期待着你的英文歌呢。

come on 在此意为“来吧”，表示请求、鼓励、劝说等，常用于口语中。

Come on! The bus is coming.
快点！公共汽车来了。

Oh, come on, you know that isn't true.
哎呦，得了吧，你知道那不是真的。

Come on! See how I can teach you a lesson.
来吧！看我怎么教训你。

"Come on! Come on! "the football fans shouted.
“加油！加油！”这些足球迷们大喊。

★**It should be a fairly smooth walk to begin with because it's a straight path, but it'll start to get difficult soon!**

fairly adv. 公平合理地 → fair adj. 公平的；合理的 → unfair adj. 不公平的；不公正的

⑫ **fairly** /'feəli/ *adv.* (to some extent but not very) 相当；还算

e.g. It is a fairly easy question. 这是一个相当容易的问题。

【重点】辨析：fairly 与 rather

fairly	修饰形容词或副词时，一般指较好的情形，不能与比较级或 too 连用。
rather	修饰形容词或副词时，好坏情形均适用，可以和比较级或 too 连用。

考题在线 11 The book is _____ too difficult for the boy.
A. rather B. fair C. fairly D. very

⑬ **smooth** /smu:ð/ *adj.* 平坦的

smooth 比较级为 smoother，最高级为 smoothest，其副词形式为 smoothly。

e.g. The path in life is not always smooth.
人生的道路并不总是平坦的。

smooth 的不同含义：
①平坦的；光滑的→反义词 rough
②平静的→同义词 calm
③平稳的；顺利的

The baby's skin was as smooth as silk.
那个婴儿的皮肤如丝绸般光滑。

The interview went smoothly.
面试进展顺利。

方法真题练

考题在线 12 This road is _____ (smooth) than that one.
点拨：此题用标志词法解答。由“than”可知应用 smooth 的比较级形式。

⑭ **to begin with 起初；开始的时候**

to begin/start with 还可意为“首先”，用于引出首先想说的、最重要的内容。

e.g. It was fine to begin with and then it started to rain.
起初天气晴朗，然后开始下雨。

To begin/start with, she is too young for that job.
首先，她年纪太小不适合做那项工作。

考题在线 13 Welcome to our school, ladies and gentlemen. _____, I'd like to introduce myself. [菏泽]
A. To be honest B. To my surprise
C. To start with D. To tell you the truth

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

⑮ **straight** /streɪt/ *adj.* (without a bend or curve) 直的；笔直的

straight
- 形容词 — 意为“直的，平正的，直率的”，可作定语或表语。
- 副词 — 意为“径直，直率地”。

e.g. Your tie isn't straight. 你的领带不正。

He went straight home. 他直接回了家。

Actions speak louder than words. 行动胜于言语。

考题在线 14 根据句意及首字母提示写出单词。

Do you know the girl with s_____ (直的) hair?

考题在线答案 1. pay attention to 2. A 3. D 4. B 5. No matter when 6. properly 7. A 8. A 9. starving 10. B 11. A 12. smoother 13. C 14. straight

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

(答案见240页)

听力技巧

捕捉信息、预测内容法（听录音前要充分利用间隙时间，浏览该题有关的书面材料，将捕捉到的信息，通过分析、推理，推测短文可能涉及的内容，进一步预测问题可能从哪几个方面提出，减少盲目性。）

听力过程

课文听力

听教材 **Activity 2**，完成以下习题

1. Where is Betty leaving for the trip?

A. To the Eastern Hills.

B. To the Southern Hills.

C. To the Western Hills.

2. _____ is leading the group.

A. Betty B. Mr Jackson C. Betty's mum

3. Mr Jackson will tell the students everything about _____.

A. personal safety B. food C. drink

4. Everybody is bringing _____.

A. sports shoes B. clothes C. a picnic lunch

核心素养之文化意识

研学旅行（Study Trip）

◆研学旅行是由学校根据区域特色、学生年龄特点和各学科教学内容需要，组织学生通过集体旅行、集中食宿的方式走出校园，在与平常不同的生活中拓展视野(open the students' eyes)、丰富知识，加深与自然(nature)和文化(culture)的亲近感，增加对集体生活方式和社会公共道德的体验(experience)。

◆研学旅行继承和发展了我国传统游学、“读万卷书，行万里路”的教育理念和人文精神，成为素质教育的新内容和新方式。提升学生的独立(independence)能力、创新精神和实践能力。

◆建议(Suggestions)：

1、途中注意交通安全，听从指挥；注意行动安全，强化安全预测，禁止冒险。

2、服从教师的统一指挥，不擅自行动。

3、要注重文明形象，爱护卫生环境和设施设备，遵守有关规定。

4、发扬团结、合作、互助精神，要相互照顾，不要单独行动。

5、讲究言行举止文明。

◆【素养行动】制订研学活动方案；组织学生通过集体旅行、集中食宿的方式走出校园；写研学报告。

◆【素养行动结果】在与平常不同的生活中拓展视野、丰富知识，加深与自然和文化的亲近感，增加对集体生活方式和社会公共道德的体验，提升中学生的自理能力和实践能力。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础20分

(答案见240页)

一、根据句意及提示完成句子

1. Don't stand at the e_____ of the mountain. It's dangerous.

2. If you are interested in something, it will be easy for you to pay a_____ to it for a long time. [黄石]

3. Tina is my cousin. She is tall and she has long _____(直的) hair. [贵港]

4. This street is very _____(平坦的) but that street is very rough.

5. The young man is very happy to get a _____(相当) good job.

二、用所给词的适当形式填空

6. I always get _____ (lose) in the mountains.

7. It's noisy outside. I can't hear you _____ (clear). [云南]

8. Once a week my business suit is _____ (smooth) ironed. [徐州]

9. Miss Li has much experience of _____ (teach) dancing.

10. At present there are many online courses and we can choose some to study by _____ (we). [宿迁]

三、单项选择

11. —Mom, can you help me wash my clothes?
—Sorry, dear. Help _____. [永州]
A. myself B. ourselves C. yourself

12. —What a good _____ you've given me! Thanks a lot.
—My pleasure. [滨州]
A. information B. news
C. suggestion D. advice

13. —My daughter will _____ for America to study next month.
—You'll miss her very much. [深圳]
A. set down B. set off C. set up

14. You _____ write the report again because spelling mistakes are not allowed at all. [黔南]
A. may B. can
C. must D. could

15. —Haven't you cooked dinner? _____
—Sorry, I am too busy and forget to cook for you. 【导学号：7764826】
A. I'm starving! B. I'm laughing.
C. It's impossible. D. That's for sure.

四、根据汉语意思完成句子

16. 不管你做什么，你都必须要尽你最大努力按时完成它。
_____ you do, you must _____ _____ _____ to finish it on time.

17. 我来带路，请跟我走。
I'll _____ _____ _____. Follow me, please.

18. 你晚上最好不要独自出去。
You'd better not go out _____ _____ _____ at night.

19. 鲍勃一个人离开了，尚未回来。
Bob _____ _____ alone and has not _____.

20. 明星该如何得体地吸引粉丝注意，网上对此曾有热议。 [无锡]
There was a heated online discussion on _____.

A fall into the pit, a gain in your wit.
吃一堑，长一智。

未经许可 禁止复制

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 2 We must keep the camp clean.

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文及导读

原文译文 · 导读

Reading and vocabulary 阅读和词汇

Pre-reading（读前）

Qs: 1. Have you ever seen bears when you travel?
2. Are you afraid of them?
3. If you really meet a bear outside, what will you do?

1 Look at the picture and answer the questions. 看这幅图并回答问题。

1. What is the bear doing? 那只熊在做什么?
2. What do you think the people in the tent/tent/ should do?
你认为帐篷里的人们应该做什么?

2 Read the passage and answer the questions. 读短文并回答问题。

While-reading（读中）

Qs: 1. Where do you think is the best place to keep food safe from bears?
你认为让食物安全地避开熊的最好的地方是哪里?
2. What was the noise behind the writer? 作者身后的噪音是什么?
3. Do you think their camping trip was interesting?
你认为他们的野营旅行有趣吗?

Watch out! Bears about! 小心! 熊出没!

课文朗读

❶ On the first evening, the three of us ① were tired after walking for about eight hours. We soon fell/fel/ asleep ②. 在第一天晚上，在走了大约 8 个小时后，我们三个人都很累。我们很快就睡着了。

❷ In the middle of the night, I heard a strange noise ③ outside. But when I looked out of the tent, there was nothing there. 半夜，我听见外面传来一阵奇怪的响声。但当我往帐篷外面看时，那儿却什么东西也没有。

❸ In the morning, I got up to make breakfast. The bag of food was open.
早上，我起来做早饭。(我发现) 食物袋是开着的。

❹ "Bears," said Joe. "We should hang ④ /hæŋ/ the food in a tree ⑤ tonight."
"是熊 (干的)，" 乔说。"今晚我们应该把食物挂在树上。"

❺ Later that day, we stopped in a beautiful field by ⑥ a stream. We put up ⑦ the tent and fell asleep.
那天晚些时候，我们在溪边的一块美丽的田野中停下了。我们搭起帐篷入睡了。

❻ During the night, the bears came again. This time they took the food from

·考点批注

批 体裁：记叙文

批 标题：点明中心式由"Watch out! Bears about! 小心! 熊出没!"可知本文的主旨大意：小心熊。题目用了两个感叹号强调了熊的危险性，同时引导读者产生好奇和遐想：到底发生了什么危险的事情？与其猜奇地想象还不如一看究竟。

批 背景：
Where: in the forest
Who: I(writer), Joe and Ben
When: in 14 days
What: go camping

批 写作顺序：时间顺序
1. On the first evening
2. In the middle of the night
3. In the morning
4. Later that day
5. During the night
6. That night
7. The next day
8. For the next day

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

the tree. 夜里，熊又来了。这次它们从树上拿走了食物。

批事件：

The first evening:
↓
Some bears took away our food.

The second evening:
↓
The bears came back and took away our food again.

The fourth day:
↓
I saw a baby bear and his mother. I was scared to death.

⑦ "It wasn't high enough. Bears can climb trees. They can smell food from a long way away," said Ben.
"(挂的地方)不够高。熊会爬树。它们可以从很远的地方闻到食物(的味道)，"本说。

⑧ "We must keep[8] the camp clean," I said. "Bears might think our rubbish is food." "我们必须保持营区的清洁，"我说。"熊可能认为我们的垃圾是食物。"

⑨ "OK, let's tidy up and move on. And we should make lots of noise too. If they know where we are, they may not come any closer," said Joe.
"好吧，让我们清理干净继续前进。我们也应该弄出许多响声来。如果它们知道我们在哪儿，它们可能就不会再靠近了，"乔说。

⑩ "But if you see a bear," said Ben, "you mustn't make any sudden/'sʌdn/ moves or make a sound. And above all[9], you mustn't run. No one can run faster in the forest than a bear. And remember, we don't have a gun/gʌn/ to keep us safe!" "但是如果你看到一只熊，"本说，"你千万别做出任何突然的举动或弄出声响。最重要的是，你千万不要跑。在森林里没有人会比熊跑得更快。并且记住，我们没有一支枪来保证我们的安全！"

⑪ That night, we went to sleep... or we tried to.
那天晚上，我们去睡觉了……或者说我们尽力去睡着。

⑫ The next day, we stopped at eleven o'clock for a break. While the others were resting, I went for a walk in the forest.
第二天十一点我们停下来休息。当别人都在休息的时候，我去森林里散步。

⑬ Suddenly, I saw a baby bear playing[10] with some sticks and stones. He looked so soft/sɒft/ and friendly, and I remember thinking, "If I reach out, I can just touch him." 突然，我看见一只小熊在玩一些树枝和石头。他看起来那么柔软并且友好，我记得当时(我)在想，"如果我伸出手的话，我能正好摸着他。"

⑭ There was a loud noise behind me. 我身后传来一阵巨大的响声。

⑮ I stood very still[11] /stɪl/. I didn't even turn my head. There was another loud noise. The baby bear looked up, and ran towards me. I turned pale and he ran past me into the woods/wʊdz/.
我站着一动不动，甚至没有转过我的头去。又有一声巨响，那只小熊抬起头来看了看，朝我跑来。我脸色变得苍白，他从我身边跑过进了森林。

批词语赏析：右边画～处 turned pale 和 went cold 很生动地描绘出作者见到小熊朝自己跑来及听到突然声响时的"惊恐"。

⑯ I was still for a few minutes. Then slowly I turned round, and I saw the baby bear and his huge mother walking away. 我一动不动地呆了几分钟。然后我慢慢地转过身去，我看见了那只小熊和他巨大的熊妈妈走远了。

⑰ I ran back to my friends. I have never run so fast.
我跑回了我的朋友们那儿。我从未跑过那么快。

⑱ For the next ten days, every time[12] there was a sudden[13] noise, my blood /blʌd/ went cold. 之后的 10 天中，每次听到突然的声响，我都会浑身发凉。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Post-reading（读后）

写作小练笔☞（答案见115页）

3 Complete the table. 完成表格。

What happened 发生了什么	What they should or should not do 他们应该或不应该干什么
In the middle of the first night, the writer heard a _____ outside. And the bag of food _____. 在第一天晚上半夜里，作者听见外面_____。并且装食物的袋子_____。	They should _____. 他们应该_____。
During the second night, the bears came again and _____ from the tree. 在第二天晚上，熊又来了并从树上_____。	They should _____ and _____. 他们应该_____和_____。
On the fourth day, the writer saw _____. Then _____ came. 在第四天作者看见_____。然后_____来了。	She should not _____. 她不应该_____。

4 Complete the passage with the words in the box. 用方框内的单词完成文章。

blood 血；血液　gun 枪　sticks 棍；棒　sudden 突然的

On the third day of our camping trip, Ben told us that if we saw a bear, we should not make any (1) _____ moves. We did not have a (2) _____ to keep ourselves safe. The next day, I saw a baby bear playing with some (3) _____ and stones. His mother arrived soon, and I was so afraid that my (4)_____ went cold. I did not move until the bears walked away. Then I ran back to my friends as fast as I could. 在我们野营旅行的第三天，本告诉我们如果我们看见一只熊，我们不应该做出任何 (1)_____动作。我们没有一支 (2)_____来保证我们自己的安全。第二天，我看见一只小熊在玩一些 (3)_____和石头。他的妈妈很快就来了，我如此害怕以至于我 (4)_____浑身发凉。直到熊走开，我才动。然后我尽快跑回我的朋友们那儿。

Writing 写作

5 Think of an area of countryside nearby. Answer the questions and make notes. You can use reference books or the Internet to help you.

想一想附近乡村的一个地方。回答问题并做笔记。你可以使用参考书或网络来帮助你。

- Where is it? 它在哪里?
- Why do people go there? 为什么人们去那里?
- Are there any dangers from animals? 有一些来自动物的危险吗?
- How can we protect ourselves? 我们如何保护我们自己?
- What should we do to look after the place? 我们应该做什么来保护那个地方?

6 Write sentences with the notes you have made in Activity 5. 使用活动 5 中你做的笔记来写句子。

- Say where it is. 说说它在哪里。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lushan National Park is in Jiangxi Province. 庐山国家公园在江西省。

- Say why people go there. 说说为什么人们去那里。

  People go there to see the mountains and streams. 人们去那里观赏高山和小溪。

- Say if there are any dangers from animals. 说说是否有些来自动物的危险。

  The fish and birds there are not dangerous, but there are some snakes.

  那里的鱼和鸟是没有危险的，但是有些蛇。

- Say how we can protect ourselves. 说说我们如何能保护我们自己。

  We mustn't walk in the grass. 我们不能践踏草地。

- Say what we should do to look after the place. 说说我们应该做什么来保护这个地方。

  We should allow only 1, 000 people to visit it each day. 我们应该每天只允许 1 000 人去游览它。

7 **Write a passage called *Look after the countryside and yourself*. Use the sentences you have written in Activity 6 to help you.**

写一篇题为《保护乡村和你自己》的文章。使用你在活动 6 中写的句子来帮助你。

课文背诵指南

- **Watch out! Bears about!**
  - In the middle of the first night
    - The writer heard a strange noise outside. And the bag was open.
    - They should hang the food in a tree.
  - During the second night
    - The bears came again and took the food from the tree.
    - They should keep the camp clean and make lots of noise.
  - On the fourth day
    - The writer saw a baby bear playing with sticks and stones. Then his huge mother came.
    - The writer should not go for a walk in the forest.

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练 专攻中考阅读 60分

(答案见240页)

阅读策略

抓住细节，关注 5W1H 法（我们在做细节题时，要找准关键词句，找出文章中所叙述的重要事实和细节，关注 what, who, where, why, when, how 等重点信息，从而确定正确答案。）

阅读过程

拓展阅读

一、速读文章，完成下面的题目

1. What does the writer want to tell us by writing this passage? （综合归纳题）

二、细读文章，完成下列题目

2. How many bears did the writer see in the passage? （细节查找题）

3. How long did it take them to walk there? （细节查找题）

A. About 6 hours. B. About 7 hours.

C. About 8 hours. D. About 9 hours.

4. What does the word "still" mean in Chinese? （词义猜测题）

A. 仍然 B. 不动的 C. 害怕的 D. 笔直的

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 考点精讲点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用 •考点批注

★On the first evening, the three of us were tired after walking for about eight hours.

① the three of us 意为“我们三个人”（总共三个人），数词 three 前加定冠词 the，表示特指；

① the three of us 我们三个人

e.g. There are four people in our study group. The four of us help each other. 我们学习小组共四个人。我们四个人互相帮助。

There are ten people in our class. Two of them come from England. 我们班有十个人。两个来自英格兰。

② three of us 意为“我们中的三个人”（不止三个人）

★We soon fell asleep.

② fall asleep 入睡 fall 在此处用作系动词，asleep 在此处为形容词作表语，表示状态，指睡眠状态。

e.g. The boy was very tired and soon he fell asleep.
这个男孩很累，很快他就睡着了。

辨析：go to bed,be asleep 与 be sleepy

go to bed	意为“去睡觉”，强调动作，对应短语是 get up（起床）。
be asleep	为“睡着”，表示状态，对应短语是 be awake（醒着）。
be sleepy	意为“困倦的，昏昏欲睡的”。

Practice makes perfect. 熟能生巧。

e.g. I went to bed at ten last night, but I didn't fall asleep/go to sleep at twelve. I only slept for 5 hours. So I am very sleepy now. 昨晚我 10 点上床睡觉，但 12 点还没有睡着。我只睡了 5 个小时。所以我现在很困。

考题在线 1 He _____ at about eight o'clock and he _____ after a while.

A. fell asleep; went to sleep　　B. went to bed; fell asleep

C. was asleep; went to bed　　D. went to bed; was sleepy

点拨：go to bed 强调“上床睡觉”这一动作；fall asleep 强调“入睡”这一过程。

★In the middle of the night, I heard a strange noise outside.

③ noise /nɔɪz/ *n.* (a sound, especially when it is loud, unpleasant or disturbing) 声音；噪音

noise 既可作可数名词又可作不可数名词，意为“声音；噪音；吵闹声”。

e.g. The strange noise made us mad.
这种奇怪的噪音让我们气愤。

【重点】辨析：noise, voice 与 sound

noise	指不悦耳的声音，如噪音、杂音、吵闹声等。
voice	指人发出的声音，如说话声、唱歌声等。
sound	泛指人们所能听到的自然界的一切声音。

noise 的形容词形式为 noisy，副词形式为 noisily.

e.g. Try not to make any noises when you go upstairs.
上楼时尽量不要弄出声音。

Taylor Swift's got a lovely singing voice.

voice 嗓音



sound 声音



noise 噪音



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

泰勒·斯威夫特有悦耳的歌喉。

There were strange sounds coming from the next room.

隔壁房间传来奇怪的声音。

考题在线 2 根据句意和汉语提示写出单词。

I didn't hear the phone because it was too _____ (吵闹的) in the supermarket. [乐山]

考题在线 3 I could hear her sweet _____ from the next room.

A. noise B. voice C. sound D. noises



hang (hung, hung) 悬挂；吊

★**We should hang the food in a tree tonight.**

④ **hang** /hæŋ/ *v.* (to attach sth., or to be attached) **悬挂；吊**

e.g. My coat is hanging in the lab. 我的外套正在实验室里挂着。

词条	意义	过去式 / 过去分词
hang	悬挂；吊	hung; hung
	绞死	hanged; hanged

e.g. I hung the washing on the clothing line. 我把洗好的衣服挂在晾衣绳上。

At last, the bad man was hanged. 最后，这个坏男人被绞死了。



hang (hanged, hanged) (被)绞死

考题在线 4 My bag _____ there behind the door.

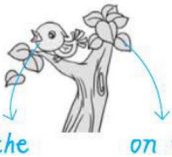
A. hanged B. hang

C. is hanging D. has hanged

⑤ **in a/the tree 在树上**

e.g. Look! There is a kite in the tree. 看！那棵树上有一个风筝。

辨析：in the tree 与 on the tree



in the tree on the tree

in the tree	(外来的事物) 在树上	There is a bird in the tree. 树上有一只鸟。
on the tree	(树本身的东西，如花、果实等) 在树上	There are some apples on the tree. 树上有些苹果。

考题在线 5 When winter comes, there aren't any leaves _____ the tree.

A. on B. in C. at D. of

点拨：in the tree 表示外来事物在树上；on the tree 表示树木本身长出来的东西，如题目中的树叶。

★**Later that day, we stopped in a beautiful field by a stream.**

介词 by 的其他常见用法：

(1) "by+v.-ing" 表示方式或方法，在句中作状语，常用 how 对其提问。

⑥ **by** *prep.* **在……旁边** by 在此作介词，意为"在……旁边"，后常接表示地点的名词。

e.g. Tom sits by the window in the classroom.

汤姆坐在教室里的窗边。

—How will you catch up with others in your class?

你将如何赶上班里其他人？

—By studying harder. 通过更加努力地学习。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Mom told him to come back home by 10:00.
妈妈告诉他十点之前回到家。

by train/boat/bus 乘火车 / 船 / 公共汽车

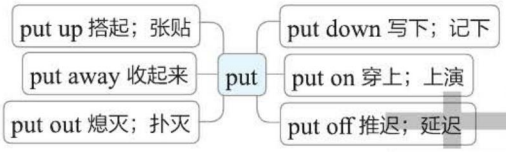
(2)"by+ 时间"意为"不迟于；在……之前"。
(3)"by+ 交通工具"意为"乘……(表示方式)"。

★We put up the tent and fell asleep.

⑦ put up 搭建

e.g. We put up our tent in the woods.
我们在树林里搭起我们的帐篷。

put 的短语小结：



put up 的不同含义：



考题在线 6 —We are planning a Yangtze River Protection Day this weekend. Do you have any advice?
—You'd better _____ signs around the school to tell all the students about that. [荆州]

A. make up　B. put up　C. set up　D. show up

点拨：用词义辨析法解题。make up 编造；put up 张贴，搭起；set up 建立；show up 出现，露面。根据 signs 可知是"张贴"。

考题在线 7 The school sports meeting will be _____ because of the heavy rain. [益阳]

A. put up　B. put on　C. put off

★"We must keep the camp clean," I said.

⑧ keep 的用法

e.g. Running is a good way to keep healthy.
跑步是保持健康的好方法。

We must keep the room clean.
我们必须保持这个房间干净。

I kept (on) thinking about the match in the afternoon.
我老是想着下午的比赛。

I kept them waiting at the gate.
我让他们在大门口一直等着。

We must keep them from getting to know our plans.
我们必须设法防止他们知道我们的计划。

keep 句式小结：
keep+ 名词 / 形容词"保持……"
keep+ 宾语 + 形容词"使……保持某种状态"
keep (on) doing sth."不断地做某事"
keep sb. doing sth."使某人一直做某事"
keep sb./sth. from doing sth."防止或阻止某人 / 物做某事"

考题在线 8 We often exercise to keep _____. [渝北]

A. health　B. healthy
C. healthily　D. unhealthy

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

辨析：above all, after all 与 first of all

① above all"尤其是，最重要的是"，强调需特别对待，类似于 especially.

② after all"毕竟；终究"，表示一种让步语气。

③ first of all"首先"，表示次序。

★**And above all, you mustn't run.**

⑨ **above all 尤其是，最重要的是**

e.g. Above all, make sure you are safe. 最重要的是，确保你是安全的。

Don't punish him. After all he is a child.

不要惩罚他，毕竟他是个孩子。

First of all, let's make a plan. 首先，让我们制订个计划。

考题在线 9 最重要的是，现在送他去医院。

_____, send him to the hospital now.

★**Suddenly, I saw a baby bear playing with some sticks and stones.**

⑩ **see sb. doing sth. 看见某人正在做某事**

辨析：see sb. do sth. 与 see sb. doing sth.

see sb. do sth.	表示"看见某人做某事"	强调看见了动作的全过程
see sb. doing sth.	表示"看见某人正在做某事"	强调看见某动作正在进行

e.g. I saw you put the key into your pocket.

我看见你把那把钥匙放进了你的口袋里。

I saw Jane dancing in her room.

我看见简正在她的房间里跳舞。

有类似用法的词还有 watch, hear, notice 等。

考题在线 10 I didn't see you _____ in. You must have been very quiet. [临沂]

A. comes B. to come C. come D. have come

★**I stood very still.**

⑪ **still** /stɪl/ *adj.* (calm and quiet) **静止的；寂静的；不动的**

still 还可用作副词，意为"还；仍然；更（可修饰比较级）"。

e.g. It's very hard for kids to stay still. 对孩子们来说保持不动很难。

Are you still living there? 你还住在那儿吗?

She is still more beautiful. 她更漂亮了。

考题在线 11 —What's the English word for the Chinese food *jiaozi*?

—You can _____ say "*jiaozi*". It has been added to the Oxford English Dictionary. [东营]

A. just B. even C. still D. hardly

点拨：用关键词法解题。just 刚刚；even 甚至；still 仍然；hardly 几乎不。由答语中的"has been added to"可知是指"仍然"可以如此称呼。

★**For the next ten days, every time there was a sudden noise, my blood went cold.**

every time 是名词短语，在此相当于连词，用于引导时间状语从句。

与 time 相关的名词短语还有 each time, next time, the first/last time, any time 等，它们都可作连词，用于引导时间状语从句。

⑫ **every time 每次；每当**

e.g. Every time I see Tom, he is reading a book. 每次我看见汤姆，他都在读书。

I visit my grandfather every time I go to London.

每次我去伦敦的时候，都会拜访我的祖父。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

⑬ **sudden** /'sʌdn/ *adj.* (happening or done quickly and unexpectedly)
突然的；急剧的

e.g. He felt a sudden sense of calm and contentment.
他突然感到一种安宁和满足。

Why do so many frogs suddenly appear on the road?
为什么这么多青蛙突然出现在路上？ sudden 副词形式为 suddenly.

考题在线 12 根据句意及汉语提示写出单词。

She _____ (突然) found herself being talked about in all the newspapers.

考题在线答案 1. B 2. noisy 3. B 4. C 5. A 6. B 7. C 8. B 9. Above all 10. C 11. C 12.suddenly

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见240页)

一、根据句意及汉语提示写出单词

1. It will rain soon. Let's put up a _____(帐篷) here.

2. When he was looking into a hole, a big cat appeared _____ (突然地). [广安]

3. This sofa is very comfortable and it feels very _____ (柔软的).

4. The sound of footsteps in the darkness made her _____ (血) go cold.

5. We kept _____ (静止的；不动的) and tried not to bother him.

二、单项选择

6. Linda has a beautiful _____. She sings very well. [甘孜]

A. look B. sound C. voice

7. Last night I _____ at nine, but I didn't _____ until eleven.

A. went to sleep; go to bed
B. went to bed; fall asleep
C. fell asleep; go to sleep
D. fell asleep; go to bed

8. I saw Tom _____ his key in the lock, turn it and open the door. [徐州]

A. put B. putting
C. puts D. to put

9. A primary school in England has _____ signs at its three entrances (入 口), saying: Greet your child with a smile, not a mobile. [临沂]

A. put into B. put off
C. put on D. put up

10. We should eat well and keep ourselves _____.

A. health B. healthy
C. healthily D. healthiness

三、根据汉语意思完成句子

11. 树上有一只鸟。
There is a bird _____ _____ _____.

12. 那只小熊抬头看了看，朝我跑来。
The baby bear _____ _____, and _____ _____ me.

13. 我们继续前进吧。我们很快就要到达山顶了。
Let's _____ _____. We'll soon get to the top of the mountain.

14. 她将手伸向键盘，开始演奏起来。
She _____ _____ her hands to the keyboard and began to play.

15. 在半夜，外面有一种奇怪的声音。
_____ _____ _____ _____ the night, there was a _____ _____ outside.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 3 Language in use

I. 课文原文、译文

Language practice 语言练习

You must be careful of falling stones.
你们必须小心落石。
You mustn't walk too close to the edge of the hill path because you might fall and hurt yourselves. 你们不准太靠近山路的边缘行走，因为你们可能会掉下去伤了自己。
You should always wear proper clothes.
你们应该总是穿着合适的衣服。
Bears might think our rubbish is food.
熊可能认为我们的垃圾是食物。
—Can we go rock climbing?
我们能攀岩吗?
—No, you can't.
不，你们不能。

1 Match the signs with the rules and warnings.
将标志与规定和警告连起来。

1. No smoking.
禁止吸烟。 ☐
2. No eating or drinking.
禁止饮食。 ☐
3. Children crossing.
孩子过马路。 ☐
4. Danger! Be careful of falling rocks.
危险！小心落石。 ☐
5. Children should be taken care of by parents.
孩子们应该由父母照顾。 ☐
6. Do not drink and drive.
禁止酒后驾车。 ☐

2 Read the list of rules and write sentences using *must*, *mustn't*, *should* or *shouldn't*.
读一读规则清单，并使用 must, mustn't, should 或 shouldn't 写句子。

London Indoor Climbing Centre
伦敦户内攀登中心

Visitors please note: 游客们请注意：

Dos 应该做：

- Check in at the main gate when you come to the centre.
当你来到中心时，在主大门处签到。
- Climb with someone.
与同伴一起攀登。
- Wear a hard hat at all times.
时刻戴着安全帽。
- Wear the correct climbing shoes.
穿合适的登山鞋。
- Wear comfortable clothes.
穿舒适的衣服。

Don'ts 不应该做：

- Don't climb without a rope.
没有绳索不要攀爬。
- Don't eat or drink anywhere except ① in the restaurant.
除了在饭店内，不要在任何地方吃和喝东西。
- Don't listen to personal music players while climbing.
攀登时，不要听个人的音乐播放器。
- Don't talk on a mobile phone while climbing. 攀登时，不要用手机交谈。

3 Work in pairs. Explain why the rules in Activity 2 are important. 结对练习。解释一下为什么活动 2 中的规则是重要的。

—*Why must you check in when you come to the centre?* 当你来到中心时为什么必须登记?
—*Because they want to know who is there.*
因为他们想知道谁在那里。

荣德基

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

1. Why must you climb with someone?
为什么你必须和同伴一起攀登?
2. Why must you wear comfortable clothes?
为什么你必须穿舒适的衣服?
3. Why mustn't you climb without a rope?
没有绳索你为什么不能攀爬?
4. Why shouldn't you listen to music while climbing? 当你攀登时为什么不应该听音乐?

4 Complete the passage with the correct form of the words in the box.
用方框内所给单词的正确形式完成短文。

although 尽管	keep 保持	stream 小溪
tourist 游客	worry 担心	

People are very (1)_____ about the conditions of the ancient forests of Canada and want to save them. Many visitors to the forests use knives to cut their names into the trees, some of which are hundreds of years old. (2)_____ there are litter bins, people still throw rubbish into the (3)_____ and this causes plants and fish to die.

人们对加拿大古森林的状况非常 (1)_____，想要拯救它们。很多前往森林的游客用刀子将他们的名字刻在树上，其中有些树已经有数百年的历史了。(2)_____有垃圾箱，但人们仍然把垃圾扔进 (3)_____，这导致了植物和鱼类死亡。

People from local villages have helped clean up the forests. We hope (4)_____ will play their part in (5)_____ Canada's forests clean too!

来自当地村庄的人们已经帮助清理了森林。我们希望 (4)_____ 也参与到 (5)_____加拿大的森林清洁中来!

Now write possible rules for visitors to the forests. 现在为前往森林的游客写可行的规则。

1. You should _____.
你们应该_____。
2. You shouldn't _____.
你们不应该_____。
3. You must _____.
你们必须_____。
4. You mustn't _____.
你们绝对不能_____。

5 Complete the sentences with the words in the box. 用方框内的单词完成句子。

gun 枪	smooth 平坦的	sticks 棍；枝条
stone 石头	sudden 突然的	tent 帐篷
whenever 无论什么时候		

1. Come and visit me _____ you have time. 来看我_____你有时间。
2. The wall is made of _____.
墙是由_____砌的。
3. The path to the top is not very _____.
到山顶的道路不是很_____。
4. Remember to take a _____ with you to sleep in, because it might rain. 记得随身携带一个可以在里面睡觉的_____，因为天可能下雨。
5. He lifted up the _____ and pointed it at the bear. 他举起_____并将它指向熊。
6. There was a _____ noise in the woods and we all stopped moving.
树林里有一声_____噪音，我们都停止了前进。
7. Birds use small _____ and leaves to make a home.
鸟儿们使用小的_____和树叶来筑巢。

6 Read the passage and answer the questions.
阅读短文并回答问题。

课文朗读

1. What does Zhang Wenpeng try to say with his drawing? 张文鹏用他的素描想要说什么?
2. What does Zhou Zhiyun try to say with his painting? 周志云用他的油画想要说什么?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

3. What does the school suggest the students should do? 学校建议学生们应该做什么?

4. How can a school become a "green school"? 一所学校如何才能成为一所"绿色学校"?

With his drawing in his hand, twelve-year-old Zhang Wenpeng said that people must wake up to ② the fact that pollution is causing damage to the progress we've made.

手中拿着他的素描，12岁的张文鹏说人们必须认识到这个事实：污染正对我们已取得的进步造成破坏。

"To save water is to save lives," he said.

"节约用水就是拯救生命，"他说。

His classmate from the same primary school in the hilly countryside of western China, eleven-year-old Zhou Zhiyun, has painted a big shining light, with the message that people must not waste electricity.

他的同班同学，来自中国西部山区的同一所小学的11岁的周志云绘制了一个闪闪发光的大电灯，承载的信息是：人们绝对不能浪费电。

The students were members of a project to discuss "changes in the climate all over the world and what we can do about them".

这些学生们是探讨"全球气候变化以及针对它们我们能够做什么"的课题的成员。

The school suggested that the students should pass on what they have learnt in school to ③ their parents and neighbours.

学校建议学生们应将他们在学校学到的知识传递给他们的父母和邻居。

"I told my family why we should turn off the light when we leave a room," said one student.

"我告诉我的家人为什么我们离开房间时应该关灯，"一位学生说。

China now has many green schools like this one.

中国现在有许多所像这样的绿色学校。

In order to ④ become a "green school", a school must include education about the environment as part of the timetable.

为了成为一所"绿色学校"，学校必须将环境教育作为其教学的一部分。

"Education is important and can help children and young people change their habits. At the same time, they can pass on knowledge to their neighbours," said a director of the Ministry of Environmental Protection.

"教育很重要，它能帮助孩子们和年轻人改变他们的习惯。同时，他们能把知识传递给他们的邻居，"环境保护部的一位主任说。

7 Listen and complete the sentences.

听录音并完成句子。

课文听力

1. The first thing you have to do is to _____ carefully.
你必须做的第一件事情是仔细地_____。
2. Think about where _____ and whether there are _____.
想一下哪儿_____并且是否有_____。
3. You should only take marked _____.
你应该只携带有标记的_____。
4. Make sure you know where _____ for lunch.
确信你知道哪里_____为午餐。
5. Don't forget to tell people to _____ for the picnic.
不要忘记告诉人们去_____为野餐。
6. Don't walk when it is _____ or in _____.
不要徒步（旅行）当它_____时或在_____里。
7. You must not try out a _____ with a group.
你绝对不能尝试一个_____和一个小组。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Around the world 世界各地

Ecotourism 生态旅游

Ecotourism is also known as ⑤ "responsible tourism". It means you visit places without damaging the environment. Many countries around the world have started ecotourism holidays and trips.Tourists help the local communities look after their natural environment.Here are some rules of ecotourism. 生态旅游也被称为"负责任的旅游"。它意味着你在不破坏环境的情况下参观各个地方。全世界很多国家已经启动了生态旅游假期和旅行。游客们帮助当地的社团照看他们的自然环境。这儿是生态旅游的一些规定。

Dos 应该做

- Take rubbish away with you.
  随身将垃圾带走。
- Walk on paths or roads.
  在小路或公路上走。
- Take photos but nothing else.
  除了拍照其他什么也不要做。

Don'ts 不应该做

- Don't pick flowers or damage trees.
  不要摘花或破坏树木。
- Don't pollute rivers or streams.
  不要污染河流或小溪。
- Don't make open fires in the forests.
  不要在森林里生明火。

Module task 模块任务：

Writing advice for visitors to China

给来中国的游客写建议

8 **Work in pairs. Discuss and give advice for visitors to China. Talk about:** 结对练习。讨论并给来中国的游客提出建议。谈论一下：

- visiting someone's home
  拜访某人的家
- eating and drinking
  饮食
- travelling on public transport
  乘公共交通工具旅游
- behaving politely in public
  在公共场所举止文明
- visiting tourist sights
  参观旅游景点

9 **Write your advice.** 写出你的建议。

You must... 你必须……

You mustn't... 你不准……

You should... 你应该……

You shouldn't... 你不应该……

10 **Work in groups and compare your advice. Choose the five most useful pieces of advice for visitors to China.**

分组练习并比较你们的建议。选择给来中国的游客最有用的 5 条建议。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用 •考点批注

★Don't eat or drink anywhere except in the restaurant.

① **except** /ɪkˈsept/ *prep.* (used before you mention the only thing or person about which a statement is not true) 除……之外

敲黑板 请大家注意：except 连接的两个成分作主语时，要遵循"就近原则"，即谓语动词的形式通常要与 except 前的主语的数保持一致。

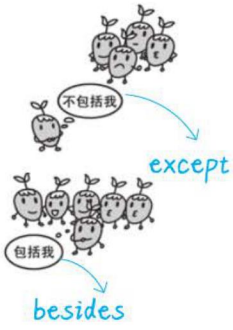
e.g. We all succeeded except Tom.

除了汤姆，我们都成功了。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

【易错】辨析：besides, except 与 except for

besides	指“除了……之外还”，具有附加性质，常与 other, else 等连用（包含后面的内容）。
except	指“除了；除……之外”，具有排他性，不包括 except 后面的内容，且着重强调除去的部分，不可用 but 代替。
except for	除去的和非除去的不是同类事物时，用 except for。



e.g. All of us passed the exam besides John. 除约翰外，我们也都通过了考试。

We're all here except Mary. 除玛丽外，我们都在这儿。

The movie was good except for the ending. 这部电影除了结尾之外都很好。

考题在线 1 Everybody except Mike and Linda _____ there when the meeting began. [泰安]

A. is B. are C. was D. were

点拨：主语是 Everybody，谓语应用第三人称单数形式；根据时间状语从句可知，主句应用一般过去时。

★**With his drawing in his hand, twelve-year-old Zhang Wenpeng said that people must wake up to the fact that pollution is causing damage to the progress we've made.**

辨析：wake up 与 wake up to

① wake up 意为“醒；使清醒；使活跃”。

② wake up to 意为“认识到；意识到”，相当于 realize。

② **wake up to 意识到；认识到**

e.g. Please don't wake me up until 9:00 tomorrow morning.

请在明天上午九点叫醒我。

We should wake up to the danger of smoking.

我们应该认识到吸烟的危害。

考题在线 2 It was late. She opened the door quietly because she didn't want to _____ her grandma.

A. call up B. wake up

C. stay up D. get up

考题在线 3 你现在意识到学习的重要性还不晚。

It's not late for you to _____ the importance of studying.

★**The school suggested that the students should pass on what they have learnt in school to their parents and neighbours.**

③ **pass on…to sb. 把……传递给某人**

pass on...to sb.（=pass... on to sb.）意为“把……（信息）传递给某人”。其中 pass on 意为“传递”。

e.g. I will help you to pass on the message to the other students.

=I will help you to pass the message on to the other students.

我会帮你把消息传给其他学生。

I passed by your house yesterday.

我昨天路过你家。 pass by 经过

My grandfather passed away last year.

我爷爷去年去世了。 pass away 去世（委婉说法）

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★**In order to become a "green school", a school must include education about the environment as part of the timetable.**

④ **in order to...** 为了……　作目的状语，可放在句首或句中，否定形式为 in order not to do sth.。

e.g. In order to finish the article, he worked late into the night.
为了完成那篇文章，他工作到深夜。

Mary got up early in order to do morning exercises.
玛丽早早起床做早操。

Linda arrived early in order to get a good seat.　in order to 可与 in order that/so that 引导的从句或动词不定式进行同义句转换。
=Linda arrived early in order that/so that she could get a good seat.
=To get a good seat, Linda arrived early.
琳达早早到场，以便找个好座位。

考题在线 4 He gets up early in order to get to school on time.（同义句转换）
He gets up early _____ he can get to school on time.　[巴中]

★**Ecotourism is also known as "responsible tourism".**

⑤ **be known as** 被称为……；被称作……

辨析：be known as 与 be known for
1. be known as 后接表示名称的名词，意为"被称为……"。
2. be known for 后接名词或 v.-ing 形式，表示出名的原因，意为"因……而出名"，相当于 be famous for。

e.g. Michael Jordan was known as "Air Jordan".
迈克尔·乔丹被称为"飞人乔丹"。

Guizhou is known for its *Maotai*.
贵州因它的茅台而闻名。

考题在线 5 This disease _____ commonly _____ Mad Cow Disease.
A. is; known as　B. is; know as　C. is; known for　D. is; know for

考题在线答案　1. C　2. B　3. wake up to　4. so that　5. A

Ⅲ. 模块语法沙龙　夺取中考语法满分

情态动词

情态动词表示说话人对动作的观点，如需要、可能、意愿或怀疑等，不能单独作谓语，情态动词与助动词一样，后面需要接动词原形构成谓语，它们一般没有人称和数的变化（have to 除外）。常用的情态动词及用法如下：

速记小筏：
情态动词的用法
情态动词两要点：
动词原形跟后面，说话语气转委婉。
can 表"能力"，may"许可"，should"应该"，would"愿"，must"必须"表主观，have to 客观表"被迫"。

知识微课

考点 1　can 和 could

考向：can 和 could 的用法

- can/could
  - 可以：表示许可或请求，could 比 can 语气委婉。
    Could you please pass the book to me? 你可以把那本书递给我吗？
  - 能，会：表示能力或客观可能性。
    Can you play the piano? 你会弹钢琴吗？
  - 表示推测、怀疑：多用于否定句和疑问句中
    Mr Smith can't be at home 史密斯先生不可能在家。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

考题在线 1 —Yuan Longping, a famous Chinese scientist, is now doing research on sea rice.
—If farmers _____ start planting rice in salty water, China's food supply will surely rise. [广东]

A. can B. can't
C. must D. mustn't

考题在线 2 —It's too hot. _____ I swim in the lake?
—No, you _____. That's too dangerous. [黄石]

A. Should; can't B. Need; mustn't
C. Must; needn't D. Could; can't

考点 2 may 和 might

考向：may 和 might 的用法

may	表示请求、许可，意为“可以”	You may sit here if you want. 如果你想的话，你可以坐在这儿。
	表示推测，常用于肯定句中，意为“可能，也许”	She may come back tomorrow, but I am not sure. 她可能明天回来，但是我不确定。
might	may 的过去式	He asked if he might go home. 他问是否他可以回家了。
	表示请求、许可，语气比 may 更委婉	Might I smoke here? 我可以在这儿吸烟吗?
	表示推测，常用于肯定句，意为“可能、也许”（可能性比 may 小）	It might rain tomorrow. 明天可能有雨。

考题在线 3 —_____ I have a talk with you now?
—Sorry, I'm quite busy. [资阳]

A. Will B. Must
C. May D. Need

考题在线 4 —Mum, I've signed for a big box by Future Express（快递）. What's in it?
—I'm not sure. It _____ be a present from your brother. [宜昌]

A. might B. must
C. should D. will

点拨：由 I'm not sure. 可知，“可能是你哥哥寄的礼物”，是一种猜测，表可能。

考点 3 must

考向 1：【高频】must 的用法：

must
- 必须：表示义务，在回答 must 引导的一般疑问句时，肯定回答用 must，否定回答用 needn't 或 don't have to。
  —Must I go now? 我现在必须去吗?
  —No, you needn't. 不，你不必。
- 一定：表示推测，且 must 只能用于肯定句中。The book must be Lily's. 这本书一定是莉莉的。
- 否定形式：mustn't 表示“禁止，不允许”。You mustn't play football on the road. 你不许在公路上踢足球。

考题在线 5 I _____ go now, or I'll miss my train. [北京]

A. can B. might C. must D. could

考题在线 6 —Must I hand in the survey on the use of bicycle-sharing right now?
—No, you _____. [福建]

A. needn't B. can't C. shouldn't

点拨：以 must 提问的一般疑问句，肯定回答用 must（必须），否定回答用 needn't 或 don't/doesn't have to（不必）。

考向 2：辨析：must 与 have to

must	强调主观上“必须”，无人称和数的变化。
have to	表示客观的义务或需要，表示不得不，有人称和数的变化。

未德基

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考题在线 7 —The manager says that there's no hot water after 8:00 tonight.
—You mean we _____ go to bed without a shower. How terrible!
A. can B. have to
C. may D. must

考点 4 shall 和 should

考向：shall 表示征询意见，多用于第一人称。should 表示责任、义务等，可以用于各种人称。

e.g. Shall we go shopping?
我们去购物好吗?
Bill should get to school on time.
比尔应该按时到达学校。

考题在线 8 Let's practise speaking English together, _____ we?
A. shall B. need C. could D. must

考题在线 9 You look so weak! I think you _____ go to see a doctor at once. [株洲]
A. might B. should C. could

考点 5 would 和 will

考向：表示意愿，可用于多种人称。will 指将来，would 常用于间接引语，指过去的将来。

e.g. I will help you. 我会帮助你。
He said he would help us.
他说他会帮助我们。

表示向对方提出请求或询问对方的意愿。

e.g. Will you give me a hand?
你能帮我一下吗?
Would you mind opening the window?
你介意打开这扇窗户吗?

考题在线 10 _____ you mind telling me how _____ English words?
A. Must; to remember
B. Should; remember
C. Would; to remember
D. Must; remember

考题在线答案 1. A 2. D 3. C 4. A 5. C 6. A 7. B 8. A 9. B 10. C

Ⅳ. 写作一课一法 夺取中考写作 20分

写作小练笔

介绍"第一晚发生的事"

The writer and his friends went camping. [On the first evening, they fell asleep soon because they were tired. At midnight, the writer heard a strange noise and looked out of the tent, but nothing was there.] [The next morning they found the bag open

介绍"第二天发生的事"

and they decided to hang the food in the tree. The bears came again and took away the food from the tree. They realized that they should tidy up the camp. When they saw a bear, they mustn't make any sudden moves, make a sound or run because they didn't have a gun to keep themselves safe.] [On

介绍"第四天发生的事"

the fourth day, when the writer saw a baby bear in the forest, it looked so soft that he wanted to reach out for it. Just at that time, a loud noise made him stand still. It was a huge mother bear. The writer ran back as fast as he could after the baby bear and the mother bear walked away.]

表达作者思想感情

模块话题 [潍坊]

每个人的生命只有一次，你平安、健康、快乐地长大是父母最大的心愿，你保护好生命是对父母最好的报答。请你以"How to protect our lives"为题，从安全和健康的角度入手，写一篇如何珍惜和保护朋友的短文。

要求：1.100–160 词。

2. 文中不要出现本人真实信息。

3. 根据提示词至少选择三个方面来写，也可适当发挥。

提示词：traffic accident, fight, drown（溺水）, fire, electricity, food, exercise, sleep, internet, smoking, drugs, happiness…

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

How to protect our lives

审题指导（把握中心，得方向分）

1. 本文为话题类作文，吃透话题中心内容——提出自我保护的建议。

2. 注意保持行文连贯，需提出可操作性建议，切忌泛泛而谈。

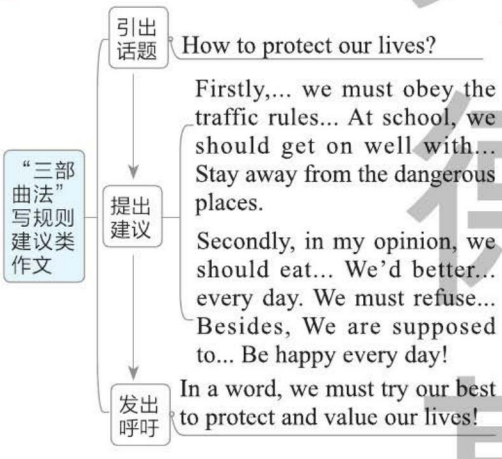
3. 尽量用一般现在时和第一人称。

写作技法（学会方法，巧得高分）

“三部曲法”写规则建议类作文

“三部曲法”就是按照“总—分—总”模式介绍：第一步总述引出话题；第二步分述提出建议；第三步总述作者呼吁。

写作模板（学会套路，得基本分）



经典词句（妙用句式，得出彩分）

单词	healthily, protect, firstly, secondly, hurt, dangerous, besides, suppose, smile, value
短语	grow up, get on well with, stay away from, in my opinion, as well as, in a word
句子	1. In return, we should treasure our lives. 2. Don't fight with them, or we'll be hurt. 3. We'd better have enough sleep and do exercise every day.

范文赏析（书写工整，得印象分）

How to protect our lives

Everyone has only one life. It is our parents' best wishes to see us grow up safely and healthily. In return, we should treasure our lives. How to protect our lives?

Firstly, now there are more and more cars, so when we walk on the road, we must obey the traffic rules, especially the traffic lights. At school, we should get on well with our classmates. Don't fight with them, or we'll be hurt. Stay away from the dangerous places.

Secondly, in my opinion, we should eat healthy food instead of junk food. We'd better have enough sleep and do exercise every day. We must refuse drugs as well as smoking. Besides, we are supposed to control the time of playing computer games. Remember, happiness is the most important thing. So smile every day! Be happy every day!

In a word, we must try our best to protect and value our lives!

名师点评：本文使用“三部曲法”介绍如何进行自我保护，结构清楚，全文共四段，首段引入话题，第二、三段提出建议，末段是作者的呼吁。文章布局合理，针对学生自我保护提出了中肯的建议。

文章内容丰富，在句子表达上用法多样，且短语丰富。连接词 *firstly*, *secondly* 的合理使用使整篇文章环环紧扣，过渡自然。用 *in my opinion* 插入自己的观点，为文章增色不少。用 *in a word* 发出呼吁，让我们懂得了珍爱生命的意义。

测试卷及听力

末题基

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅴ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础20分

(答案见240页)

一、单项选择

1. Cao Yinpeng is a 9-year-old Chinese boy. He is known _____ saving his father's life. [湘潭]

A. for B. at C. by

2. —You'd better hurry. We'll be late for the plane.

—Don't worry. The plane will _____ in two hours.

A. take out B. take away

C. take off D. take on

3. _____, Bill! It's time to go to school. [巴中]

A. Wake up

B. Look up

C.Make up

4. —Alice, would you like to go hiking with us?

—What a pity! I am free every day _____ today. [兰州]

A. for B. except

C. besides D. among

5. In order _____ for the meeting, my sister forced herself to get up early this morning.

A. not to be late B. not being late

C. to be late D. being late

二、语法专练

6. —Is that Mr. Zhou?

—It _____ be him. He has gone to Beijing. [海南]

A. may

B. can

C. can't

7. —Are you going to the cinema tonight?

—I don't know. I _____ go or I _____ stay at home. [河南]

A. will; will B. must; must

C. should; should D. might; might

8. — _____ I finish my work now?

— No, you _____. You can do it later. [齐齐哈尔]

A. May; needn't

B. Must; don't have to

C. Can; couldn't

9. —Can we walk across the road now?

—No, we _____. We have to wait until the light turns green. [荆州]

A. couldn't B. needn't

C. shouldn't D. mustn't

10. —Mom, _____ I play computer games this evening?

—Sure, but you _____ finish your homework first. [咸宁]

A. can; must B. can; mustn't

C. may; could D. may; can't

三、模块知识浓缩

根据首字母提示完成短文。

We three friends went camping in the forest. Before we s_____[11] off, our teacher told us some rules. For example, w_____[12] we went walking in the hill, we should wear proper clothes and we mustn't go off on our o_____[13]. On the first day, we went down the path. The path was f_____[14] smooth and s_____[15]. At night we fell a_____[16] soon. The next day, we found the bag of food was o_____[17]. So we decided to h_____[18] the food in a tree.At that night, we heard a s_____[19] noise. Then we saw a huge bear. We were all s_____[20] and didn't move. Luckily, the bear didn't see us and walked away.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Revision module A

课文原文、译文

Listening 听力

1 Listen to the conversations and choose the correct answer. 听对话并选择正确的答案。

Conversation A 对话 A

1. What does John think about fishing?
约翰认为钓鱼怎么样?
a) It is fun and exciting. 它有趣且令人兴奋。
b) It is a weekend hobby. 它是一个周末爱好。
c) It is not interesting. 它没趣。

2. Who caught the most fish in the fishing competition? 在捕鱼比赛中谁抓鱼最多?
a) John. 约翰。
b) John's mother. 约翰的妈妈。
c) John's father. 约翰的爸爸。

3. What did John's mother catch?
约翰的妈妈抓了什么?
a) The smallest fish. 最小的鱼。
b) The nicest fish. 最好看的鱼。
c) The biggest fish. 最大的鱼。

Conversation B 对话 B

4. What is wrong with Tony? 托尼怎么了?
a) He has got a headache. 他头痛。
b) He has got a fever. 他发烧。
c) He has got a bad cold. 他得了重感冒。

5. What did the doctor say? 医生说什么了?
a) He had a fever. 他发烧了。
b) He was all right. 他没事。
c) It was nothing serious. 没什么严重的。

6. What does Betty advise Tony to do?
贝蒂建议托尼做什么?
a) Drink lots of water. 多喝水。
b) Take some medicine. 吃些药。
c) Sleep for a day. 睡一天。

Conversation C 对话 C

7. What is the Nature Club going to do?
自然俱乐部要干什么?
a) Have a meeting. 开会。
b) Go on a trip. 去旅游。
c) Go to the museum. 去博物馆。

8. When are they going to meet?
他们打算什么时间见面?
a) At 7:10. 在 7:10。
b) At 7:30. 在 7:30。
c) At 8:10. 在 8:10。

9. What does everyone have to bring?
每个人不得不带什么?
a) Food and drink. 食物和饮料。
b) Water. 水。
c) A pair of strong shoes. 一双结实的鞋。

Conversation D 对话 D

10. Where does the conversation probably happen? 这个对话很可能发生在哪里?
a) In a shop. 在一个商店里。
b) On a plane. 在一架飞机上。
c) At a ticket office. 在一个售票处。

11. When will the woman leave for London?
那位妇女何时动身去伦敦?
a) On 4th May. 在 5 月 4 日。
b) On 5th May. 在 5 月 5 日。
c) On 6th May. 在 5 月 6 日。

12. What is her flight number? 她的航班号是什么?
a) BA727. BA727。
b) CA757. CA757。
c) CA737. CA737。

Conversation E 对话 E

13. What did Kate ask David to do?
凯特让戴维干什么?

荣德基

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

a) Go to the cinema. 去影院。

b) Go over the lessons. 复习功课。

c) Work out maths problems. 算出数学题。

14. What subject is Kate weak in?
凯特不擅长什么科目?

a) English. 英语。

b) Physics. 物理。

c) Maths. 数学。

15. What did David decide to do in the end?
最后戴维决定去干什么?

a) Watch the film with Kate. 和凯特看电影。

b) Go to bed earlier. 早点睡觉。

c) Go over his lessons. 复习他的功课。

2 Listen and complete the table.
听并完成表格。

Time when you can buy tickets at the sports centre 你可以在体育中心买票的时间	
Number of tickets you can buy online at a time 你每次能在网上购票的数量	
People who will go to the concert 要去音乐会的人们	
Day when they will go to the concert 他们要去音乐会的日子	
Time when the concert starts 音乐会开始的时间	
Time when the concert finishes 音乐会结束的时间	
Price of each ticket 每张票的价格	

Vocabulary and grammar 词汇与语法

3 Choose the correct answer. 选择正确的答案。

1. Linda enjoys playing _____ piano, while her parents are interested in listening to _____ music. 琳达喜欢弹_____钢琴，然而她的父母却对听_____音乐感兴趣。

a) /; the /; 这个（些），那个（些）

b) the; / 这个（些），那个（些）; /

c) /; / /; /

d) the; the 这个（些），那个（些）; 这个（些），那个（些）

2. —Which would you like, coffee or cola?
你想要（喝）哪个，咖啡还是可乐?
—_____, thanks. I'd like a cup of tea.
_____，谢谢。我想要（喝）一杯茶。

a) Either 两者之中任何一个

b) Both 两者都

c) Neither 两者都不

d) None 没有人；没有一个

3. Tony has read lots of stories by American writers. Now he would like to read _____ stories by writers from _____ countries.
托尼已经读了许多美国作家写的故事了。现在他想读_____来自_____国作家写的故事。

a) other; any 其他的；任何

b) some; any 一些；任何

c) other; some 其他的；一些

d) some; other 一些；其他的

4. —What do you think of the football match?
你认为这场足球比赛怎么样?
—Wonderful. Our football team has never played _____.
太棒了。我们的足球队从没打得_____。

a) better 更好 b) best 最好

c) worse 更坏 d) well 好

5. Mr Wang lives _____ that building. He lives _____ the sixth floor.
王先生住_____那座楼。他住_____六楼。

a) on; in 在……上；在……里

b) of; to……的；朝，向

c) in; on 在……里面；在……上面

d) to; at 朝，向；在……

来德基

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

6. —Shall I tell Jim about it?
关于它，我要告诉吉姆吗？
—No, you _____. I've told him already.
不，你_____。我已经告诉他了。
a) needn't 没有必要
b) wouldn't 不会
c) mustn't 绝对不能
d) shouldn't 不应该

7. —You never feel worried before an exam, do you? 考试前你从不感到担忧，是吗？
—Well, I work hard all the time. I'm _____ any exam.
嗯，我一直努力学习。我_____任何考试。
a) busy with 忙于
b) afraid of 害怕
c) ready for 准备好
d) interested in 对……感兴趣

8. You _____ walk too close to the edge when you are walking along the Great Wall.
当你沿着长城走时你_____太靠近边缘走。
a) wouldn't 不会
b) mustn't 绝对不能
c) needn't 没有必要
d) won't 不会

4 Complete the passage with the correct form of the words in the box.
用方框内单词的正确形式完成文章。

dangerous 危险的　proper 合适的　safe 安全的
seldom 很少　serious 严重的

Many people are afraid of travelling by plane, but flying is the (1) _____ way to travel. Safety is something that pilots take very (2) _____. Before each flight, technicians will carefully check that everything is working (3) _____ on the plane. Because of this, planes (4) _____ have accidents. In fact, travelling by car is (5) _____ than travelling by plane.

许多人害怕乘飞机旅行，但是乘飞机是去旅游（1）_____的方式。安全是飞行员们非常（2）_____对待的事情。在每次飞行前，技术员们将仔细地检查飞机上的一切（3）_____运行。因为这个，飞机（4）_____发生意外。事实上，乘小汽车旅行比乘飞机旅行更（5）_____。

Reading 阅读

5 Complete the passage with the sentences in the box. There is one extra sentence.
用方框中的句子完成文章。其中有一个多余的句子。

a. Nothing worked. 什么也不奏效。
b. Then I rang my parents and asked them what to do. 然后我给我的父母打电话并询问他们要做什么。
c. My classmates could come to help me if I had any problems. 如果我有任何问题，我的同班同学们会来帮我。
d. I told my classmates what happened. 我告诉我的同班同学们发生了什么。
e. Nothing could go wrong. 没有事情会出错。

My parents were away for a whole week. They were visiting my grandparents in a city almost 200 kilometres away. I was really excited at the thought of being at home alone and doing everything by myself. I can cook and use the washing machine and I told my parents I would remember to lock the door when I went out. (1) _____

我的父母外出呆了整整一周。他们在差不多200公里远的一座城市看望我的祖父母。一想到我一个人在家，自己做一切事情，我确实感到很兴奋。我会做饭，会使用洗衣机。我告诉我的父母当我外出时，我会记得锁门。（1）_____

But something did! I was watching television one night when the screen suddenly went black. When I checked, I

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

found that the lights would not work either. (2) _____ There was no electricity!

但是有件事情却发生了！一天晚上我在看电视时，这个时候显示屏突然变黑了。当我检查时，我发现电灯也不工作了。(2)_____没有电了！

It was too late at night to do anything, so I went to bed and waited till the morning. (3) _____ My mum told me to take the electricity card to the bank and buy some electricity. I did as my mum told me. When I got back home, I put the card into the meter and the electricity started working again.

那晚太晚了什么也不能干了，所以我上床睡觉，然后一直等到（第二天）早上。(3)_____我妈妈告诉我要带上电卡去银行买些电。我按照我妈妈告诉我的做了。当我回到家时，我把卡放进电表里，电又开始工作了。

Although I was a bit worried during the night, especially because there were no lights, I was happy that I could solve the problem in the end. (4) _____ They all said, "Well done!"

虽然晚上我有点担心尤其是因为没有灯光，但是我很高兴我最终解决了这个难题。(4)_____他们都说："干得好！"

6 Read the passage and choose the correct answer. 读文章并选择正确的答案。

British eating habits are different from those in China. People in the UK do not usually have rice or noodles for breakfast. They eat bread instead. Hot tea, coffee and milk are their usual breakfast drinks.

英国的饮食习惯与中国的不同。在英国，人们早餐通常不吃米饭或面条。他们吃面包。热茶、咖啡和牛奶是他们常喝的早餐饮料。

Lunch is taken later in the UK, at about 1 pm. While Chinese people like a hot, filling lunch, many British people today may just have a sandwich, especially if they work in a busy city like London. There are also differences in the way schoolchildren eat lunch. In the past, British children ate hot lunches at school, as most children in China do now, although the food was different. Today, it is more common for British schoolchildren to bring their own lunches to school. They will usually eat a sandwich and a piece of fruit, and drink fruit juice or other soft drinks. Some children like to buy food from shops outside school, but often this is not allowed.

英国的午餐会稍晚会儿吃，在下午1点钟左右。而中国人喜欢吃一顿热乎乎的、饱饱的午餐，如今许多英国人可能只吃一块三明治，尤其是如果他们工作在一座像伦敦这么繁忙的城市里。学生们吃午餐的方式也有差异。过去，英国孩子在学校吃热午餐，正如现在大部分的中国孩子一样，尽管食物不同。今天，对英国学校的孩子们来说带他们自己的午餐来学校更常见。他们将通常吃一块三明治和一块水果，喝果汁或其他软饮料。一些孩子喜欢从校外商店买食物，但是这经常是不被允许的。

The evening meal is the most important meal in both countries. In China people have dinner at about 6 pm, and so do many people in the UK. In most families in the UK there's meat with two or three vegetables and then something sweet. But in China people often have more dishes, and usually with some soup.

在这两个国家中晚餐都是最重要的一顿饭。在中国人们大约在下午6点吃晚饭，在英国很多人也是这样。英国的大多数家庭会吃肉和两、三种蔬菜，然后还有一些甜食。但在中国人们常常吃更多道菜，并且通常还有一些汤。

And of course, in both countries people look forward to their most important festivals:

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Christmas in the UK, and the Spring Festival in China. Although the food they eat then is different, there is one thing that people in the UK and China share—the happiness of being with their families and loved ones.

当然这两个国家的人们都盼望他们最重要的节日：英国的圣诞节和中国的春节。尽管那时他们吃的食物是不同的，但中国人和英国人有一件事情是共享的——和他们的家人以及钟爱的人在一起的幸福。

1. The best title for this passage is "_____".
本文最好的题目是"_____"。
a) Children's food
孩子们的食物
b) Christmas and the Spring Festival
圣诞节和春节
c) Eating habits in the UK and China
英国和中国的饮食习惯
d) People love food
人们喜爱食物

2. In the past, British schoolchildren ate _____ at school.
在过去，英国的学生们在学校吃_____。
a) sandwiches 三明治
b) breakfast 早餐
c) bread 面包
d) hot lunches 热午餐

3. A similar thing in the UK and China is that _____. 在英国和中国相似的一件事情是_____。
a) people have milk in their tea
人们在他们的茶中加牛奶
b) children have hot school lunches
孩子们吃热的学校午餐
c) the evening meal is the most important one
晚餐是最重要的一顿饭
d) people eat rice and noodles for breakfast
早餐人们吃米饭和面条

7 Read the passage and match the headings with the paragraphs.
阅读文章并将标题与段落连接起来。

a) A busy street to enjoy yourself
令你玩得开心的一条繁忙街道 ☐

b) A wonderful Shanghai at night
夜晚迷人的上海 ☐

c) East and West side by side
东方和西方相连 ☐

d) Sights from the river
河上的景色 ☐

1. Shanghai, a beautiful city during the day, becomes even more beautiful at night. At the end of the day, both the older part of the city around the Bund and the more modern part in Pudong are full of colourful lights. The buildings, both new and old, look very different and exciting.
在白天，上海是一座美丽的城市，夜晚甚至变得更加美丽。在一天结束的时候，外滩周围的老城区和更现代的浦东区都满是五光十色的灯光。新旧建筑物看起来十分不同并且令人兴奋。

2. If you look across the Huangpu River, you can see the beautiful Oriental Pearl Radio & TV Tower and the Jin Mao Tower. If you take a boat along the river, you will have a wonderful experience.
如果你向黄浦江的对面望去，你会看见美丽的东方明珠广播电视塔和金茂大厦。如果你乘船沿河走，你将会有一次令人愉快的经历。

3. If you like walking in the streets, try the famous Nanjing Road. There are busy shops and coffee bars, and you'll see thousands of people enjoying themselves. Most of the shops close at 10 pm, but at that time teahouses are still open, where you can meet old friends and make new ones.
如果你喜欢在街上漫步，试试著名的南京路。有

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

热闹的商铺和咖啡馆，你会看到成千上万的人玩得很开心。大部分商铺在下午 10 点停业，但是那时茶馆仍然在营业，在那里你可以会见老朋友和结交新朋友。

4. If you are in Shanghai for the first time, make sure you visit Xintiandi, a very popular area. You can see both Western buildings and Chinese buildings side by side. Most of the buildings are modern and there are shops, restaurants and coffee houses inside.

如果你第一次在上海，你一定要参观新天地——一个很受欢迎的地方。你会看见西方的建筑和中国的建筑紧挨着。大部分的建筑很现代，里面有商铺、饭店和咖啡屋。

8 Read the passage and complete the notes about Rosie and John.

阅读文章并完成关于罗茜和约翰的笔记。

Sometimes we feel lonely even though there are lots of people around. We spoke to some young people about being lonely to find out what we can do about it.

有时我们感到孤独，即使周围有许多人。我们和一些年轻人谈了谈关于孤独（的话题）来弄清楚关于它我们能做些什么。

Rosie left the primary school near her home to live at a high school two hours away by bus. It was the first time she had stayed away from her family. She did not know anyone at her new school, and she was very lonely. We asked her about it and she told us why she felt so lonely. "I was the only person from my village at my new school and I didn't know anyone at all." She explained to us what she did about it. "I decided to join some students' clubs and take part in as many activities as I could. I introduced myself to the other students and tried not to worry. Slowly, I made friends, and now I'm so busy that I'm almost never lonely."

罗茜离开了她家附近的小学，住在乘公共汽车两小时远的一所中学。这是她第一次远离她的家人。在她的新学校里她不认识任何人，她感到非常孤独。我们询问了她这件事，她告诉我们她为什么感到这么孤独。"我是我们村里仅有的一位来新学校的人，我根本不认识任何人。"她向我们解释关于此事她做了些什么。"我决定加入一些学生俱乐部，并尽可能多地参加活动。我将自己介绍给其他同学并尽力不去担心。慢慢地，我交了朋友，现在我是如此繁忙以至于我几乎不孤独了。"

Next, we spoke to John. Last year, his family moved to a new city and he started at a new school. He told us what he did to become part of the new school by being patient when he started to worry or feel sad. "It takes time to make new friends," he said. "At first, it's a bit difficult to trust new people, but after a while, it gets easier."

接下来，我们采访了约翰。去年，他家搬到了一座新城市，他开始在一所新学校上学。他告诉我们为了成为新学校的一部分他所做的事情，当他开始担忧或感到难过时，他靠耐心（克服）。"结交新朋友是需要花费时间的，"他说。"起初，去信任新认识的人有点难，但过不久就变得比较容易了"。

As these young people found out, there are things you can do to help yourself when you feel lonely. You can change your way of thinking, and you can also change what you do to help yourself.

正如这些年轻人所发现的，当你感到孤独时，你能做些事情来帮助你自己。你可以改变你的思考方式，你也可以改变你所做的事情来帮助你自己。

	Rosie 罗茜	John 约翰
Situations 处境：	_____	_____
Solutions 解决办法：	_____	_____

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Writing 写作

9 Read the notice.

阅读通知。

Volunteers wanted for the International Teen Games

招聘国际青少年比赛的志愿者

The International Teen Games are coming! We need some volunteers aged 12—16 to help us. Can you speak English well? Are you interested in sports? Are you good at using a computer? Come and join us!!!

国际青少年比赛即将到来了！我们需要一些年龄在 12—16 岁的志愿者来帮助我们。你英语说得好吗？你对运动感兴趣吗？你擅长用电脑吗？来加入我们吧！！！

Email your information to interteensgames@vitg.com

把你的信息发送邮件到 interteensgames@vitg.com

For more information, please call 88768876.

要获取更多信息，请致电 88768876。

Now write an email to introduce yourself. In your email, say:

现在写一封电子邮件来介绍你自己。在你的邮件里，说一说：

- how old you are
  你多大了
- what you like
  你喜欢什么
- what you are good at
  你擅长什么
- why you want to be a volunteer
  你为什么想成为一名志愿者
- what your email address and phone number are
  你的电子邮件地址及电话号码是什么

Speaking 说

10 Some foreign guests are visiting your school. As a school guide, show them around and introduce your school. Use the following questions to help you.

一些外国客人正在参观你们的学校。作为一名学校导游，带领他们四处看一下并介绍你们的学校。用下面的问题来帮助你。

1. When was your school built?
   你们学校什么时间建的?
2. When does school start and finish?
   （学校）什么时候上学，什么时候放学?
3. How many subjects do you have? What are they?
   你们有多少科目？它们是什么?
4. What kinds of after-school activities do you have?
   你们有哪些课外活动?
5. What are your school rules?
   你们学校的规章制度是什么?

11 Work in pairs. Role-play a conversation that may happen between a foreign guest and a school guide.

结对练习。分角色表演一位外国客人和一位学校导游之间可能发生的一次对话。

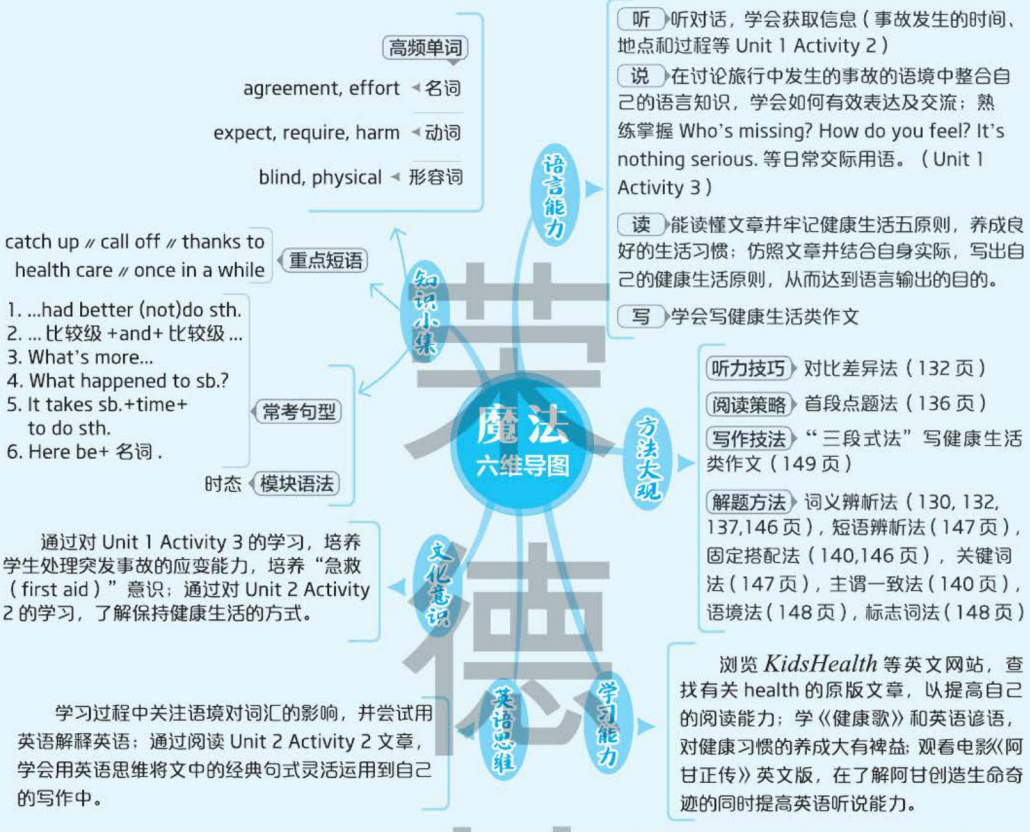
An hour in the morning is worth two in the evening.

一日之计在于晨。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Module 5 Look after yourself

词汇表听写



记忆大师

Unit 1

必背单词

1. **agreement** *n.* 协议；协定 →agree *v.* 同意
2. **blind** *adj.* 失明的；瞎的 →the blind 盲人
3. **ouch** *int.* 哎哟（用于表示突然的疼痛）

必背短语

4. wait for 等待
5. catch up 赶上
6. go back 回去，返回
7. look for 寻找
8. call off 取消，决定终止
9. have an agreement 有约定
10. fall over 摔倒
11. go blind 失明
12. call for help 呼救

必背句子

13. Who's **missing?**
    谁掉队了?
14. I **think** it's going to **rain.**
    我觉得要下雨了。
15. **How** do you **feel?**
    你觉得怎么样?

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

16. I'll **call for help** on my mobile.
我将通过手机求助。
17. It's **nothing serious**.
没什么大事。

Unit 2

必背单词

1. **expect** *v.* 预料；预计 →expect to do sth. 期望做某事
2. **require** *v.* 需要 →require sb. to do sth. 要求某人做某事 →sth. require (s) doing/to be done 某事需要被做
3. **effort** *n.* 力气，精力 →make every effort 尽一切努力
4. **harm** *v.* 损害；伤害 →harmful *adj.* 有害的 →harmless（反义词）无害的
5. **physical** *adj.* 身体的；体力的

必背短语

6. thanks to 多亏，归功于
7. health care 医疗保健
8. keep fit 保持健康
9. once in a while 偶尔，有时，间或
10. because of 因为
11. be worried about 担忧，担心
12. get off... 从……下来
13. at least 至少

必背句子

14. **It** is important **to eat** food that is fresh and natural.
吃新鲜和天然的食物很重要。
15. **Eating too much** of the wrong food will **harm** your health.
吃太多不健康的食物会损害你的健康。
16. **Say no to** smoking!
拒绝吸烟！

Unit 3

必背短语

1. be worth 值得
2. a piece of wood 一根木棍
3. take up 学着做，开始做
4. at least 至少
5. stay up 熬夜
6. die from 死于
7. look up 查阅，查找
8. put on weight 体重增加

必背句子

9. **I hope** I can **learn** even **more** at the camp!
我希望我能在夏令营中学到更多！
10. It's too difficult **to talk about** it **face to face**.
这件事很难（和您）当面讨论。
11. We will do anything we can **to help** you.
我们将尽我们所能去帮助您。

必背语法

12. I think it's **going to rain**.
我觉得要下雨了。
13. He **fell** over when he **was running** down the steps.
他跑着下台阶时摔倒了。
14. He's **hit** his head and his leg hurts. I think he's **broken** his leg.
他磕到头了，腿也受了伤。我觉得他的腿摔断了。
15. **Will I live?**
我会活下来吗？
16. Yes, you **knew I was going to** say this!
是的，你早料到我会谈这个！

Difficult circumstances serve as a textbook of life for people.
困难坎坷是人们的生活教科书。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 1 We'd better get you to hospital.

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

Listening and vocabulary 听力与词汇

1 Look at the picture and answer the questions.
看图并回答问题。

1. Do you think the person is seriously hurt?
你认为这个人伤得严重吗？
2. What do you think has happened① to him?
你认为他发生了什么事?

2 Listen and answer the questions. 听一听并回答问题。

课文听力

1. Has Tony's dad ever had an accident?
托尼的爸爸曾经发生过事故吗？
2. How long did it take for the wound to get better after Tony's dad cut his finger? 托尼的爸爸割伤手指后花了多长时间伤口才好转?
3. What parts of his body hurt after Tony's dad fell off② his bike? 托尼的爸爸从自行车上摔下来后伤到了身体的什么部位?
4. What is Tony reading about for his school trip? 为了学校的旅行托尼在读什么?

3 Listen and read. 听一听，读一读。

课文朗读

Betty: I'm tired, Mr Jackson.
我累了，杰克逊先生。

Mr Jackson: Let's wait for the others. They'll catch up③ in a few minutes④. 咱们等等其他人吧。他们几分钟后就会赶上来。

Betty: Who's missing? 谁掉队了?

Mr Jackson: Tony and Daming. They're always at the back of the group. I thought we had an agreement⑤ /əˈgriːmənt/ to stay together. 托尼和大明。他们总落在队伍的后面。我想我们已约定好行动一致。

Betty: They were walking more slowly than us. 他们走得比我们慢。

Mr Jackson: I think it's going to rain. I'll go back and look for them.
我觉得要下雨了。我要回去找找他们。

Tony: *(Moving closer)* Help! It's Daming. He's had an accident⑥. He fell over⑦ when he was running down the steps. He's hit his head and his leg hurts. I think he's broken his leg.
（走得更近了）救命！是大明。他出事了。他在沿着台阶往下跑的时候，摔倒了。他碰伤了头，并且他的腿受伤了。我想他的腿摔断了。

Mr Jackson: When did he fall?
他什么时候摔倒的?

Tony: About ten minutes ago. 大约 10 分钟前。

Mr Jackson: OK, show me where he is... There he is! Hey, Daming, how do you feel? 好吧，给我指指他在哪儿……他在那里！嘿，大明，你觉得怎么样？

Daming: My leg hurts, and I can't see very well. Will I go blind⑧ /blaɪnd/?
我的腿疼而且我不能看得很清。我会失明吗?

Mr Jackson: No, you've just hit your head. You've cut your knee too. There's blood on your leg. Can you move your foot? 不会，你只是头部受伤了。你的膝盖也磕破了。腿上流着血呢。你的脚能动吗?

Daming: Yes. Ouch/aʊtʃ/! But I can't walk.
能。哎哟！但是我不能走路了。

Mr Jackson: We'd better get you to hospital. I'll call for help on my mobile.
我们最好送你去医院。我将通过手机求助。

Daming: Is it serious? Will I live?
严重吗? 我会活下来吗?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Mr Jackson: Of course you will! It's nothing serious. Tony, tell everyone we have to call off[9] the walk and go back home.

你当然会！没什么严重的。托尼，告诉大家我们不得不取消徒步旅行并返回家中。

Everyday English 日常英语

- Who's missing? 谁掉队了?
- How do you feel? 你觉得怎么样?
- It's nothing serious. 没什么大事。

Now complete the accident report.
现在完成这个事故报告。

Accident report 事故报告

Where 地点: _____

Who 人物: _____

What happened 发生了什么: _____

How the person was hurt
受伤状况: _____

Learning to learn 学会学习

Timely revision is important in learning. When you review your lessons, try to list the key structures and expressions and more importantly, note any occasions where you had difficulty in learning.

在学习中及时复习很重要。当你复习功课时，尽可能把重要的结构和表达列举出来，更重要的是，记下任何学习中有困难的地方。

4 Answer the questions. 回答问题。

1. Why did Mr Jackson decide to go and look for Tony and Daming?
   为什么杰克逊先生决定去找托尼和大明?
2. What happened to Daming?
   大明发生了什么事?
3. When did the accident happen?
   事故是什么时候发生的?

5 Complete the passage with the words and expression in the box. 用方框中的单词和短语完成短文。

accident 事故　agreement 意见一致
blind 失明的　catch up 赶上　hurt 伤害

We had a(n) (1) _____ to stay together, but Tony and Daming were too slow. We stopped to wait for them to (2) _____. But Daming had a(n) (3) _____ and (4) _____ himself. He was afraid of going (5) _____ because he could not see very well. It was nothing serious, though. However, we had to call off the walk and go home.

我们 (1)_____ 行动一致，但是托尼和大明太慢了。我们停下来等他们 (2)_____ 。但是大明出了一场 (3)_____ 并且 (4)_____ 他自己。他害怕变 (5)_____ 因为他看不清楚。尽管没什么严重的。然而我们不得不取消了徒步旅行并回家。

Pronunciation and speaking 发音与会话

6 Listen and mark the pauses. 听录音并标出停顿。

It's Daming. He's had an accident. He fell over when he was running down the steps. He's hit his head and his leg hurts. I think he's broken his leg. 是大明。他出事故了。他在沿着台阶往下跑的时候，摔倒了。他碰伤了头，并且他的腿受伤了。我想他的腿摔断了。

Now listen again and repeat.
现在再听一遍并跟读。

7 Read aloud. Make sure you pause in the right places. 大声朗读。确定你在正确的地方停顿。

Of course you will! It's nothing serious. Tony, tell everyone we have to call off the walk and go back home.

你当然会！没什么严重的。托尼，告诉大家我们不得不取消徒步旅行并回家。

Now listen and check. 现在听一听，检查一下。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

8 Work in pairs. Talk about an accident you have had. Say: 结对练习。谈论一下你曾经发生过的一次事故。说一说：

- where it happened 它发生在哪里
  It happened on my way to school.
  它发生在我去学校的路上。
- what happened 发生了什么
  A car stopped in front of me. I fell off my bike. 一辆汽车停在了我前面。我从我的自行车上摔了下来。
- how you were hurt 你伤得如何
  I cut my face, and hurt my arms and knees.
  我划伤了脸，并且伤到了我的胳膊和膝盖。
- how long it took to get better
  花费了多长时间才好转
  It was three weeks before I could ride my bike again.
  过了三个星期我才能再骑自行车。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

·考点应用　　·考点批注

★What do you think has happened to him?

① **happen** *v.* 发生

e.g. The accident happened in America. 这起事故发生在美国。
I hope nothing happened to them. 我希望他们没出事。
I happened to meet a friend in the street yesterday.
昨天我碰巧在街上遇到了一个朋友。
It happens that we have the same birthday.
我们俩恰好是同一天生日。

happen 用法总结：
① Sth.+happened+ 时间 / 地点状语，某时 / 某地发生了某事。
② sth.+happened to sb./sth. 某人 / 某物发生某事
③ happen to do sth. 碰巧做某事
④ It happens/happened that... 碰巧……

考题在线 1 —Look in the mirror. What happened _____ your face?
—Oh, there's some ink on my face. [乐山]
A. to　　B. on　　C. in

点拨：考查介词的固定搭配。happen to sth. 为固定搭配，意为“发生在某物上”。

★What parts of his body hurt after Tony's dad fell off his bike?

② **fall off** 从……掉下来；跌落，其后可直接接宾语，相当于 **fall down from**。

e.g. Jack fell down from the bike and hurt his knee.
杰克从自行车上摔下来伤了膝盖。

与 fall 相关的常见短语：
fall over 被……绊倒，摔倒
fall down 跌倒，倒塌
fall back 撤退；退后
fall behind 落在后面
fall away 消失，消散

★They'll catch up in a few minutes.

③ **catch up** 赶上，追上

e.g. If you miss a lot of classes, it's very difficult to catch up.
如果你错过很多课，就很难赶上。
Run fast, or you can't catch up with him.
跑快点，否则你追不上他。

①catch up 为不及物动词词组，up 后面不接宾语。
②catch up with sb. 意为“追上 / 赶上某人”，其反义短语为 fall behind。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考题在线 2 Mr Jackson walked so slowly that he couldn't _____ others.

A. catch up　　B. catch up with

C. come up with　　D. get on with

点拨：用词义辨析法解题。catch up 赶上；catch up with sb. 赶上某人；come up with 想出；get on with sb. 和某人相处。根据句意“Mr Jackson 走得这么慢以至于他赶不上别人。”可知用 catch up with。

④ **in a few minutes** 几分钟后

e.g. They will arrive in a few minutes.

他们将在几分钟后到达。

She will go home in three days. 三天后她将回家。

They went home after three hours. 他们三个小时之后回家了。

“in+ 时间段”表示在一段时间之后，此结构一般多用于一般将来时中。对其提问用 how soon（多久之后）。

辨析：in 与 after

①in 常表示将来一段时间之后，一般用于将来时的句子中。

②after 常表示过去一段时间之后，一般用于过去时的句子中。

考题在线 3 — _____ will the project of the high-speed railway connecting Xuzhou to Lianyungang be completed?

— In about two years. [连云港]

A. How long　　B. How far　　C. How soon　　D. How often

点拨：考查疑问词。how long“多长”，询问时间的长短或物体的长度；how far“多远”，询问距离；how soon“多久”，对含有“in+ 时间段”进行提问；how often“多久一次”，询问频率。根据答语“In about two years.”可知询问将来时间，故用 How soon 提问。

考题在线 4 —How soon will we get the offer from a new high school?

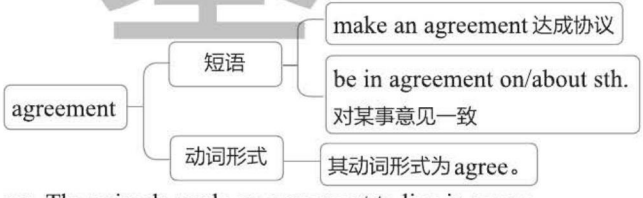
— _____ about two months. [广东]

A. In　　B. For　　C. Among　　D. During

点拨：考查介词的用法。句意：——我们需要多久才能得到一所新高中的录取通知书？——大约两个月之后吧。in+ 一段时间 表示“……之后”。

★**I thought we had an agreement to stay together.**

⑤ **agreement** /əˈgriːmənt/ *n.* (the state of sharing the same opinion or feeling) 协议；同意；意见一致



辨析：agree with, agree on 与 agree to

①agree with 表示“同意某人的意见、观点或所说的话”后接表示人的名词或代词，也可接表示意见、看法等的词。

②agree on 表示“通过协商，就……取得一致意见”，宾语通常是名词。

e.g. The animals made an agreement to live in peace.

动物们达成了和平相处的协议。

My parents agreed with my opinion. 我的父母赞同我的看法。

We agreed on the time to have a match.

我们就举办一场比赛的时间达成了一致意见。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

He agreed to buy a bike for his son.
他同意给他儿子买一辆自行车。

考题在线 5 The whole family were _____ agreement about what they should do next. [白银]

A. about B. of C. in D. on

点拨：考查介词的用法。句意：所有家庭成员就他们下一步应该做什么达成了一致协议。in agreement 意为“同意，一致”，固定搭配。

考题在线 6 She _____ let me go early.

A. agreed to B. agreed on C. agreed with D. agreed in

点拨：考查动词短语辨析。由动词 let 知应用 agree to do sth. 意为“同意做某事”。

③agree to 表示“同意或接受……”，后面常接表示计划、建议、安排、决定等的名词，含愿意协助工作的意思，还可以接动词原形，表示“同意做某事”。

He's had an accident.

⑥ **accident** /ˈæksɪdənt/ *n.* (an unpleasant event, especially one causing damage or injury) 意外；偶然的事；事故

e.g. He was killed in a traffic accident. 他在一起交通事故中丧生。
We got back without accident. 我们平安地归来了。

考题在线 7 根据句意及汉语提示写出单词。

The girl was shopping when she saw a car _____ (事故).

accident 的习惯用语：
①by accident 偶然；意外地
②without accident 顺利而安全地；安然无恙地

He fell over when he was running down the steps.

⑦ **fall over** 被……绊倒；摔倒，跌倒

e.g. If people run across the road, they may fall over.
如果人们跑过马路的话，他们可能会摔倒。

考题在线 8 昨天我被椅子绊倒了。

I _____ _____ the chair yesterday.

Will I go blind?

⑧ **blind** /blaɪnd/ *adj.* (unable to see) 失明的

e.g. The dog is blind in the right eye. 这条狗右眼失明了。
Mr Smith is blind to his son's naughtiness.
史密斯先生对他儿子的淘气视而不见。
The blind usually have good hearing.
盲人通常听力好。

blind 常用短语：
①be blind in the left/right eye/both eyes 表示“左眼/右眼/两只眼睛失明”。
②be blind to sth. 对某事视而不见
③the blind 指“盲人”，作主语时，谓语动词用复数形式。

考题在线 9 If we continue to be _____ the problem, things are sure to go from bad to worse.

A. blind to B. interested in
C. honest about D. satisfied with

点拨：句意为“如果我们继续对这个问题视而不见，事情肯定会变得更糟糕。”be blind to sth. 对某事视而不见。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

call off 是“动词+副词”短语。若名词作宾语，放在 call 和 off 的中间或 off 后面均可；若代词作宾语，应放在 call 和 off 的中间。

★**Tony, tell everyone we have to call off the walk and go back home.**

⑨ **call off 取消；决定终止**

e.g. Once the meeting is fixed, you'd better not call it off.

一旦会议确定下来，你最好不要取消。

He has to call off the trip because his car is broken in the rain.

他不得不取消旅行，因为他的车在雨中坏了。



与 call 搭配的短语：

- call for：意为“要求，需求”；“为……而呼喊”
- call on：意为“号召；拜访”，call on sb. 意为“拜访某人”
- call at：意为“拜访”，call at + 地点
- call sb. up：意为“给某人打电话”，相当于 ring sb. up 或 phone sb.

考题在线 10 The meeting was called _____ because of the heavy rain.

A. on　　B. at　　C. for　　D. off

点拨：用词义辨析法解题。call on “号召；拜访”；call at “拜访”；call for “要求”；call off “取消”。由 because of the heavy rain 可推知题干句意：会议被取消。

考题在线答案 1. A　2. B　3. C　4. A　5. C　6. A　7. accident　8. fell over　9. A　10. D

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

☞(答案见241页)

听力技巧

对比差异法（在听力中，如果涉及两个人物或事物进行比较时，我们应对所听内容进行归纳整理，提取各自的有效信息，加以对比，找出差异。）

听力过程

课文听力

听教材 Activity 2，完成以下习题

1. How many accidents did the dialogue mention?
   A. One.
   B. Two.
   C. Three.
2. How long was Tony's father lying on the ground?
   A. About 10 minutes.
   B. About 20 minutes.
   C. About one hour.
3. _____ fell off his bike once.
   A. Tony
   B. Tony's father
   C. Mr Jackson
4. Tony's father's _____ hurt for a long time after that accident.
   A. arm
   B. knee
   C. knee and shoulder

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

核心素养之文化意识

学会急救

◆急救(first aid)是在我不到医生时给予某个突然生病或受伤人员的第一手帮助(the first kind of help)。通常这种病或负伤(injury)不是特别严重，但急救有时也能拯救某个人的生命(save one's life)。任何有一定常识(common knowledge)的人都能实施急救，没有必要是医生。

◆【素养行动】邀请急救医生讲解急救知识，并进行模拟互动、实际演练，不仅让我们了解到急救方面的理论知识，而且使我们印象深刻，便于掌握。

◆【素养行动结果】“人人学急救，人人会急救”应当成为公民的自觉意识；每个人应当认识到，自己是这个社会不可或缺的组成，也承担着无以推卸的责任，要勇于付出和担当。

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见241页)

一、根据句意及汉语提示完成句子

1. There was a traffic _____ (事故) yesterday, but no one was hurt.
2. We are in _____ (同意) with their decision.
3. Lucy's grandfather is _____ (失明的). We should give him a hand.
4. I can't walk any more. I hurt my _____ (膝盖).
5. Watch out for the _____ (台阶)!

二、用方框中所给单词的适当形式填空

miss, slow, happen, knee, they

6. Mum often tells Dad to drive _____.
7. —What _____ next?
   —She got very angry and left without saying anything.
8. —What's wrong with you, young man?
   —My _____ hurt a lot, Dr Li.
9. —Oh, my keys! Where did you find _____?
   —Under the chair.
10. The poor boy has been _____ for three months. His parents are very sad.

三、单项选择

11. The two cities have reached an _____ to develop science and technology.
    A. education B. excitement
    C. agreement D. invention
12. —How soon will the class meeting begin?
    —_____ two minutes.
    A. For B. At C. In D. After
13. If you miss lots of lessons, it's difficult to _____ others.
    A. catch B. catch up
    C. catch with D. catch up with
14. Many flights were _____ because of the bad weather. 【导学号：7764826】
    A. taken off B. fallen off
    C. turned off D. called off
15. —_____?
    —My left leg hurt and I couldn't move.
    A. What did you happen
    B. What did you take place
    C. What happened to you
    D. What took place

四、根据汉语意思完成句子

16. 还有时间追上他们。
    There's still time to _____ _____ _____ them.
17. 我和莉莉达成了一致意见要互相帮助。
    Lily and I _____ _____ _____ to help each other.
18. 人们呼吁和平，但战争仍在继续。
    People_____ _____ peace, but the war is still on.
19. 他跑下台阶时摔倒了。
    He _____ _____ when he was _____ _____ the steps.
20. 那个小男孩从墙上掉了下来，腿流血了。
    The little boy _____ _____the wall and there was _____ _____ his leg.

荣德基

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 2 Get off the sofa!

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文及导读

导读批注

原文译文 · 导读

Reading and vocabulary 阅读与词汇

Pre-reading（读前）

QS: 1. Do you think it's good for your health to sit on the sofa and watch TV all day?
2. What can we do to keep fit?

1 **Look at the pictures on the right and on the next page. What do the pictures tell you?** 看右边及下页的图片。图片告诉你什么?

批 体裁：说明文

2 **Read the passage and match the rules with the pictures.** 读文章并将规则与图片相匹配。

课文朗读

While-reading（读中）

批 文章结构：总－分

- 概述长寿现象的整体情况（Paragraph 1）
- 提出解决办法并解释原因（Rule 1–Rule 5）

QS: 1. What should people eat to keep healthy?
2. What should we do when we are worried about something?

Five rules for a healthy life 健康生活五规则

Thanks to ① better health care, most people are living healthier and longer lives. Someone who is born today can expect ② /ɪk'spekt/ to live about thirty-five years longer than someone who was born in the nineteenth century. It is even thought that ③ in the future more and more ④ people will celebrate their hundredth birthdays. Here are five rules for a healthy life. 幸亏有了更好的医疗保健，大多数人生活得更健康、更长寿。现在出生的人有望比 19 世纪出生的人多活约 35 年。人们甚至认为将来会有越来越多的人将庆祝他们的百岁生日。这儿是健康生活的五条规则。

❶ **Get off the sofa!** 从沙发下来!

Sure, it is comfortable to sit on the sofa and watch TV. But doctors say you should get off the sofa. To keep fit ⑤, you have to walk at least 10,000 steps every day. In the past, people's jobs required ⑥ /rɪ'kwaɪəd/ more physical/'fɪzɪkl/ effort ⑦ /'efət/. They often had to walk for miles every day. When farmers were working in the fields, they were keeping fit at the same time. Think about it: Do you get the same amount of exercise today as they did in the past? 的确，坐在沙发上看电视是很舒服的。但医生们说你应该从沙发下来。你每天得走至少 10000 步以保持身体健康。过去，人们的工作需要消耗更多的体力。他们每天经常不得不走数英里的路。当农民们在地里劳动的同时他们也保持了身体健康。想一想：你现在进行锻炼的运动量和他们过去进行锻炼的运动量一样吗?

❷ **Eat healthy food!** 吃健康的食物!

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

It is important to eat food that is fresh and natural, for example, fruit and vegetables. Fast food is not healthy. You should only have it once in a while ⑧. Eating too much of the wrong food will harm ⑨ /hɑːm/ your health. 吃新鲜和天然的食物很重要，例如，水果和蔬菜。快餐是不健康的。你应该偶尔吃一次就行。吃太多不健康的食物会损害你的健康。

❸ **Rest while you can!** 尽可能休息！

When we were babies, we slept for much of the night. Teenagers do not need as much sleep as babies, but it is important for you to get about eight hours' sleep a night. At weekends, you have got more time, so use it not just for your friends, but ⑩ for rest too. 婴儿时期，我们晚上的很多时间是在睡觉。青少年不需要婴儿那么多的睡眠，但是一晚上保证大约 8 小时左右的睡眠对你来说很重要。在周末，你会有更多的时间，因此，不要仅仅把它用在你朋友身上，也要用在休息上。

批 说明方法：（左边画～处）列数字、举例子。这些说明方法有助于增加文章的客观性，以小见大，通过现象透本质。

❹ **Do not worry. Be happy!** 不要发愁。保持快乐！

Many people believe that happiness is important for our general health. Sometimes it is not easy to be a teenager because of the difficulties of school, exams or friendships. If you are worried about something, talk to your parents or your teacher. 很多人相信快乐对于我们的整体健康来说很重要。由于学业，考试或友情方面的困难，有时候作为一名青少年是不容易的。如果你担心什么的话，就跟你的父母或老师谈一谈。

❺ **Say no to ⑪ smoking!** 拒绝吸烟！

Yes, you knew I was going to say this! It is so important. Smoking is not cool. It is dangerous. It harms nearly every part of your body. Think about how your family and friends will feel, and think about what it will do to your health. 是的，你知道我要提到这一点！它如此重要。吸烟并不酷。它很危险。吸烟几乎对你身体的每个部位都有害。想想你的家人和朋友的感受，并且想想它会对你的健康带来的影响。

批 句子欣赏：本文设有 5 个段落标题，均为祈使句表建议。它们也是各段的主题句，体现了作者的写作意图，具有提纲挈领的作用。

Post-reading（读后）

写作小练笔 ☞（答案见149 页）

3 Answer the questions. 回答问题。

1. What are the five rules for a healthy life according to the writer?
   根据作者的观点，健康生活的五条准则是什么？
2. Are people today getting the same amount of exercise as they did in the past? Why?
   现在人们进行锻炼的运动量与他们过去进行锻炼的运动量一样多吗？为什么？
3. Why is it sometimes difficult to be a teenager? 为什么有时候当一名青少年是困难的？
4. Who do you think the passage is written for? 你认为这篇文章是为谁写的？

4 Complete the passage with the words in the box. 用方框内的单词完成文章。

effort 努力　expect 预料　harm 伤害　health 健康　sofa 沙发

Exercise is very important. If you make a(n) (1) _____ to do exercise for thirty minutes a day, you can (2) _____ to be in good (3) _____. However, if you are always sitting on the (4) _____ and do no exercise at all, you will put on ⑫ weight and (5) _____ your health. 锻炼是很

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

重要的。如果你做出 (1)_____一天锻炼 30 分钟，你就会 (2)_____处于好的 (3)_____。然而，如果你总是坐在 (4)_____ 上，一点儿也不锻炼，你将会增重，并 (5)_____你的健康。

Writing 写作

5 **Read the passage in Activity 2 again. Think of one more example of what you should or should not do for each rule. Doctors say you should exercise for at least half an hour each day.** 再一次阅读活动 2 中的文章。再想一个在每条规则下你应该或不应该做什么的例子。医生们说你应该每天至少锻炼半小时。

6 **Think of more rules and examples of your own.** 想一下你自己的更多的规则和例子。

7 **Write a passage called My rules for a healthy life. Include the rules and examples you have written in Activities 5 and 6.** 以《我的健康生活规则》为题写一篇文章，包括你在活动 5 和 6 中写的规则和例子。

课文背诵指南



Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练 专攻中考阅读 60分

(答案见241页)

阅读策略

首段点题法（阅读时注意文章的结构安排。在总—分结构的文章中，第一段是中心段，而且各段的主旨通常很明确。）

阅读过程

拓展阅读

一、速读文章，选择正确答案

1. Find out the topic sentence of the passage. （主旨大意题）

_____

二、细读文章，完成下列题目

2. In the future more and more people will celebrate their _____ birthdays. （细节理解题）
   A. 70th　　B. 80th
   C. 90th　　D. 100th

3. You should walk _____ steps every day if you want to keep fit. （细节理解题）
   A. 1,000　　B. at least 1,000
   C. 10,000　　D. at least 10,000

4. If you are worried about something, talk to your _____. （细节理解题）
   A. deskmate
   B. friends
   C. parents or your teacher
   D. grandparents

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

•考点应用 •考点批注

★**Thanks to better health care, most people are living healthier and longer lives.**

thanks to 意为“多亏；归功于”，是介词短语，后面常跟名词、代词或动名词，在句中作状语，常位于句首，有时可与 with the help of 短语互换。

① **thanks to 幸亏；由于；多亏**

【易错点】辨析：thanks for 与 thanks to

thanks for	表示“因……而感谢”，后接感谢原因；常跟名词或动名词（短语）。
thanks to	强调感谢的对象，后跟名词或代词。

e.g. Thanks for helping me with English.
谢谢帮助我学习英语。
Thanks to the doctor, the girl was saved at last.
多亏了那位医生，女孩最终得救了。

考题在线1 _____ the No. 48 bus driver, all the passengers were saved. The driver managed to stop the bus before he died.
A. Thanks to B. According to C. As for
点拨：考查短语辨析。thanks to 意为“多亏”；according to 意为“根据，依照”；as for 意为“至于”。由句意可知A项符合语境。

考题在线2 谢谢借给我一把雨伞。
_____ _____ _____ me an umbrella.

★**Someone who is born today can expect to live about thirty-five years longer than someone who was born in the nineteenth century.**

② **expect** /ɪkˈspekt/ *v.* (to think or believe that sth. will happen or that sb. will do sth.) 预料，预计

敲黑板 请大家记住：expect 后可接动词不定式或 that 从句，可千万不能接 v-ing 形式作宾语！

e.g. I didn't expect to meet you here.
我没料到会在这里碰到你。
I am expecting a letter from my family.
我正期待着一封家书。
We expect you to help us.
我们期待你来帮助我们。

expect 作动词，还可意为“期待；期望”。其常见用法有：
- expect sth. from sb. 期待从某人处得到某物
- expect sb. to do sth. 期待某人做某事

考题在线3 —Waiter, there's a fly（苍蝇）swimming in my soup.
—So what do you _____ me to do, to call a lifeguard（救生员）?
[东营]
A. warn B. expect
C. invite D. encourage
点拨：用词义辨析法解题。warn 警告；expect 期望；invite 邀请；encourage 鼓励。由“给救生员打电话”，可知服务员要表达“你期望我做什么”。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★It is even thought that in the future more and more people will celebrate their hundredth birthdays.

③ **It is thought that...** 人们认为……

e.g. It is thought that there are thousands of different languages in the world. 人们认为世界上有成千上万种不同的语言。

考题在线 4 People think that everyone should form good habits when they are still young.（同义句改写）

_____ _____ _____ that everyone should form good habits when they are still young.

④ **more and more** 越来越多

e.g. The patient is getting better and better. 这位病人恢复得越来越好了。

Our city is becoming more and more beautiful.

我们的城市正变得越来越美丽。

考题在线 5 Our country is getting _____. We are proud of it. [齐齐哈尔]

A. more and more strong

B. strong and strong

C. stronger and stronger

点拨:考查形容词比较级。句意：我们的国家正在变得越来越强大。我们为它骄傲。比较级 +and+ 比较级，意为“越来越……”。strong 的比较级是 stronger。

★To keep fit, you have to walk at least 10,000 steps every day.

⑤ **to keep fit** 为了保持健康

e.g. To get good grades, we must work hard.

为了取得好成绩，我们必须努力学习。

The yellow coat fits me well.

这件黄色上衣很适合我。

考题在线 6 —What should I do, doctor?

— _____ healthy, you should take more exercise. [达州]

A. Keep B. Keeping C. To keep

点拨:考查非谓语动词。答句句意：为了保持健康，你应该多做运动。此处为动词不定式表目的。

考题在线 7 _____ Chinese culture, many college students go to foreign countries every year. [长春]

A. Spreading B. To spread C. Spreads D. Spread

点拨:考查非谓语动词。句意：许多大学生每年都去外国是为了传播中国文化。由句意判断，此处考查动词不定式作目的状语的用法。

It is thought that... 相当于 People think that...。

类似的句型：

① It is said that... 据说……；

② It is believed that... 人们相信……；

③ It is reported that... 据报道……；

④ It is known that... 众所周知……

“比较级 +and+ 比较级”意为“越来越……”，表示程度的增加。如果形容词和副词的比较级是在其前加 more 构成的，表达“越来越……”时应用“more and more+ 形容词 / 副词原级”结构。

to keep fit 位于句首作目的状语，句中 fit 用作形容词，意为“健康的”，其同义词为 healthy。keep fit 的同义短语是 stay fit 或 keep healthy。

vt. 适合，合适

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★**In the past, people's jobs required more physical effort.**

⑥ **require** /rɪˈkwaɪə/ *v.* (to need sth.;to depend on sb./sth.) 需要；要求

e.g. The suggestion requires careful thought.
这条建议需要仔细考虑。

They required us to keep quiet.
他们要求我们保持安静。

The work required finishing in a month.
=The work required to be finished in a month.
这项工作需要在一个月内完成。

My boss required that I speak at the meeting.
老板要求我在会议上发言。

require 用法总结：
① require sb. to do sth. 要求某人做某事
② require doing(=require to be done) 需要被做
③ require+that 从句(从句的谓语用"should+动词原形"，其中 should 可省略)需要……

考题在线 8 用所给词的适当形式填空

He _____ (require) to hand in his science report last week. [青岛]

⑦ **effort** /ˈefət/ *n.* (the physical or mental energy that you need to do sth.;sth. that takes a lot of energy) 努力

e.g. You can't succeed without effort.
不努力你就不会成功。

It's a waste of time and effort.
那是浪费时间和精力。

Everyone should make every effort to reduce pollution.
每个人都应该尽一切努力来减少污染。

effort 意为"气力；精力"，表泛指意义。make every effort to do sth. 意为"尽一切努力做某事"。

考题在线 9 The local clubs are making every _____ (努力) to attract more young people.

★**You should only have it once in a while.**

⑧ **once in a while** 偶尔；有时；间或

e.g. You may play computer games once in a while.
你可以偶尔玩电脑游戏。

once in a while 的同义短语为 at times, from time to time, 并且和 sometimes 意思也相近。

考题在线 10 这只狗有时也会溜出去，但通常呆在院子里。

_____ _____ _____ _____ the dog would run away, but usually it stayed in the yard.

★**Eating too much of the wrong food will harm your health.**

⑨ **harm** /hɑːm/ *v.* (to hurt or injure sb. or to damage sth.) 伤害；损害

e.g. We should never harm anyone.
我们决不应该伤害任何人。

Bad habits will do you harm.
坏习惯对你无益。

Smoking is very harmful to us.
吸烟对我们危害很大。

harm 还可以用作名词，构成短语 do harm to sb.，表示"伤害某人"，与 do sb. harm 同义。harmful 是 harm 的形容词形式，意为"有害的"，常构成短语 be harmful to，表示"对……有害"。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

harmless 也是 harm 的形容词形式，意为“无害的”。

考题在线 11 The trials（实验）show that smoking will _____ people.

A. be harm to　　B. do harmful to

C. do harm to　　D. do harm with

点拨：用固定搭配法解题。do harm to sb. 为固定搭配，意为“伤害某人”。

考题在线 12 根据句意用所给单词的适当形式填空

Greenhouse gases are _____ to the environment. (harm)　[盐城]

★At weekends, you have got more time, so use it not just for your friends, but for rest too.



傻公主般宠爱自己
傻汉子般努力工作

⑩ **not just...but (also)... 不仅……而且……**

e.g. Yao Ming is not just tall, but good at playing basketball.

姚明不仅个子高，而且擅长打篮球。

Not just I but my sister enjoys singing.

不仅我，而且我的姐姐也喜欢唱歌。

敲黑板 not just...but (also) 用来连接两个主语时，谓语动词遵循“就近原则”。

考题在线 13 Not only children but also my husband _____ crazy about the movie *Operation Red Sea*(《红海行动》). [泰州]

A. is　　B. are　　C. am　　D. be

点拨：用主谓一致法解题。考查主谓一致。表示“狂热于”，应用 be crazy about；not only… but also… 连接并列主语谓语应遵循“就近原则”，该题 my husband 是三单形式。

★Say no to smoking!

say no to 中的 to 为介词，其后可跟名词、动名词等，其同义词为 refuse。

⑪ **say no to... 拒绝……**

e.g. We should say no to swimming in the river. 我们应该拒绝在河里游泳。

考题在线 14 孩子们应该拒绝吃垃圾食品。

Children should_____ _____ _____ _____ junk food.

★However, if you are always sitting on the (4) ___ and do no exercise at all, you will put on weight and (5) ___ your health.

put on 还可意为“穿上，戴上”强调动作，宾语可为衣服、鞋帽等名词。还可意为“上演（戏剧）”

⑫ **put on 意为“增加（体重）”，是及物动词短语。**

e.g. Many girls don't want to put on weight and eat less to lose weight.

很多女孩不想长胖并且靠少吃来减肥。

Put on your coat. =Put your coat on. 穿上你的大衣。

They are going to put on *Hamlet*. 他们将上演《哈姆雷特》。

考题在线 15 I really need to take more exercise because I'm _____ weight.

A. putting down　B. putting on　C.putting off　D. putting away

考题在线答案 1.A 2.Thanks for lending 3.B 4.It is thought 5.C 6.C 7.B 8.was required 9.effort 10.Once in a while 11.C 12.harmful 13.A 14.say no to eating 15.B

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见241页)

一、用所给单词的适当形式填空

1. Jack was _____ (worry) about the maths exam.

2. Your hair is too long. It requires _____ (cut).

3. Smoking is _____ (harm). [兰州]

4. It is necessary for teenagers to get about eight _____ (hour) sleep a night.

5. _____ (keep) fit, you have to do more exercise every day.

二、根据句意、首字母或汉语提示写出单词

6. Smoking _____ (损害) your health. You should give up smoking.

7. We should make every _____ (努力) to protect the environment.

8. If you want to keep f_____, you need to take some exercise every day.

9. Good health r_____ enough exercise and a balanced diet.

10. He is in good _____ (身体的) condition because he runs every morning.

三、单项选择

11. _____ the scientists' hard work, Tiangong II was launched (发射) successfully. [东营]

A. As for B. Thanks to

C. Instead of D. According to

12. —Hi, Mr Zhang, do you often come here to climb the mountain?

—Yes, _____ exercise. You see, I'm healthier than before.

A. to get B. getting

C. get D. gets

13. —Oh, my God. I _____ 2 kg this month.

—Don't worry. It's normal for a growing teenage girl. [襄阳]

A. put up B. put off

C. put on D. put down

14. —Have you read this book?

—Yes, I _____ it two weeks ago. [新疆]

A. is reading B. have read

C. will read D. read

15. Leonardo DiCaprio, a famous American actor, was always expecting _____ an Oscar and finally he made it. [广东]

A. to win B. winning

C. not to win D. not winning

四、根据汉语意思完成句子

16. 她不仅仅是我们的老师也是我们的朋友。

She is _____ _____our teacher, _____ our friend.

17. 请拒绝吸烟与吸毒。

Please _____ _____ _____ _____ and taking drugs.

18. 中国正在努力为孩子们提供更好的教育。

China is_____ _____ _____ to offer children better education.

19. 多亏了你的帮助，否则我不会完成这项工作。

_____ _____ your help, or I can't finish the work.

20. 快餐并不健康，我们只能偶尔吃一次。

Fast food is not healthy. We can only have it _____ _____ _____ _____.

A young idler, an old beggar.

少壮不努力，老大徒伤悲。



苹果基德

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 3 Language in use

I. 课文原文、译文

Language practice 语言练习

I think it's going to rain. 我觉得要下雨了。
He fell over when he was running down the steps. 他在沿着台阶往下跑的时候，摔倒了。
He's hit his head and his leg hurts. I think he's broken his leg. 他碰伤了头，并且他的腿受伤了。我想他的腿摔断了。
Who's missing? 谁掉队了?
Will I live? 我会活下来吗?

1 Complete the conversation with the correct form of the words and expression in brackets.
用括号内单词和短语的正确形式完成对话。

Lingling: Are you (1) _____ (plan)to join a summer camp, Daming? My friend (2) _____ (go) to one of those last year. He said he (3) _____ (get up) at 6 am every day!
大明，你（1）_____（计划）参加夏令营吗? 去年我的朋友（2）_____（去）那些中的一个。他说他每天早上 6 点（3）_____（起床）!

Daming: Yes, I'm not very happy about getting up early, but I (4) _____ (love) sports and often (5) _____ (do) exercise, so it'll be worth[1] it.
是呀，我不太乐意早起，但是我（4）_____（喜欢）运动并经常（5）_____（做）锻炼，所以这件事是值得的。

Lingling: There's a lot of football. You'll like that.
有很多足球运动。你会喜欢的。

Daming: Yes, I've (6) _____ (play) football for many years. I (7) _____ (have) good football skills, but I hope I can learn even more at the camp! 是的，我（6）_____（踢）足球许多年了。我（7）_____（有）好的足球技能，但是我希望我能在夏令营中学到更多!

2 Complete the passage with the correct form of the words in brackets.
用括号内单词的正确形式完成文章。

A woman (1) _____ (come) home to find her husband in the kitchen. He (2) _____ (shake) wildly from side to side.Then the woman (3) _____ (notice) that he (4) _____ (stand) with one hand on the cooker! Naturally she thought her husband (5) _____ (touch) the electricity. To pull him away from the cooker, she (6) _____ (hit)[2] his arm with a piece of wood."What did you do that for?" he cried in pain. "I was (7) _____ (make) some tea, and (8) _____ (dance) to rock music on my MP3 player!" 一个女人（1）_____（来）家发现她丈夫在厨房里。他剧烈地（2）_____（摇动），从一边到另一边。然后这位妇女（3）_____（注意到）他（4）_____（站着）用一只手扶着炊具! 很自然地，她认为丈夫（5）_____（触摸）了电。为了将他与炊具分开，她用一根木棍（6）_____（打）他的胳膊。"你那是做什么?" 他疼得大叫。"我在（7）_____（沏）点茶，并且跟着我的 MP3 播放机中的摇滚乐（8）_____（跳舞）!"

3 Work in pairs and describe the pictures. Use the words in the box to help you. 结对练习并用方框中的单词来帮助你们描述图片。

blood 血　cut 切　fever 发烧　finger 手指
hurt 伤害，疼痛　knee 膝盖　stomach 胃
wound 伤，伤口

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

4 Complete the conversation with the correct form of the words in the box. 用方框中的单词的正确形式完成对话。

bad 坏的	exercise 锻炼	health 健康
smoke 吸烟	step 台阶，一步	

A: What's that you're wearing around your stomach? 你肚子上围的是什么?

B: It's a new piece of technology that records how many (1)_____ you walk each day. 它是一件新科技产品，它记录你每天走多少（1）_____。

A: Why do you want to know? 你为什么想知道（这些）?

B: Because to keep fit, you need to walk at least 10,000 steps a day! It's important, both for a (2) _____ heart and for you to feel good. 因为要保持健康，你需要一天至少走10000步！这对拥有一个（2）_____心脏以及使你感觉良好都很重要。

A: You're taking a sudden interest in ③ exercise! 你突然对锻炼感兴趣了!

B: Yes. For the past couple of months, I have put on a lot of weight. I should spend some time (3)_____. 是的，在过去的几个月里，我体重增加了很多。我应该花些时间（3）_____。

A: But at least you've never taken up ④ (4)_____. 但是至少你从未开始（4）_____。

B: Yes, I'm really glad about that! Smoking is the (5)_____ thing you can do for your health. 是的，对此我真的很高兴！吸烟是你能做的对你的健康（5）_____事情。

5 Complete the sentences with the expressions in the box. 用方框中的短语完成句子。

at least 至少	in the future 将来	keep fit 保持健康
once in a while 偶尔	thanks to 由于；多亏	

1. The website introduces some good ways to _____.
   这个网站介绍了一些_____的好方法。
2. It takes me _____one hour to walk 10,000 steps. 步行10000步花费我_____一小时。
3. My grandfather is having a happy life _____ many years of healthy food and exercise. _____许多年的健康饮食和锻炼，我爷爷现在正过着幸福的生活。
4. I'm sure we'll have even better health care _____.
   我确信_____我们会有更好的医疗保健。
5. Staying up late _____ is all right, as long as you usually get about eight hours' sleep a night. _____熬夜是可以的，只要你通常每晚能有大约8小时的睡眠。

6 Listen and answer the questions. 听录音，并回答问题。

课文听力

1. Where does the conversation take place? 这个对话发生在哪里?
2. Who is talking? 谁在谈话?
3. What is the problem? 问题是什么?

7 Listen again and complete the notes. 再听一遍录音，完成记录。

Patient 病人：Mr Maxwell 马克斯韦尔先生

Problem 问题：

He started smoking _____ years ago.
_____年前他开始吸烟。

Has he tried to stop smoking before? 以前他试图戒过烟吗?

Yes/ No 是的 / 没有

General health 总的身体状况：Fit/Not fit 健康 / 不健康

Has a(n)_____and often gets_____.
有一个_____并且经常得到_____。

Advice 建议：_____

8 Read the email and match the ideas with the paragraphs. 读电子邮件并将大意与段落搭配起来。

a) Kate asks her father to stop smoking. 凯特让父亲戒烟。 □

b) Kate tells her father why smoking is also bad for non-smokers. 凯特告诉父亲为什么吸烟对不吸烟的人也有害。 □

禁德堂

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

c) Kate explains why she is writing the email.
凯特解释她为什么写这封电子邮件。 □

d) Kate tells her father why smoking is bad for him. 凯特告诉父亲为什么吸烟对他有害。 □

FROM: Kate 来自: 凯特

TO: Dad 写给: 爸爸

SUBJECT: Please stop smoking

主题: 请戒烟

课文朗读

1. Dear Dad, 亲爱的爸爸:

I'm writing this email because I want to ask you to stop smoking, and it's too difficult to talk about it face to face. I've looked up ⑤ a lot of information about smoking and I've found out about its dangers. 我正在写这封电子邮件，因为我想让您戒烟，并且这件事很难（和您）当面讨论。我查阅了大量的有关吸烟的信息，并且弄清了有关它的危害。

2. You already know that smoking is bad for you. I've found out that it causes many illnesses. Did you know that thousands of people die from ⑥ smoking every year in Britain? I don't want you to be one of them. 您已经明白吸烟对您有害。我发现它会导致许多疾病。您知道在英国每年有成千上万人死于吸烟吗？我不想让您成为他们中的一员。

3. When Mum asks you to smoke outside, you think she's just being difficult. Well, I don't think she is. Not many people like the smell of smoke in their house or on their clothes, and Mum doesn't like it either. What's more, doctors have found that more and more people who don't smoke are falling ill. It's caused by secondary smoking, which could make Mum and me ill too. 当妈妈让您到外面吸烟时，您认为她只是在找麻烦。唔，我认为她不是。许多人不喜欢在他们屋里和衣服上闻到烟的味道，妈妈也不喜欢。而且，医生们已经发现越来越多的不吸烟的人开始生病。它是由二手烟造成的，二手烟也能让我和妈妈生病。

4. I know that it is very difficult to stop smoking, but you must try. Please see the doctor and ask him for help. We will do anything we can to help you. Please don't smoke! 我知道戒烟很难，但您必须尝试。请您去看医生并向他求助。我们将尽我们所能去帮助您。请不要吸烟了！

Your loving daughter, 爱您的女儿，

Kate 凯特

9 Choose the correct answer. 选择正确答案。

1. Kate is writing to her father because _____.
凯特正在给她父亲写信，因为_____。

a) he has stopped smoking 他已经戒烟了

b) she misses her father
她想念她的父亲

c) she wants him to stop smoking
她想让他戒烟

d) her mum asked her to
她的妈妈让她这样做的

2. Kate has found out that smoking _____.
凯特已经发现吸烟_____。

a) is not so bad 没那么坏

b) causes many illnesses 引起很多疾病

c) makes people think slowly
让人们思维迟钝

d) outside is dangerous 在外面是危险的

3. Kate's mother does not like _____.
凯特的妈妈不喜欢_____。

a) smoking outside 在外面吸烟

b) the smell of Kate 凯特的气味

c) the smell in the house 房间里的味道

d) the smell of smoke in the house
房间里的烟味

4. Kate is afraid that _____.凯特担心_____。

a) she and her mother will fall ill
她和妈妈会生病

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

b) her clothes will smell of smoke 她的衣服会有烟味

c) she will start to smoke 她会开始吸烟

d) she cannot help her father 她帮不了她的爸爸

Around the world 世界各地

Laughter for health 为了健康而笑

There is an old saying,"Laughter is the best medicine." Now people are using laughter to improve their health in countries all around the world. In some countries special centres for treating illnesses with laughter were set up and became popular. In 2003, a study in Austria showed that laughing helped patients get better faster. It made them relax, and this improved their general health. 俗话说："笑是最好的药。"现在世界各国的人们正在用笑来改善健康。在一些国家，用笑来治病的特设中心机构已建立，并且很受欢迎。2003 年，奥地利的一项研究表明，笑帮助病人恢复得更快。笑使他们放松，并改善了他们总体的健康状况。

Laughing helps us feel happier. And it gives the body exercise too. Doctors say five minutes of laughing is as good for you as fifteen minutes in the gym! 笑让我们感觉更快乐。并且它也能给身体以锻炼。医生们说大笑 5 分钟与你在体育馆里锻炼 15 分钟对你的好处是一样的！

Module task: Giving health advice to people 模块任务：给人们提健康建议

10 **Work in groups. Give advice for the following problems.** 小组练习。就下列问题给出建议。

- I've just moved to a new area. I'm unhappy because I don't know anyone. It's making me feel sad. 我刚搬到了一个新地方。我不开心，因为我不认识任何人。这让我感到伤心。
- I can't get my friend to give up smoking. 我不能让我的朋友戒烟。
- I have difficulty sleeping. I worry so much about my schoolwork. 我很难入睡，我非常担心我的功课。

11 **Have a class discussion about the problems.** 全班讨论一下这些问题。

12 **Write some advice for each problem.** 就每一个问题写出一些建议。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用 •考点批注

★**...so it'll be worth it.**

① **be worth** 值得

be worth doing 意为"值得做"，当表达"很值得做"时，需用 be well worth doing

e.g. This idea is worth considering. 这个想法值得考虑。

The film is well worth seeing. 这部电影非常值得一看。

考题在线 1 Tan Dun's music *Water*, which is full of the sounds of nature, is _____ listening to.（值得） [盐城]

Live and learn. 活到老，学到老。

★**To pull him away from the cooker, she (6)____(hit) his arm with a piece of wood.**

② **hit** /hɪt/ *v.* (to bring your hand, or an object you are holding, against sb./sth. quickly and with force) 打；击

e.g. He hit the ball with the bat. 他用球拍打球。

hit sb. on the nose 打某人的鼻子

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

"hit sb.+in/on+the+身体部位"意为"打某人的某个身体部位"。打在较软的部位，用介词in；打在较硬的部位则用介词on。且身体部位前用定冠词the，不用形容词性物主代词。

hit sb. in the face 打某人的脸

hit sb. in the eye 打某人的眼睛

考题在线2 John hit Gina _____.

A. in the nose　　B. on the nose

C. in her nose　　D. on her nose

点拨：用固定搭配法解答。"hit sb. in/on +the+ 身体部位"意为"打某人的某部位"且鼻子是身体较硬的部位，故用介词on。

★You're taking a sudden interest in exercise!

③ take an interest in 对……感兴趣

★表示"对……感兴趣"的短语还有：
be interested in,
get interest in,
show an interest in,
become interested in

e.g. My son started to take an interest in playing the piano at the age of two. 我的儿子两岁时开始对弹钢琴感兴趣。

Babies show an interest in the world around them.

婴儿对周围的世界感兴趣。

考题在线3 *National Treasure* quickly rose to the top television rating ranks after it was presented on CCTV. It means a growing _____ in traditional culture among China's youth. [连云港]

A.interest　　B. direction　　C. habit　　D. dream

点拨：用词义辨析法解题。句意：《国家宝藏》在中央电视台播放后，快速地升至电视排行榜榜首。这意味着中国的年轻人对传统文化兴趣的增长。interest"兴趣"；direction"方向"；habit"习惯"；dream"梦想"。

★But at least you've never taken up (4) ____.

take up 含义：
①开始从事
②继续（他人未完成的事）；接着讲（从前提过的事）
③占用（时间）
④占据（空间）

④ take up 学着做；开始做

e.g. Tom will take up his duties next week. 汤姆下周就要开始履行职责。

I'd like to take up the point you raised earlier.

我想继续谈一谈你早些时候提出的观点。

The table takes up too much room. 这张桌子太占地方。

考题在线4 My grandmother is going to _____ a hobby like shopping on the Internet. [岳阳]

A. take up　　B. look up　　C. get up

点拨：考查动词短语词义的辨析。句意为：我的奶奶将要开始培养一种爱好，像网上购物。take up从事、开始（学习或某种爱好）；look up查阅、向上看；get up起床。

★I've looked up a lot of information about smoking and I've found out about its dangers.

⑤ look up 查阅

敲黑板 大家要记住：look up为"动词+副词"结构，宾语如果为人称代词，要放在look和up之间。

e.g. You can look up this word in the dictionary.

你可以在词典里查这个词。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

考题在线 5 — What's the meaning of "The Belt and Road"?

— Let me _____ the words in the new dictionary. [眉山]

A. look at B. look for C. look after D. look up

点拨：用短语辨析法解题。look at"看"; look for"寻找"; look after"照看"; look up"查阅"。由上句"What's the meaning of...?"及 in the new dictionary 可推知句意为"让我在新词典查查这些单词"。



★**Did you know that thousands of people die from smoking every year in Britain?**

辨析：die from 与 die of

⑥ **die from** 死于

① die from 强调死于外因，如受伤、灾害、事故等。

② die of 强调死于内因，如疾病、饥饿、悲伤等。

e.g. In the past, many people died from lacking food.
在过去，很多人由于缺乏食物而死。

The soldier died from a wound. 这位士兵因一个伤口而死。

His father died of hunger in 1942. 他父亲在 1942 年死于饥饿。

考题在线 6 —Do you know that Mr Zhang passed _____ last week?

—Yes. He died _____ illness.

A. away; of B. on; from C. by; with D. off; as

点拨：用关键词法解答。pass away"去世"，根据第二个空后的 illness 可知他是死于疾病，属于内因，故用 die of。



考题在线答案 1.worth 2. B 3.A 4.A 5.D 6.A

Ⅲ. 单元语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

时态

本模块中，我们要一起复习初中阶段所学过的六种基本时态：

初中六种时态齐亮相
- 一般现在时
- 一般过去时
- 现在进行时
- 过去进行时
- 一般将来时
- 现在完成时

现将这六种时态的用法详细归纳：

考点 1 一般现在时

含义及用法：1. 表示经常性、习惯性的动作或经常存在的状态；2. 表述客观真理、客观存在及自然现象；3. 用于时间和条件状语从句中，代替一般将来时；4. 表示按时间表拟定的、安排好的事情或将要发生的动作。

构成：主语 + 情态动词 /be 动词 /do（主语为第三人称单数时，谓语动词也要变为相应的第三人称单数形式）

标志词（组）：always,usually,on Sundays, often,sometimes, at times, every day/month 等

e.g. I usually go to school by bike.
我通常骑自行车去上学。

I'll call you when he comes.
当他来的时候我会给你打电话的。

考题在线 1 When we _____ building the Subway Line 3, it will be easier to travel around the city. [哈尔滨]

A. finish B. finished C. will finish

点拨：考查动词时态。此句为含有时间状语从句的主从复合句，主句为将来时，从句应用一般现在时表将来。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

考点2 一般过去时

含义：1. 表示过去某段时间发生的动作或存在的状态；2. 表示过去经常性或习惯性发生的动作或存在的状态。

构成：主语 +did/was/were+...

时间状语：yesterday (morning/afternoon/evening),the day before yesterday,just now,last+ 名词 , 名词 +ago，in 1990 等

e.g. Where did you go just now?

你刚才去哪儿了?

考题在线2 —Wendy, how long have you had the Huawei P30 Pro?

—A couple of days. I _____ it last week. [南京]

A. bought　　B. buy

C. will buy　　D. have bought

点拨：考查动词时态。由时间状语 last week 可判断用一般过去时。

考点3 现在进行时

含义：表示目前或现阶段正在进行的动作。

构成：主语 +am/is/are+doing sth.

标志词（组）：look, listen, now, at the moment, at present 等。

e.g. The children are sleeping now.

孩子们现在正在睡觉。

考题在线3 —Hurry up!

—One moment. I _____ my e-mails and then I'm ready to go. [江西]

A. read　　B. am reading

C. was reading　　D. have read

点拨：用语境法解题。由"One moment."及"then I'm ready to go"可判断"我"正在看电子邮件，应用现在进行时。

考点4 过去进行时



含义及用法：1. 表示过去某个时刻或某个阶段正在进行的动作；2. 用于两个存在并列或对比关系的分句中，强调动作的同时性。

构成：主语 +was/were doing sth.

标志词（组）：at+ 几点钟 + last night,at that moment,at that time,while 等

e.g. They were doing their homework at that time. 那时他们正在做他们的作业。

I was reading while she was watching TV. 我在阅读，而她在看电视。

考题在线4 Students in Grade Nine _____ a maths exam at this time yesterday. [宿迁]

A. take　　B. are taking

C. were taking　　D. have taken

点拨：用标志词法解题。at this time yesterday（昨天的这个时候）为过去进行时态的标志词组，表示在过去某个时间正发生某事。其结构为：was/were + 现在分词。

考点5 一般将来时

含义及用法：1. 表示将来某个时间要发生的动作或存在的状态；2.be going to 表示计划或打算要做 ,will 表示客观上将要发生；3. 表示位置移动的动词 , 如：go,come,leave,fly,arrive 等 , 常用现在进行时表示即将发生的动作。

构成：主语 +will/be going to+do sth.

标志词（组）：tomorrow, the day after tomorrow, in 2025, in+ 一段时间 , next+ 名词 ,in the future,some day 等

e.g. There's going to be a sports meeting next week in our school.

下周我们学校将要举办一场运动会。

They will have a swimming lesson this afternoon.

今天下午他们会有一节游泳课。

Tom is leaving for Beijing tomorrow.

明天汤姆要去北京。

考题在线5 Next week, each student in the class _____ a small gift from their teachers. [重庆]

A. receives　　B. received

C. will receive　　D. has received

荣德基

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

考点6 【高频】现在完成时

含义：1. 表示过去发生或已经完成的动作对现在造成的影响或结果；2. 表示从过去某时刻开始延续至今的动作或状态，只能用某些延续性动词。

构成：主语 +have/has done sth.

标志词（组）：already,yet,ever,never,so far,in the last/past few years,since,for+ 一段时间等

e.g. The old man has lived here for twenty years. 这位老人已经在这里住了二十年了。

They have studied in the school since 2012. 自从 2012 年以来他们就在这所学校学习。

小贴士：学习现在完成时，谓语结构要牢记—"have/has+ 过去分词"，主要用法是影响或结果。过去动作或状态一直延续到现在，for 或 since 把时间带。

考题在线6 — Look! Somebody ____ the lights.

— Well, it wasn't me. I didn't do it.

A. turns off

B. is turning off

C. was turning off

D. has turned off

点拨：考查动词时态。句意：——看！有人把灯关了。——哦，不是我。我没做。由"我没做"可推知：此处强调已经发生的动作，且对现在造成了影响，故用现在完成时。

考题在线答案 1.A 2.A 3.B 4.C 5.C 6.D

Ⅳ. 写作一课一法 夺取中考写作 20分

写作小练笔

Rules for a healthy life

Sure ! It's comfortable to sit on the sofa and watch TV !But doctors say you should get off the sofa . To keep fit , you have to walk at least 10,000 steps every day . 建议"远离沙发"

It's important to eat food that is fresh and natural. Fast food is not healthy .You should only have it once in a while. 提倡"健康饮食"

Rest while you can! It's important for you to get about eight hours' sleep a night. 提倡"尽量多休息"

Do not worry. Be happy! If you are worried about something, talk to your parents or your teacher. 建议"保持快乐"

Say no to smoking! It is dangerous. It harms nearly every part of your body. 建议"拒绝吸烟"

模块话题

现在，中学生在校内能保证一定时间的运动量，但在校外普遍缺少运动甚至不运动。请就此现象写一篇短文，谈谈你的看法。

内容包括：

1. 缺少运动甚至不运动的原因；
2. 缺少运动甚至不运动对学生的影响；
3. 针对这种现象提出合理的改善建议。

要求：

1. 词数：80—100（开头已给出，不计入总词数）；
2. 文中不得出现真实的校名和人名。

参考词汇：be short of 缺少

审题指导（把握中心，得方向分）

1人称：该文主要采用第三人称。

2时态：本文为议论文，通常用一般现在时。

写作技法（学会方法，巧得高分）

"三段式法"写健康生活类作文

本文可分三段来写。首先，通过话题背景介绍指出缺少运动甚至不运动的原因；然后，说明缺少运动甚至不运动对学生的影响并提出自己的建议；最后，总结全文，深化主题。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

写作模板（学会套路，得基本分）

“三段式法”写健康生活类作文

第一段：介绍原因 → Many students are short of exercise... On the one hand, ... On the other hand, ...So...

↓

第二段：影响及建议 → Less exercise is harmful to students... They are ... They need to ... Even though they..., they still need to...

→ I think they had better exercise in their daily life. First, ... After all, ... Second, they can...

↓

第三步：总结 → All in all, students need to do exercise... The more exercise they do, the better it is for them.

经典词句（妙用句式，得出彩分）

单词	exercise, spare, probably,less, grow, daily, sport
短语	be short of, too much, such as, be harmful to, even though, be busy with, be bad for, all in all
句子	1. I think they had better exercise in their daily life. 2. Swimming is a very good sport and it doesn't need too much time. 3. The more exercise they do, the better it is for them.

范文赏析（书写工整，得印象分）

Many students are short of exercise in their spare time now. On the one hand, they have to do too much homework after school. On the other hand, they probably have so many after-school classes such as playing the piano. So there is no time for them to do exercise.

Less exercise is harmful to students. They are growing quickly, and more exercise can keep them healthy. Even though they are too busy with their schoolwork, they still need to play sports to make their bodies strong. I think they had better exercise in their daily life. First, they can take a walk after dinner on weekdays. Second, they can go swimming on weekends. Swimming is a very good sport and it doesn't need too much time.

All in all, students need to do exercise in their spare time. The more exercise they do, the better it is for them.

名师点评：本文用“三段式法”写健康生活类作文，结构严谨，层次分明，要点全面，论证有力，个人观点正确、合理。首段介绍原因，用 on the one hand, on the other hand 进行分析，条理分明；第二段指出影响并提出合理化建议。首句即为主题句，用 be harmful to 结构直击要点，然后用“I think...”句式提出自己的建议，使用了一些衔接上下文和表示逻辑关系的词汇，如：first, second 等；最后一段总结全文，深化主题，做到了首尾呼应。

测试卷及听力

V. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20 分

（答案见 241 页）

一、单项选择

1. The novel is great. It's well worth _____. [衡阳]

A. read　　B.reads　　C. reading

2. The sofa is so large that it _____ half of the room area. [潍坊]

A. takes up　　B. picks up

C. turns up　　D. puts up

3. In big cities, many old people _____ the polluted air.

A. die in　　B. die of

C. die from　　D. die with

4. The boy hit me _____ just now.

A. in my head　　B. in the head

C. on my head　　D. on the head

5. My brother took an interest _____ the piano.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

A. in playing　　B. in play
C. on playing　　D. on play

二、语法专练

6. —Linda has _____ to Paris. How can I get in touch with her?
—Don't worry. She will call you as soon as she _____ there. [眉山]
A. been; will get　　B. been; gets
C. gone; will get　　D. gone; gets

7. —Your new watch is so nice! When did you buy it?
—In October. I _____ it for two months. [眉山]
A. had　　B. bought
C. have had　　D. have bought

8. They _____ on the sofa when the telephone _____. [绥化]
A. sit; rang
B. were sitting; rang
C. sat; was ringing

9. —My car _____ yesterday. Could you please give me a ride tomorrow?
—I'm sorry I can't. I'm _____ Dalian tomorrow morning. [大庆]
A. breaks down; flying at
B. has broken down; flying at
C. broke down; flying to
D. had broken down; flying to

10. As an exchange student, Alan _____ Qiqihar for one and a half year. [齐齐哈尔]
A. has been to
B. has been in
C. has gone to

11. It's 9:00 in the morning now. The students from Grade Nine _____ an important exam. [吉林]
A. have　　B. had　　C. are having

12. —Where did you go last winter vacation?
—I _____ to London with my family. [昆明]
A. go　　B. have gone
C. went　　D. was going

13. John _____ so hard on his project that he didn't notice his mom enter the room. [温州]
A. works　　B. has worked
C. was working　　D. will work

14. —I still don't know what _____ while I was away from home.
—You'll know it all some day, I believe. [武汉]
A. had happened　　B. would happen
C. has happened　　D. happened

15. —Slow down! Someone _____ the road.
—Easy. I will. [永州]
A. has crossed
B. was crossing
C. is crossing

三、模块知识浓缩

根据首字母提示完成短文

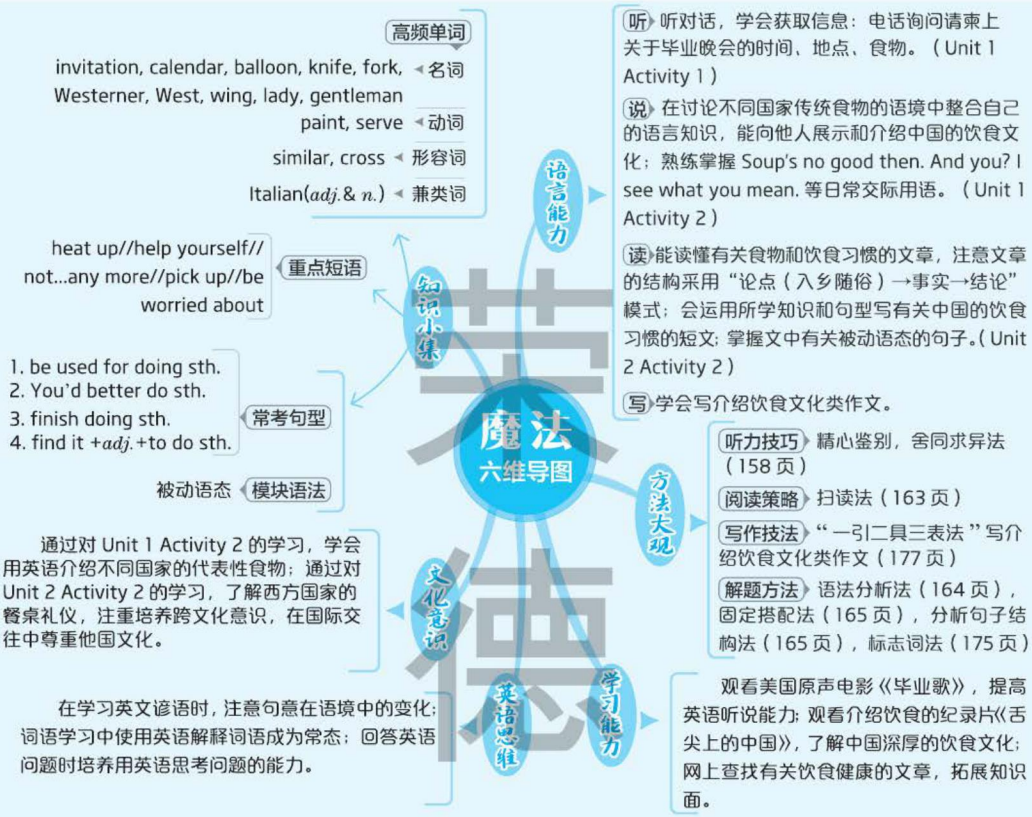
T_____[16] to better health c_____[17], most people are living healthier lives. Here are five rules for a healthy life. First, get off the s_____[18].To keep f_____[19], you have to walk at least 10,000 s_____[20] every day. Second, it is important to eat healthy food. Eating too much junk food will h_____[21] people's health. It can make us put on w_____[22].People should only have it once in a w_____[23].Third, at weekends ,you have got more time, so use it not j_____[24] for your friends but for rest. Fourth, happiness is important for us to keep healthy. At last, we should s_____[25] no to smoking.

来德基

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Module 6 Eating together

词汇表听写



记忆大师

Unit 1

必背单词

1. **invitation** *n.* 邀请；请柬 →invite *v.* 邀请
2. **paint** *v.* 绘画 →painting（现在分词）
3. **heat** *v.* 使变热；给……加热 →heat *n.* 高温，温度
4. **knife** *n.* 餐刀；刀具 →knives *pl.*
5. **Italian** *adj.* 意大利的；意大利语的；意大利人的；*n.* 意大利语；意大利人 →Italy *n.* 意大利
6. **calendar** *n.* 日历；历书
7. **balloon** *n.* 气球
8. **fork** *n.* 餐叉
9. **spoon** *n.* 匙；勺子
10. **cheeseburger** *n.* 干酪汉堡包

必背短语

11. in fact 事实上
12. heat up 使变热；给……加热
13. be made with 由……制成
14. invite sb. to do sth. 邀请某人做某事

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

必背句子

15. Oh, soup's **no good** then.
噢，那么汤就不适合了。

16. **I see** what you **mean.**
我明白你的意思。

17. It's **becoming popular** in China too!
在中国它也正变得流行起来！

Unit 2

必背单词

1. **Westerner** *n.* 西方人 →Western *adj.* 西方的 → West *n.* 西方（尤指西欧和北美）
2. **serve** *v.* 端上（食物和饮料）；服侍……进餐 → served（过去式）
3. **similar** *adj.* 相似的 →be similar to 和……相似
4. **lady** *n.* 女士；夫人；小姐 →ladies *pl.*
5. **gentleman** *n.* 先生；男士 →gentlemen *pl.*
6. **cross** *adj.* 生气的 →angry（同义词） *adj.* 生气的
7. **wing** *n.* 翅膀；翼

必背短语

8. know about 了解
9. at the start of 在……的开始
10. be used for 被用于……
11. help yourself 随便做（或用）吧；请自便
12. for example 例如
13. no one 没有人
14. at the end of 在……的末尾

必背句子

15. **When** in Rome, do **as** the Romans do.
入乡随俗。

16. The fork **is held** in your **left** hand and the knife in your right.
左手拿叉，右手拿餐刀。

17. **Watch the other** people. Do as they do.
观察其他人，照他们那样做。

Unit 3

必背短语

1. **pick up** 捡起；拿起
2. **put on** 穿上
3. **be worried about** 担心
4. **join in** 加入

必背句子

5. **Don't worry** that you won't enjoy food **without seeing it.**
不用担心看不到食物你就不能享受食物。

6. **Here's** some **advice.**
这儿有些建议。

7. Email me **if** you have **any other questions.**
如果你有任何其他问题，给我发电子邮件。

必背语法

8. I **was chosen** to play the dance music.
我被选去（负责）播放舞曲。

9. Lunch **is** usually **eaten** at about 1 pm.
午饭通常要到下午 1 点左右才吃。

10. Knives and forks **are used** for most Western food.
大多数西餐都用刀叉。

11. You will be served by someone who asks, "Would you like some...?"
有人将服侍你进餐，他会问："你想要一些……吗？"

来德基

He is truly wise who gains wisdom from another's mishap.
善于从别人的挫折中得到教益的人，才是真正的聪明人。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 1 When is the school-leavers' party?

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

Listening and vocabulary 听力与词汇

1 Listen and complete the invitation. 听录音完成邀请函。

课文听力

Invitation ① /ˌɪnvɪˈteɪʃn/ 邀请函

You are invited to the _____on Saturday, 30th May at _____in _____. Bring a traditional dish (_____). Come and enjoy the food, music and dancing. 您受邀参加5月30日星期六_____在_____举行的_____。带一道传统菜肴（_____）。来享受食物、音乐和舞蹈吧。

Now work in pairs and check. 现在结对练习并检查。

课文朗读

2 Listen and read. 听一听，读一读。

Lingling: When is the school-leavers' party?
毕业生联欢会什么时候举行?

Betty: Look at the school calendar /ˈkælɪndə/ ! It'll be held on the 30th of May.We're all invited. 看看学校日历！它将于5月30日举行。我们都被邀请了。

Daming: In fact ②, I was chosen ③ to play the dance music. 其实，我被选去播放舞曲。

Tony: And I was asked to bring some balloons /bəˈluːnz/ and paint /peɪnt/ some pictures for the party.
我被要求带一些气球，并为联欢会画一些画。

Betty: The teachers have asked everyone to prepare ④ a traditional dish ⑤ from their home country.
老师们要求每人准备一道自己国家的传统菜肴。

Lingling: Can we cook it at school?
我们可以在学校做吗?

Betty: We can heat /hiːt/ it up ⑥ in the school kitchen, but it should be cooked at home. What are you going to make? 我们可以在学校厨房加热，但应该在家里做好。你打算做什么?

Lingling: Hot and sour soup. It's made with ⑦ chicken and vegetables.
酸辣汤。它是用鸡肉和蔬菜做成的。

Betty: But the invitation says finger food! That means you eat it with your fingers, not with a knife /naɪf/, fork/fɔːk/ or spoon /spuːn/. 但是请帖上说是手抓食物！那就是说要用手拿着吃，而不是用刀、叉和勺子。

Lingling: Oh, soup's no good ⑧ then. What about you? 噢，那么汤就不适合了。你呢?

Betty: Cheeseburgers /ˈtʃiːzˌbɜːgəz/. Cheeseburgers are made with hamburgers and cheese. 干酪汉堡包。干酪汉堡包是用汉堡包和奶酪做成的。

Tony: And you, Daming? 你呢，大明?

Daming: *Jiaozi*! My grandmother makes the best *jiaozi*! 饺子！我奶奶包的饺子是最好的！

Betty: Is she invited to the school-leavers' party too? 她也受邀参加毕业生联欢会了吗?

Daming: Hmm, I see what you mean. What about you, Tony?
哦，我明白你的意思。你呢，托尼?

Tony: A traditional English pizza with cheese, tomato and ham. 一个传统的英国比萨饼，带有奶酪、西红柿和火腿。

Betty: Pizza isn't English! It's Italian ⑨ /ɪˈtæljən/! 比萨饼不是英国的！它是意大利的！

Tony: But it's eaten everywhere in England. 但是在英国到处都是吃比萨饼的。

Daming: It's becoming popular in China too! 在中国它也正变得流行起来！

Everyday English 日常英语

- Soup's no good then. 那么汤就不适合了。
- And you? 你呢?
- I see what you mean. 我明白你的意思。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Now complete the notes. 现在完成记录。

	Dish 食物	Made with... 用……制成
Lingling 玲玲	_____	_____
Betty 贝蒂	_____	_____
Daming 大明	_____	Not mentioned in the passage 文章中没有提到
Tony 托尼	_____	_____

3 Answer the questions. 回答问题。

1. What was Daming chosen to do at the school-leavers' party? 大明在毕业生联欢会上被选去做什么?
2. Where are they going to prepare the food? 他们打算在哪里准备食物?
3. Why does Tony call pizza a traditional English dish? 为什么托尼说比萨饼是英国的一种传统食物?

4 Complete the passage with the words in the box. 用方框中的单词完成短文。

balloons 气球　calendar 日历　fork 餐叉　knife 餐刀　paint 绘画　spoon 勺子

The day for the school-leavers' party is an important date in the school (1)_____.Tony is going to bring some (2)_____ and (3)_____ some pictures for the party. Everyone is going to bring a traditional dish that can be eaten with their fingers. Soup is no good because it is not finger food and people need a (4)_____ for it. Anything that needs a (5)_____ and (6)_____ is not finger food either. 在学校的 (1) _____ 里毕业生联欢会那天是一个重要的日子。托尼打算带一些 (2) _____ 并且为联欢会 (3) _____ 一些画。每个人都会带一道可以用手抓着吃的传统菜肴。汤不适合，因为它不是手抓食物，人们需要用 (4) _____ 来喝。任何需要 (5) _____ 和 (6)_____ 的食物也不是手抓食物。

Pronunciation and speaking 发音与会话

5 Read and mark the pauses. 读一读，标出停顿的地方。

Lingling: Can we cook it at school? 我们可以在学校烹饪它吗?

Betty: We can heat it up in the school kitchen, but it should be cooked at home. What are you going to make? 我们可以在学校的厨房里加热，但应该在家里做好。你打算做什么?

Learning to learn 学会学习

You can use English to communicate with people from all over the world—take your chance to learn something about how they live and what they eat. Learning about other cultures is not only interesting, it will also help you understand the world better. 你可以和来自世界各地的人使用英语交流——利用这个机会来了解他们如何生活和吃什么。了解其他文化不仅有趣，而且它还可以帮助你更好地了解这个世界。

Now listen and check. 现在听一听，并检查一下。

6 Work in pairs. Read the conversation in Activity 5 aloud. 结对练习。大声读出活动 5 中的对话。

7 Work in pairs. Make plans for a party. Think about: 结对练习。为一个联欢会制订计划。想一想：

- food and drink 食物与饮料
- music and dancing 音乐与舞蹈

8 Work with another pair. Talk about your party plans. 与另一组练习。谈论你们的联欢会计划。

—What's your plan for the party? 你这次联欢会的计划是什么?

—Everyone will be asked to bring something to eat... 人人都会被要求带一些吃的东西……

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

•考点批注 •考点应用

★Invitation

① **invitation** /ˌɪnvɪˈteɪʃn/ *n.* (a spoken or written request to sb., inviting them to do sth. or to go somewhere) **邀请；请柬**

★invitation 的动词形式为 invite，意为“邀请”，常见搭配：
① invite sb. +地点 邀请某人去某地
② invite sb. to do sth. 邀请某人做某事
③ be invited to do sth. 被邀请做某事

e.g. He's going to Beijing at the invitation of Mr Zhang.
他将应张先生之邀前往北京。

Jane received an invitation to a party just now.
刚才简收到了一个聚会邀请函。

invitation 为可数名词，常与介词 to 连用。

I often invite my friends to my home.
我经常邀请我的朋友们到我家。

He invited Mary to have dinner together.
他邀请玛丽共进晚餐。

We are all invited to the concert.
我们都被邀请去听音乐会。

考题在线 1 Thanks for your kind _____ (邀请).

考题在线 2 Last week Professor Li was _____ (邀请) to make a speech on traditional Chinese festivals. [连云港]

点拨:invite sb. to do sth. 邀请某人做某事，其被动结构为：sb. be invited to do sth.。

★In fact, I was chosen to play the dance music.

② **in fact** 事实上

in fact 是固定搭配，用以强调，尤其指与之前提及的内容对比，相当于 as a matter of fact。

e.g. My mother often buys some beef for me. In fact, I don't like beef.
我的妈妈经常给我买些牛肉。事实上，我不喜欢牛肉。

I thought the work would be difficult. In fact, it's very easy.
我原以为这工作会很难，其实它很简单。

考题在线 3 根据汉语提示完成句子。

_____ (事实上), I really like *Animal World*.

★choose 的常用搭配：
① choose sb. to do sth. 选择某人做某事
② choose sb./sth. as sth. 选择某人/某物作为……
③ choose sb./sth. for sth. 为……选择某人/某物

③ **choose** /tʃuːz/ *v.* (to decide which thing or person you want out of the ones that are available) **选择**

敲黑板 请大家一定要记住 choose 的过去式、过去分词是 chose，chosen，以及其名词形式 choice。

e.g. I choose to be your friend.
我选择做你的朋友。

考题在线 4 It will be a good _____ (choose) to take the high-speed train to Yancheng from Suqian next year. [宿迁]

点拨:choose 的名词形式为 choice。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★The teachers have asked everyone to prepare a traditional dish from their home country.

④ **prepare**/prɪ'peə / *v.* （to make yourself ready to do sth. or for sth. that you expect to happen ）有准备；防范；准备；使某人在思想（或心理）上有准备

e.g. Our English teacher was preparing the lessons when I came into the office. 当我走进办公室时，我们的英语老师正在备课。

考题在线 5 根据句意和音标提示以适当形式填写单词。

Have you _____ /prɪ'peəd/ for your interview? [威海]

⑤ **dish** *n.* 菜肴； 一道菜

e.g. This is a nice dish. I like it very much.

这是一道可口的菜，我很喜欢它。

You have to do the dishes before you go.

你走之前，得把餐具洗了。

dish 作可数名词，可意为“菜肴，一道菜”还可意为，碟，盘，the dishes 意为“（待清洗的）餐具”。

★prepare 的用法：

① prepare sth. for sb. 为某人准备某物

② prepare (oneself) for sth.（某人）为某事做准备

③ be prepared for (doing) sth.=be ready to do sth. 准备好做某事

④ prepare to do sth. 准备做某事

★We can heat it up in the school kitchen, but it should be cooked at home.

敲黑板 heat up 为“动词＋副词”型短语，相当于 warm up，代词应放在中间。

⑥ **heat up** 使变热；给……加热

e.g. Just heat up the food in the microwave.

把食物放在微波炉里热热就行了。

动词＋up 短语：stay up 熬夜；wake up 醒来；叫醒；turn up 调大（声音等）；clean up 打扫；give up 放弃；pick up 捡起

★It's made with chicken and vegetables.

⑦ **be made with** 用……做成的，由……制成的

be made 常见搭配：

- be made of 由……制成（能够看出原材料）
- be made from 由……制成（看不出原材料）
- be made up of 由……组成（后接组成的部分）
- be made
  - be made by 由……制造（后接动作的执行者）
  - be made in 产于……（后接地点名词）
  - be made into 被制成……（后接成品）

e.g. The hamburger is made with cabbage and beef.

这个汉堡包是用卷心菜和牛肉制作而成的。

The paper is made from wood. 这些纸是由木头制成的。



考题在线 6 Your gloves should be made _____ leather, for they feel soft and smooth. [宿迁]

A. in　　B. on　　C. for　　D. of

点拨：考查介词的用法。be made of 由……制成，后接制作的材料，leather 为制作的原材料。

★Oh, soup's no good then.

⑧ **no good** 没有用；没有好处；不合适

e.g. Eating too much candy is no good. It's bad for your teeth.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

no good 用法小结：
① no good doing sth.
做某事没用
② no good for sth.
不适合某物/某事
③ no good to sb.
对某人没好处

吃太多的糖果没有好处。它对你的牙齿有害。

These glasses are no good for soup. 这些玻璃杯不适合用来喝汤。

This kind of food is no good to old people. 这种食物不益于老年人。

It's no good complaining. 抱怨是没有用的。

I'll talk to him, but it will do no good. 我会和他谈的，但不会有用。

考题在线 7 It is no good _____ him to see you off. He won't come.

A. to expect　　B. expecting

C. of expecting　　D. for expecting

★It's Italian!

⑨ **Italian**/ɪˈtæljən/ *adj.* 意大利的；意大利语的；意大利人的 *n.* 意大利语；意大利人

e.g. My favourite Italian football team is AC Milan.

我最喜欢的意大利足球队是 AC 米兰。

Failure is the mother of success.
失败乃成功之母。

Country	People	Language
China(中国)	Chinese	Chinese
USA/America(美国)	American	English
Australia(澳大利亚)	Australian	English
Canada(加拿大)	Canadian	English/French
France(法国)	Frenchman	French
Japan(日本)	Japanese	Japanese
Germany(德国)	German	German

考题在线 8 —I'm told your class has 3 newcomers.

—Yes. One is a _____, and the other two are _____.

A. Japan; Germany　　B. Japanese; German

C. Japanese; Germans　　D. Japanese; Germen

点拨：考查名词的用法。Japanese 作“日本人”讲时单复数同形，German 作“德国人”讲时其复数形式为 Germans。

考题在线答案 1. invitation　2. invited　3. In fact　4. choice　5. prepared　6. D　7. B　8. C

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20 分

☞(答案见241页)

听力技巧

精心鉴别，舍同求异法（听录音前先认真审题，比较试题所给的备选项，通过精心鉴别、舍同求异、排除干扰，抓住备选项之间差异的关键信息。）

听力过程

课文听力

听教材 **Activity 1**，完成以下习题

1. How many people are talking in the dialogue?

A. Two.　　B. Three.　　C. Four.

2. Betty wants to speak to _____.

A. Mr Jackson　　B. Mrs Jackson

C. her mother

3. The school-leavers' party will be held on _____.

A. Friday　　B. Saturday　　C. Sunday

4. Everyone must bring _____ food.

A. soup　　B. finger　　C. fried

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见241页)

一、根据句意及汉语提示完成句子

1. My grandfather enjoys collecting different _____ (日历).

2. —What is your brother doing right now?
—He is playing with _____ (气球) with his friends.

3. When she is free, _____ (绘画) becomes her favourite.

4. Little John wants his mother to buy a new _____ (餐叉) for him.

5. Zhao Li can speak _____ (意大利语) quite well.

二、用括号中所给词的适当形式填空

6. "I can't miss this chance!" she said, waving the _____ (invite).

7. What is Mr Smith ready to use these _____ (knife) to do?

8. Our English teacher asked us _____ (finish) the English composition before class.

9. My new friend Jane will come to my home and my mother wants to cook some _____ (tradition) food for her.

10. —Your report should _____ (complete) this afternoon, Jack.
—OK, I see.

三、单项选择

11. This table is made _____ wood and the wine is made _____ grapes.
A. of; from B. of; of
C. from; from D. from; of

12. Thanks a lot for your _____. But I'm afraid I will not be available then.
A. invitation me B. invite me
C. ask me D. invitation

13. —These hamburgers are getting cold.
—Let's _____. 【导学号：7764826】
A. heat up it B. heat it up
C. heat up them D. heat them up

14. It's no good _____ problems with a man like him.
A. to discuss B. being discussed
C. discussing D. to be discussed

15. Mr Green _____ to sing an English song at the party and he sang well. [安徽]
A. was invited B. invited
C. is invited D. invites

四、根据汉语及关键词汇提示翻译句子

16. 事实上，他非常满意。(in fact)
_____
_____

17. 我们不需要加热这道菜。(heat up)
_____
_____

18. 这种食物是用鸡蛋和黄油制作的吗?
(be made with)
_____
_____

19. 你愿意在晚会上帮我弹奏舞曲吗?
(play the dance music)
_____
_____

20. 为孩子做太多事是没有用的。(no good)
_____
_____

A friend in need is a friend indeed.
患难朋友才是真朋友。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 2 Knives and forks are used for most Western food.

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文及导读

导读批注

原文译文 · 导读

Reading and vocabulary 阅读和词汇

Pre-reading（读前）

Qs:1. Have you ever eaten Western food?

2. Is it delicious?

3. What are the differences between the Chinese food and the Western food?

批 标题：由"Do as the Romans do"可知作者的写作意图是要我们"入乡随俗"，同时该题目也吸引读者读下去，去探知其中的窍门。

批 体裁：说明文

批 文章结构：总-分-总

Part 1（Introduction Para. 1）
When in Rome, do as the Romans do.
Part 2（Details Para.2-Para.7）
1.Mealtimes
2.Things to do at the start of the meal
3. Ways of eating
4.Being served and refusing food
5. Express your enjoyment
6. At the end of the meal
Part 3（Conclusion Para.8）
Watch the other people. Do as they do.

1 Look at the photo of a Western meal. Talk about the differences between a Western meal and a Chinese meal. 看这幅西餐的照片。讨论西餐与中餐的区别。

People use a knife and fork at a Western meal. 人们用刀和叉吃西餐。

2 Read the passage and answer the questions. 阅读文章，回答问题。

While-reading（读中）

Qs:1. Who is the passage written for? 这篇文章是写给谁的?

2. Where might you see a passage like this? 你会在哪儿看到类似文章?

Do as ① the Romans do 入乡随俗

课文朗读

❶ We often say, "When in Rome, do as the Romans do." So when you eat Western food, do as Westerners ② /ˈwestənəz/ do. Here are some things that you may need to know about eating together in the West /west/ .

我们经常说："入乡随俗。"所以你吃西餐时，就要像西方人那样用餐。这里是关于西方聚餐的一些知识，或许你需要了解。

❷ In some Western countries, lunch is usually eaten at about 1 pm. Dinner is served ③ /sɜːvd/ around ④ 7 pm or even ⑤ later. In Spain it is usual to have lunch at 3 pm and dinner at 10 pm!

在一些西方国家，午餐通常在下午 1 点左右吃。晚餐在下午 7 点左右甚至更晚才吃。在西班牙，在下午 3 点吃午餐，晚上 10 点吃晚餐很正常！

❸ At the start of a meal, the French say "Bon appétit", and the Italians say "Buon appetito". But there is nothing similar ⑥ /ˈsɪmɪlə/ to say in English. "Enjoy your meal" is usually only said by the person who brings the food .

在进餐前，法国人会说："Bon appétit(祝你好胃口)"，意大利人则

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

说：“Buon appetito(祝你好胃口)”，但是英语中没有类似的表达。“Enjoy your meal(请慢慢享用)”通常只是由送餐人来说。

❹ Knives and forks are used for⑦ most Western food. The fork is held in your left hand and the knife in your right, and the food is held with the fork and cut with the knife. Soup is eaten with a spoon. However, there is some food which you can eat with your fingers, such as chicken wings /wɪŋz/ and hamburgers.

大多数西餐都要用刀叉。左手拿叉，右手拿餐刀。用叉子按住食物，用刀来切食物。汤要用汤匙来喝。然而，有些食物你可以用手拿着吃，例如鸡翅和汉堡包。

❺ During the meal, you may be invited to serve yourself (usually the ladies /'leɪdiz/ before the gentlemen /'dʒentlmən/) by someone who says, “Help yourself⑧.” Or you will be served by someone who asks, “Would you like some...?”You can take it and say, “Thank you.” If you are given something you do not like, you can just say, for example, “I’m sorry. I don’t eat meat”, or “I don’t eat fish”. No one will be cross⑨ /krɒs/. If you are offered more food but cannot eat any more⑩, just say, “No, thanks. It was delicious, but I’ve had enough.”

进餐时，也许有人会对你说：“请随意。”这是在邀请你(通常女士比男士优先)为自己服务。或者，有人会问：“你想来点……吗？”来为你服务，你可以接受并说：“谢谢你。”如果别人给了你不喜欢吃的东西，你只说，比如：“抱歉，我不吃肉”，或“我不吃鱼”就可以。没有人会生气的。如果有人给你提供更多食物，但你吃不下了，就说，“不用了，谢谢。它很好吃，但我已经吃饱了。”

❻ Remember that it is polite to say that you enjoy every dish when it is served, and that you have enjoyed the food at the end of a meal.

记住：每当一道菜端上来时，说一下你喜欢它，并且在结束就餐时说你享受这顿饭，是有礼貌的。

❼ It is sometimes difficult to know when the meal is over⑪. If you are invited to dinner by Western friends, you will be expected to stay and talk around the dinner table long after the last dish is served, and it is not polite if you leave as soon as⑫ you finish⑬ eating.

有时很难知道这顿饭什么时候结束。如果你被西方朋友邀请去吃饭，在最后一道菜端上来之后你仍被希望在餐桌旁多呆会儿，聊聊天。如果你一吃完就离开是不礼貌的。

❽ The rule is: Watch the other people. Do as they do. 规则是：观察其他人，照他们那样做。

Post-reading（读后）

写作小练笔 ☞(答案见176页)

批 句子赏析：句型的交错使用使文章更加出彩，包括被动语态句式的多处使用、it形式主语句、if从句及祈使句等，体现出作者深厚的语言功底。

批 说明方法：作者在第五段介绍进餐过程时用了举例子的说明方法，如主人常用语：“Help yourself.”“Would you like some...?”及客人答谢语。作者还用for example又举了客人友好拒绝的例子，使文章生动易懂。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

3 Complete the table with information from the passage. 用文章中的信息完成表格。

In the West 在西方	
Mealtimes 用餐时间	
Things to say at the start of a meal 用餐前说的话	
Method of eating 用餐方式	
Things you say when offered food 别人提供食物时你说的话	
Things to say and do at the end of the meal 用餐结束时说和做的事情	

4 Answer the questions. 回答问题。

1. "So when you eat Western food, do as Westerners do." So what should you do?
   "因此当你吃西餐时，像西方人那样做。"那么你应该怎么做?
2. "At the start of a meal, the French say 'Bon appétit'." What do you say at the start of a Chinese meal?
   "在用餐开始时，法国人会说 'Bon appétit(祝你好胃口)'。"你在开始吃中餐时说什么呢?
3. "I'm sorry. I don't eat meat." When might you want to say this?
   "对不起，我不吃肉。"什么时候你可能要说这个?
4. "No, thanks. It was delicious, but I've had enough ." Do you mean you do not like the food?
   "不用了，谢谢。它很好吃，但我已经吃饱了。"你的意思是不喜欢这食物吗?
5. "It is sometimes difficult to know when the meal is over." How do you know that a meal is over in China? "有时很难知道饭什么时候结束。"在中国，你如何知道一顿饭结束了?

5 Read the passage in Activity 2 again. Decide which part is surprising, interesting or unusual to you. 再次阅读活动 2 中的文章。判断一下，对你来说哪一部分是令人惊讶的、有趣的或者不同寻常的。

6 Complete the passage with the correct form of the words in the box.
用方框中所给单词的正确形式完成短文。

gentleman 男士　knife 刀　lady 女士　serve 端上　wing 翅膀

During a meal in the West, you use (1)_____ and forks most of the time, although you can use your fingers to eat chicken (2)_____ or hamburgers. You will be invited to (3)_____ yourself with food, the (4)_____ before the (5)_____. 在西方用餐时，你大部分时间使用 (1)_____ 和叉，尽管你可以用手抓着鸡 (2) _____或者汉堡包吃。你将会被邀请 (3)_____ 自己进餐，(4) _____比 (5) _____ 优先。

Writing 写作

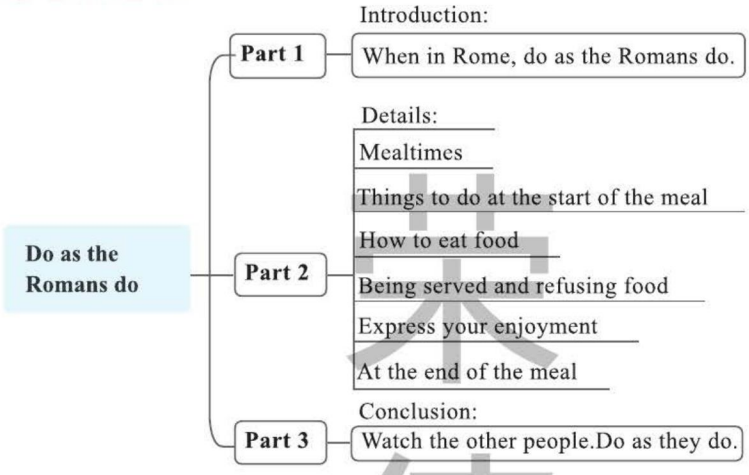
7 Write a passage about Chinese eating customs for a tourist magazine with Western readers.
给一家拥有西方读者的旅游杂志写一篇有关中国用餐习惯的文章。

- Read the table in Activity 3 again. Think about Chinese eating customs and write them down.
  再次阅读活动 3 中的表格。思考中国的用餐习惯并写下来。
  In China, lunch is usually served around 12 pm or even later...
  在中国，午餐通常在十二点左右或甚至更晚才吃……

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

- Write a sentence to introduce your passage. 写一个句子来为你的文章开头。
  Eating customs in China are in some ways different from those in the West.
  中国的饮食习惯在一些方面与西方是不同的。
- Write a sentence to finish your passage. 写一个句子来结束你的文章。
  Just enjoy your Chinese meal. You'll never forget it! 享用你的中餐吧。你将永远不会忘记它！

课文背诵指南



Ⅱ.课文阅读新题练 专攻中考阅读 60分

☞(答案见242页)

阅读策略

扫读法(扫读法是一种面式阅读法，它要求一眼看完几整行的文字，了解所读文章的系统和脉络，寻求所需的内容。它最显著的特点是目光先横后竖地快速移动，只扫描最关键的词语。其步骤为：一恰到好处地断定你要寻找的材料；二要断定将出现的信息会是什么形式，由此借助一条主要的线索获取你所需要的信息。)

拓展阅读

阅读过程

一、速读文章，回答问题

1. "So when you eat Western food, do as Westerners do." So what should you do?
(主旨大意题)

二、细读文章，完成下列题目

2. Dinner is served _____ or even later in the West. (细节理解题)
A. 7 am　　B. 7 pm
C. around 7 am　　D. around 7 pm

3. If you are offered more food but cannot eat any more, just say" _____."(细节理解题)
A. Help yourself
B. I'm sorry
C. No,thanks. It was delicious,but I've had enough
D. I don't eat them

4. 判断正(T)误(F)
If you have been invited to dinner by Western friends, you had better leave as soon as you finish eating. (　　) (推理判断题)

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

·考点批注 ·考点应用

★Do as the Romans do

① **as**/æz/ *conj.*(in the way in which) 按……的方式

e.g. She speaks English as Americans do. 她按美国人的方式说话。

As you were out, I left a message. 因为你不在，所以我留了言。

He was writing as I was reading. 我看书时，他在写字。

As a student, you must study hard.

作为一名学生，你必须努力学习。

She dressed as a doctor.

她穿得像一位医生。

考题在线 1 He stayed up very late that night. _____ he woke up in the morning, the sun was already high up in the sky. [无锡]

A. Until B. After C. While D. As

点拨:考查连词辨析。句意：那天晚上他熬夜到很晚。当他早上醒来的时候，太阳已经很高了。as 表示“当……时候”。

① as 作连词，意为“因为，由于；当……时候”

② as 作介词，意为“作为；当作；像；如同”

★So when you eat Western food, do as Westerners do.

② **Westerner** *n.* 西方人

e.g. The Westerner comes from America.

那个西方人来自美国。

Jack isn't a Westerner. He was born in China, but he lived in the West for some years. So we can learn some Western culture from him. 杰克不是西方人，他出生在中国，但在西方生活过几年。因此，我们能从他那里学到一些西方文化。

① Westerner 作可数名词，意为“西方人”

② Western 作形容词，意为“西方国家的；(对社会主义国家而言的)西方的”

③ West 作名词，意为“西方”，尤指西欧和北美，常写作 the West

★Dinner is served around 7 pm or even later.

③ **serve**/sɜːv/ *v.*(to give sb. food or drink, for example at a restaurant or during a meal) 端上(食物和饮料)；服侍……进餐

e.g. The waiter served us some coffee.

=The waiter served some coffee to us. 服务员端给了我们一些咖啡。

考题在线 2 —_____ free breakfasts_____ in all schools in China?

—No, not yet. Only in the rural areas.

A. Are; made B. Do; serve

C. Are; served D. Do; make

点拨:用语法分析法解答。考查被动语态。句意：“在中国，所有的学校早餐都是免费的吗？”“不，还不是。只有在一些农村地区。”当饭菜、食物作主语，并且谓语动词是 serve 时，需要用被动语态。

serve 作“端上，(给某人)提供”讲时，常用结构 serve sb. sth. 或 serve sth. to sb.，意为“给某人端上/提供某物”。

serve as 意为“可用作；可当……使(尤指别无选择时)”。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

④ **around** *adv.* 大约

e.g. He arrived around five o'clock.
他大约是五点钟到达的。
The cost will be around $1500.
费用将在1 500 美元左右。
You have 15 minutes to look around.
你有 15 分钟的时间到周围去看看。
They walked around the house. 他们绕着房子走。

①around 在此作副词，意为"大约"，相当于 about。常用于表示数字或时间的词(组)前。

②around 作副词，还可意为"围绕；环绕；到处"。

③around 作介词，意为"在那边，到那边；绕着"。

⑤ **even 修饰比较级** ⟶ 其他常见的比较级的前置修饰词及其用法：

e.g. Mary dances even better than Lucy.
玛丽舞跳得甚至比露西更好。
Sam is feeling a lot better today. 萨姆今天感觉好多了。
Can you come to school a little earlier tomorrow?
明天你能稍微早点儿到校吗?
I am four years older than my sister. 我比我妹妹大 4 岁。

①"much/a lot+比较级"意为"……得多"

②"a bit /a little +比较级"意为"稍微……"

③倍数、分数、百分数等表示数量的词常放在比较级前表示具体差别。

考题在线 3 WeChat Wallet is making our life _____ more convenient than before. [自贡]

A. many B. much C. very

点拨:用分析句子结构法。考查比较级修饰词。句意：微信钱包正使我们的生活比以前方便得多了。分析句子结构可知，此处指的是比以前生活方便得多了，需用 much 修饰比较级表示程度。

★ **But there is nothing similar to say in English.**

⑥ **similar**/'sɪmɪlə/ *adj.*(like sb. /sth. but not exactly the same) 类似的，相似的

e.g. The two students have similar interests. 这两个学生有相似的兴趣。
Lily's dress is similar to Lucy's. 莉莉的连衣裙和露西的相似。
These two cars are very similar in design.
这两辆汽车在设计方面非常相似。

similar 作形容词，意为"相似的"，常见搭配：be similar to 与……相似；be similar in 在……方面相似。

考题在线 4 His opinions are similar ____ yours but different ____Julia's.

A. to; from B. from; to
C. as; with D. with; as

点拨:此题用固定搭配法。be similar to "和……相似"；be different from "和……不同"。



★ **Knives and forks are used for most Western food.**

⑦ **be used for 被用于……**

e.g. Pens are used for writing.= Pens are used to write. 钢笔被用来写字。
English is used by many people. 英语被许多人使用。
The box is used as a table. 这个箱子被当作桌子来使用。

be used for 中 for 为介词，表用途，后接名词或动名词，与 be used to do sth. 意思相同。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

考题在线 5 用所给词的适当形式填空。

Cups are used for _____ (drink).

考题在线 6 —What tools _____ to make paper cutting?

—Scissors. [沈阳]

A. are used B. used C. will use D. use

be used by 意为“被……使用”，by 后接动作的执行者，强调使用者。

be used as 意为“被当作……使用”。

★Help yourself.

⑧ **help yourself 随便做（或用）吧；请自便**

e.g. Help yourself to some fish.

请随便吃些鱼。

Help yourselves to some fruit, children.

孩子们，请随便吃些水果吧。

help oneself (to...) 意为“随便用（……）；请自便”，其中 oneself 要随所指的人而变化；to 是介词，其后接表示食物或饮料的名词。

★oneself 常见搭配：

enjoy oneself 玩得开心

introduce oneself 自我介绍

dress oneself 自己穿衣服

by oneself 独自，单独

teach oneself... (=learn...by oneself) 自学……

look after oneself (=take care of oneself) 照顾自己

考题在线 7 Welcome to my new house, Ann and John. Help _____ to some fruit.

A. himself B. yourself

C. yourselves D. myself

点拨：考查反身代词。由 Ann and John 可知用第二人称复数的反身代词。

考题在线 8 Last summer vacation, the Greens went to the beach and enjoyed _____. [凉山]

A. him B. them C. himself D. themselves

点拨：考查代词的辨析。enjoy oneself 意为“过得愉快；玩得开心”；the Greens 意为“格林一家”，是复数。

★No one will be cross.

⑨ **cross**/krɒs/ *adj.*(annoyed or quite angry) 生气的



adj. 生气的

- cross
  - cross 作形容词，意为“生气的”。常见的搭配：be cross with sb. 生某人的气；be cross at sth. 因某事而生气。
  - 作名词，意为“十字架”。
  - 作动词，意为“穿过，横穿”。相当于 go across。

e.g. I was cross with you yesterday.

昨天我生你的气了。

He is always cross at the small things.

他总是因为一些小事而生气。

The soldiers crossed the river by boat.

士兵们乘船渡过了那条河。



v. 穿过

考题在线 9 改为同义句。

The teacher was angry with him for being late.

The teacher _____ _____ _____ him for being late.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★**If you are offered more food but cannot eat any more, just say, "No, thanks. It was delicious, but I've had enough."**

⑩ **not...any more（=no more）不再……**

e.g. You aren't a child any more.=You are a child no more.
你不再是一个孩子了。

The baby didn't cry any more.(=The baby no more cried.)
这个婴儿不再哭了。

He didn't live here any longer.(=He no longer lived here.)
他不再住在这儿了。

辨析：not...any more/no more 与 not ...any longer/no longer
① not...any more/no more 侧重指数量和程度上的"不再（增加）"
② not...any longer/no longer 侧重指时间和距离上的"不再（延长）"

考题在线 10 看到妈妈，这个婴儿不再哭了。

Seeing his mother, the baby _____ cry _____ _____.

★**It is sometimes difficult to know when the meal is over.**

⑪ **over** /ˈəʊvə/ *adv.*(ended) **结束**

over
- 在……上方（不接触） → There is a bridge over the river. 河上有一座桥。
- 多于，超过；相当于 more than → She has written over ten books. 她已经写了 10 多本书。
- 翻越 → He jumped over the wall. 他跳过了墙。
- 结束 → Class is over. 下课了。

考题在线 11 初中的日子一周后就结束了。 [黄冈改编]

Junior high school days _____ _____ _____ in a week.

★**If you are invited to dinner by Western friends, you will be expected to stay and talk around the dinner table long after the last dish is served, and it is not polite if you leave as soon as you finish eating.**

敲黑板 请大家背一背这些结构，记住它们！

⑫ **as soon as 一……就；刚……就，引导时间状语从句**

e.g. I will tell him the news as soon as he comes back.
他一回来，我就告诉他这个消息。

As soon as I got to the bus stop, the bus started.
我刚到公共汽车站，公共汽车就开了。

速记小筏：常接 v.-ing 形式的动词（短语）口诀
喜欢，错过，别介意，（enjoy, miss, mind）
完成，愉快，勤练习，（finish, have fun, practise）
忙的，禁不住，想放弃，（be busy, can't help, give up）

考题在线 12 Cathy is afraid of the dog. She will run away _____ she sees it. [内江]

A. ever since　　B. although
C. as soon as　　D. so that

点拨：考查连词辨析。句意：凯西很害怕狗。她一看见它就跑掉。ever since 自从；although 尽管；as soon as 一……就……；so that 为了。

⑬ **finish** /ˈfɪnɪʃ/ *v.*(to stop doing sth. or making sth. because it is completed) **完成；结束，后常接名词、代词、*v.*-ing 形式作宾语**

e.g. He finished reading the book. 他把这本书看完了。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

考题在线 13 — Can you come to my birthday party tonight?

—Yes, I'd love to. But I have to finish _____my English homework first. [湘西]

A. doing　　B. to do　　C. does

点拨:考查非谓语动词用法。finish doing sth. 完成做某事。



考题在线答案　1. D　2. C　3. B　4. A　5. drinking　6. A　7. C　8. D　9. was/got cross with　10. didn't; any more　11. will be over　12. C　13. A

Ⅳ.课时针对训练　稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见242页)

一、用所给的首字母或汉语提示完成单词

1. The bird can't fly. Maybe there is something wrong with its w_____.
2. If you often make the same mistake, your parents will be c_____ with you.
3. Tony and Daming have _____(相似的) hobbies.
4. She_____(端上) me a cup of coffee just now.
5. You should use _____(刀)and forks to eat chicken instead of using fingers!

二、用所给词的适当形式填空

6. _____(lady) and _____(gentleman), welcome to our new hotel!
7. As we all know, France is a _____(west) country.
8. Usually, shirts and ties _____(give) to fathers as gifts on Father's Day. [兰州]
9. Nowadays WeChat is _____(wide) used in our daily life.
10. Girls, help _____ (you) to some ice cream. It is delicious.

三、单项选择

11. The girl is _____ her mother in many ways. For example, they are both tall and thin.
A. similar to　　B. kind to
C. friendly to　　D. different from
12. Stones can _____ building houses.
A. be used by　　B. used to
C. be used for　　D. used for
13. —I have never been invited to a Western meal, so I feel a bit nervous.
—Don't worry. Just do _____ others do.
A. as　　B. while
C. so　　D. until
14. Help_____ to some chicken, children.
A. yourself　　B. you
C. yours　　D. yourselves
15. It took her a long time _____ this article.
A. to finish to read　　B. to finish reading
C. finish reading　　D. finish to read

四、根据汉语完成句子

16. 在年初，情况显得不是十分乐观。
Things didn't look too hopeful _____ _____ _____ of the year.
17. 迈克一放学回家就开始做饭。 [广州]
Mike started cooking _____ _____ _____ he got home from school.
18. 田军不再玩电脑游戏了。
Tian Jun _____ play computer games _____ _____.
19. 中国有许多大城市，比如北京、上海等。
China has many big cities, _____ _____ Beijing, Shanghai and so on.
20. 不用担心。没有人会生你的气。
Don't worry. No one will _____ _____ _____ you.

宋德基

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 3 Language in use

I. 课文原文、译文

Language practice 语言练习

I **was chosen** to play the dance music.
我被选去播放舞曲。
Lunch **is** usually **eaten** at about 1 pm.
午饭通常在下午 1 点左右吃。
Knives and forks **are used** for most Western food. 大多数西餐都用刀叉。
You **will be served** by someone who asks, "Would you like some...?"
有人将服侍你进餐，他会问："你想要一些……吗？"

1 Complete the explanations of the signs.
完成这些标志牌的解释。

LUNCH SERVED DAILY FROM 12 PM TO 2 PM 每天下午 12 点到 2 点提供午餐
Don't take food into the meeting rooms 禁止将食物带进会议室
Park open for picnics 公园可供野餐用
Dogs not allowed 狗不允许（进入）
Closed until 10 am 上午 10 点前停止营业

1. Lunch _____daily from 12 pm to 2 pm.
   午餐每天从下午 12 点到 2 点_____。
2. Food_____ into the meeting rooms.
   食物_____进入会议室。
3. The park _____for picnics.
   公园为野餐_____。
4. Dogs _____in the restaurant.
   狗_____在餐馆。
5. The shop _____until 10 am.
   商店_____直到上午 10 点。

2 Complete the passage with the correct form of the words in brackets.
用括号中所给单词的正确形式完成短文。

Guests at a new restaurant in London (1)_____ (serve) by blind waiters. But the waiters are not the only people who cannot see. The guests cannot see either, because the restaurant (2)_____ (keep) dark. No lights (3)_____(allow), not even the light on your mobile phone. The idea is that when you cannot see, your sense of taste(4) _____(improve). "Don't worry that you won't enjoy food without seeing it. You can (5) _____ (enjoy) it using your nose, fingers and tongue instead," promises ① the restaurant manager. 在伦敦一家新开张的餐馆里，客人由盲人服务员 (1) _____（服务）。但不只是服务员是看不见东西的人。客人们也看不见，因为餐馆 (2)_____（保持）黑暗。灯不 (3) _____（允许），甚至你手机上的光也不允许有。这个想法是当你看不到东西时，你的味觉 (4) _____（提高）。"不用担心看不到食物你就不能享受食物。你可以用你的鼻子、手指和舌头代替（视觉）(5) _____（享受）它，"餐馆经理许诺说。

3 Complete the passage with the correct form of the words and expressions in the box.
用方框中所给单词或短语的正确形式完成短文。

ask 问　call 打电话　drink 喝　eat 吃
order 点菜　pay 付款　pick up 拿起
put on 穿上　taste 品尝

On my mother's birthday, my father took us to a lovely restaurant to celebrate. I (1) _____the menu and looked at the good things to (2) _____ ②. We (3) _____ chicken, noodles and soup. Everything (4) _____ delicious. Then I

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

(5) _____for some ice cream while my parents (6) _____some coffee. My mother was given a birthday cake and a dish filled with fruit. Then my father (7) _____ the bill. It was cold outside, so he (8) _____a taxi. We (9) _____our coats and went home. My mother was very happy, and it was a perfect evening. 我妈妈生日那天，爸爸带我们去了一家可爱的餐馆庆祝。我 (1) _____菜单看着 (2) _____好的东西。我们 (3) _____鸡肉、面条和汤。所有的东西 (4) _____可口。然后，我 (5) _____一些冰淇淋，而我的父母 (6) _____一些咖啡。我的妈妈被送了一个生日蛋糕和一个水果拼盘。然后我的爸爸 (7) _____账单。外面非常寒冷，因此他 (8) _____一辆出租车。我们 (9) _____我们的外套，然后回家了。我的妈妈非常开心。那是一个完美的夜晚。

4 Complete the conversations with the sentences in the box. 用方框中的句子完成对话。

a) Is there any food you don't eat?
你有什么不吃的食物吗?

b) Would you like something to drink?
你想喝点什么吗?

c) Would you like some more soup?
你想再来些汤吗?

d) Anything else? 还要其他东西吗?

e) And have you had one of these yet?
你已经吃掉这些中的一个了吗?

f) Is there anything you especially like?
你有特别喜欢的东西吗?

1. **A:** Eric, have you ever had *jiaozi*?
埃里克，你曾经吃过饺子吗?
B: Yes, but I can never remember the different names.
是的，但我从来记不住不同的名字。
A: (1) _____ (1) _____
B: Well, I really don't know... 哦，我真的不知道……
A: OK.(2) _____ 好的。(2)_____
B: Well, I don't eat beef. But I like any kind of fish or vegetables. 哦，我不吃牛肉。但是我喜欢任何一种鱼或蔬菜。
A: Then let me order some food for you.
那么让我为你点一些食物。

2. **A:** Good morning. Are you ready to order?
早上好。你准备好点菜了吗?
B: Yes, I am. Thank you. I'll have tomato soup and chicken wings, please. 是的。谢谢。我要西红柿汤和鸡翅，劳烦了。
A: (3) _____ (3) _____
B: I'll have an orange juice and some iced tea. 我要一份橙汁和一些冰茶。
A: (4) _____ (4) _____
B: Could I have some apple pie?
给我来点苹果馅饼好吗?
A: Certainly. 当然可以。

3. **A:** (5) _____ (5) _____
B: Yes, please. It's delicious.
好的。它非常美味。
A: (6)_____They're a kind of dumpling. (6) _____ 它们是一种饺子。
B: Mm, they look good. What's inside them? 嗯，它们看起来不错。里面是什么?
A: Meat and vegetables. 肉和蔬菜。
B: Mm, they're really good!
嗯，它们真的很好吃！



5 Listen and number the pictures. 听录音，为图片排序。

6 Listen again and choose the correct answer. 再听一遍录音，选择正确答案。

1. The person who went to Britain put his knife and fork on his plate because_____.
去英国的那个人把他的刀叉放在盘子上，因为 _____。
a) he finished his meal 他吃完饭了
b) he did not want to talk with knife and

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

fork in his hand 他不想手里拿着刀叉说话

c) he did not like the food 他不喜欢那食物

2. The person who went to France offered everyone small dishes of food because _____. 去法国的那个人给每个人提供几小盘食物，因为 _____。

a) she thought they were for everyone 她认为它们是给每个人的

b) she was not polite 她很不礼貌

c) she was not French 她不是法国人

3. The person who had a Chinese meal drank from the finger bowl because _____. 那个吃中餐的人喝了洗手碗里的东西，因为 _____。

a) it had lemon in it 它里面有柠檬

b) she was hungry 她饿了

c) she thought it was soup 她认为那是汤

7 Read the email and answer the questions.

课文朗读

读邮件并回答问题。

FROM: Zhang Dawei 来自：张大伟

TO: Richard 给：理查德

SUBJECT: Eating customs in China

主题：中国的饮食习惯

Dear Richard, 亲爱的理查德：

I'm so glad you're coming to China! Your mother tells me you're worried about what you should and shouldn't do as a guest in China. Here's some advice ③. 我很高兴你要来中国！你的妈妈告诉我，你担心在中国做客不知道该做什么，不该做什么。这里有些建议。

You will probably be invited to a dinner. There will be a lot of different dishes, not just three courses. You may find it difficult to ④ use chopsticks if you haven't tried before. It's a good idea to get some practice beforehand. When the food is served, you should wait until you're invited to eat. The plates will be placed in the middle of the table for everyone to share. Take a little of everything and then have some more of the things you like. 你很可能会被邀请去吃晚餐。会有很多不同的菜肴，而不仅仅是三道菜。如果你以前没尝试使用过筷子，你可能发现用筷子很难。事先练习一下是个不错的主意。当食物端上来时，你应该等到被邀请的时候再吃。盘子将被放在桌子的中间以供每个人分享食物。每道菜都尝一点后，再多吃些你喜欢吃的食物。

Preparation of a big meal takes ⑤ a long time and everything will look beautiful, so it's a good topic of conversation. You'd better join in the conversation and say how much you like it. 准备一顿丰盛的大餐花费很长时间，所有的东西看上去都会很漂亮，因此它是交谈的好话题。你最好加入谈话并说你多么喜欢它。

At the end of the meal, you will usually be served with fruit. 在这顿饭的最后，通常会端上水果。

I hope this is helpful. Email me if you have any other questions. 我希望这会有所帮助。如果你有其他的问题，给我发电子邮件。

Yours, 你的

Zhang Dawei 张大伟

1. What is Richard worried about? 理查德担心什么？
2. How many courses are usual for a dinner in the West? 在西方，一顿晚餐通常有多少道菜？
3. Why should Richard practise using chopsticks? 为什么理查德应该练习使用筷子？
4. Why are the plates placed in the middle of the table in China? 在中国盘子为什么被放在桌子的中间？
5. Is it a good idea to talk about food during a meal in China?Why or why not? 在中国，吃饭的过程中谈论食物是个好主意吗？为什么是或为什么不是？

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Around the world 世界各地

Birthday parties in the US 美国的生日聚会

In the US, sixteenth birthday parties are usually important celebrations for teenagers. That is because the sixteenth birthday is their first step towards being an adult. Some of the parties are very big celebrations and cost a lot of money. Everyone dresses up⑥ and looks beautiful. These parties are usually held in hotels, and there are even music groups playing. People give gifts to the sixteen-year-olds⑦. Some gifts can be very precious. The young people enjoy themselves at the parties with singing and dancing. Other parties are simpler and held at home. Sometimes families celebrate in other ways, such as going on a special trip together, or going to the cinema or a nice restaurant for a meal. 在美国，16 岁的生日聚会对青少年来说通常是很重要的庆祝活动。那是因为 16 岁生日是他们迈向成人的第一步。一些聚会庆祝得特别隆重，并且花费很多钱。每个人都身穿盛装，看起来很漂亮。这些聚会通常在酒店里举行，有时甚至会有乐队表演。人们送礼物给那些 16 岁的孩子们。有些礼物可能是非常珍贵的。年轻人在聚会上又唱又跳，玩得很开心。其他的聚会会简单些，在家里举行。有时家庭会以其他的形式庆祝，例如一起进行一次特别的旅行，去看电影或去一个好的餐馆吃顿饭。

Module task: Describing an eating experience 模块任务：描述一次就餐的经历

8 **Describe a special meal you have eaten. Think about:** 描述你吃过的一顿特殊的饭。思考：

- when and where you ate it 你什么时候和在哪里吃的
- who you were with 你和谁在一起
- why the meal was special 这顿饭为什么特殊
- what happened during the meal 用餐时发生了什么事
- what happened at the end of the meal 用餐结束时发生了什么
- what the nicest thing about the experience was 这次经历中最美好的事情是什么

Now write about your eating experience.

现在写出你的就餐经历。

9 **Work in groups and vote for the most interesting description.** 小组练习，给最有趣的描述投票。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注

•考点应用

★"Don't worry that you won't enjoy food without seeing it. You can (5)_____(enjoy) it using your nose, fingers and tongue instead," promises the restaurant manager.

① promise to do sth. 许诺 / 答应做某事
② promise sb. sth./ promise sth. to sb. 承诺某人某物
③ promise +that 从句 许诺 / 答应……

① **promise** /ˈprɒmɪs/ *v.*(to tell sb. that you will definitely do or not do sth., or that sth. will definitely happen) 许诺；答应；保证

e.g. They promised to arrive on time.
他们承诺准时到。
His father promised him a bike as his birthday gift.
他的父亲答应送他一辆自行车作为生日礼物。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Hurry up! We promised (that) we wouldn't be late!
快点！我们保证过不会迟到的！

考题在线 1 当爸爸承诺给我买一个 iPad 的时候，我多么激动啊！ [眉山]

When my father _____ to buy me an iPad, _____ excited I was!

promise 还可以作名词，意为"承诺"。其常用搭配有：make a promise 作出承诺；keep one's promise 遵守承诺

★I picked up the menu and looked at the good things to order.

② **pick up 捡起；拿起**

e.g. Please help me pick up the book.
请帮我捡起那本书。

pick up 为动副短语，其后若接名词作宾语，名词放在 pick up 之间或之后均可；若接代词作宾语，代词只能放在 pick up 之间。

pick up 其他含义：（开车）接人；整理，收拾；接电话

考题在线 2 出发前，记得给我打个电话，以便我知道什么时间来接你。

Remember to give me a call before you set off so that I can know when to _____ you _____. [乐山]

★Here's some advice.

③ **advice** /ədˈvaɪs/ *n.*(an opinion or a suggestion about what sb. should do in a particular situation) **建议，忠告，劝告**

advice
- 短语
  - ask sb. for advice 向某人征求意见
  - give sb. advice on sth. 就某事向某人提建议
  - take sb.'s advice 听取某人的建议
- 不可数名词：a piece of advice 一条建议
- 动词形式：动词形式为 advise

Nothing is impossible to a willing heart.
心之所愿，无事不成。/有志者事竟成。

e.g. Can you give me some advice on how to learn English well?
你能给我一些学好英语的建议吗？

My parents advised me to write a passage.
我的父母建议我写一篇文章。

考题在线 3 用括号内所给单词的适当形式填空。

Would you mind giving me some _____ (advice) on how to plant trees?

★You may find it difficult to use chopsticks if you haven't tried before.

④ **find+it+ *adj.*+to do sth. 发现做某事是……的**

e.g. I find it interesting to watch this movie. 我发现看这部电影很有趣。

"find+it+adj.+to do sth."结构中 it 为形式宾语，真正的宾语是动词不定式 to do sth.，形容词在此作宾语补足语。类似用法的动词还有 think。

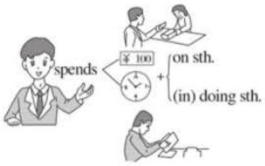
考题在线 4 After long years of war, many people in Syria are homeless. I think it important _____ a peaceful world. [广东]

A. build　　B. not build

C. to build　　D. not to build

点拨：考查非谓语动词。句意：经过数年长时间的战争，许多在叙利亚的人失去家园。我认为建立一个和平的世界非常重要。本题中，it 为形式宾语，不定式 to build... 作真正的宾语。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料



★Preparation of a big meal takes a long time and everything will look beautiful, so it's a good topic of conversation.

⑤ **take** *v.* 需要……时间；费时

e.g. The journey takes two hours. 这段旅程花费两个小时。

辨析：spend, cost, pay 与 take

spend	花费（金钱、时间等）	主语是人	① sb. spends+ 金钱 / 时间 + on sth.； ② sb. spends + 金钱 / 时间 + (in) doing sth.；
cost	花费（金钱等）	主语是物	sth. costs（sb.）+ 金钱
pay	付款	主语是人	sb. pays + 金钱 + for sth.
take	花费（时间）	常用 it 作形式主语，也可用物作主语	① It takes (sb.) + 时间 + to do sth.； ② sth. takes + 时间

e.g. I spent 100 *yuan* on the dictionary. =The dictionary cost me 100 *yuan*.= I paid 100 *yuan* for the dictionary. 我花 100 元买了这本词典。

dress 常见用法：
① dress sb. 给某人穿衣服
② dress oneself 自己穿衣服
③ get dressed 穿好衣服

★Everyone dresses up and looks beautiful.

⑥ **dress up** 装扮；乔装打扮　敲黑板 dress up as 后面跟表示角色、职业等的名词；dress up in 后面跟表示服装或颜色等的名词。

e.g. Most girls love dressing up.

大多数女孩喜欢打扮。

He often dresses up as a farmer.

他经常装扮成农场主。

Girls like dressing up in beautiful clothes for parties.

女孩们喜欢穿漂亮的衣服去参加聚会。

考题在线 5 孩子们觉得打扮成绵羊很好玩。

The children thought it great fun to_____ _____ _____ sheep.

"基数词 - 名词（单数）- 形容词"结构，在句中通常作前置定语，the sixteen-year-olds 在此处名词化了，前面加了定冠词 the，而且用了复数形式，相当于 sixteen-year-old teenagers。

★People give gifts to the sixteen-year-olds.

⑦ **"基数词 - 名词单数 - 形容词"类复合形容词**

e.g. Sixteen-year-old teenagers are not allowed to drive a car in China.

在中国 16 岁的青少年不允许开车。

She is an eight-year-old girl.

她是一个 8 岁的女孩。

考题在线 6 Wu Dajing, a _____ Chinese skater, set a new world record at the Short Track World Cup last year. [宿迁]

A. 25-years-old　　B. 25 year old

C. 25-year-old　　D. 25 years old

点拨：本题考查复合形容词结构。25-year-old 为"基数词 - 名词（单数）- 形容词"构成的复合形容词结构，在句中作前置定语，修饰 Chinese skater。

考题在线答案　1. promised; how　2. pick;up　3. advice　4. C　5. dress up as　6. C

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 模块语法沙龙

夺取中考语法满分

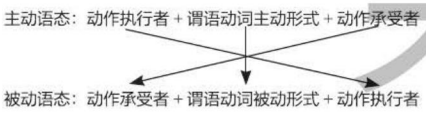
被动语态

被动语态：语态表示句子的主语和谓语的关系。英语句子有两种语态，即主动语态和被动语态。主动语态表示主语是动作的执行者。被动语态是动词的一种特殊形式的表现，表示主语是动作的承受者。被动语态由“be+ 及物动词的过去分词”构成，有不少短语动词相当于及物动词，所以这些短语动词亦有被动语态，be 动词有人称、时态和数量的变化。

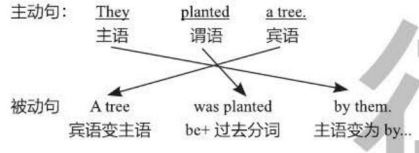
知识微课

考点 1 被动语态的变化及其谓语的动词形式

考向 1：主动语态与被动语态的变化图



e.g.



考题在线 1 Around the world, a great deal of plastic _____ each year, of which about 10 percent ends up in the sea. [临沂改编]

A. is created　　B. was created

C. creates

点拨：考查被动语态。题干主语 a great deal of plastic 为动作承受者，和动词 create 构成被动关系；由时间状语 each year 可知本句用一般现在时；一般现在时的被动语态结构：be(am/is/are)+ 动词的过去分词。

考向 2：【重点】被动语态中谓语动词的形式

分类	谓语动词形式	例句
一般现在时态	am/is/are+ 过去分词	The job is liked by many people. 这份工作被许多人喜欢。
一般过去时态	was/were+ 过去分词	The door was locked. 门被锁上了。
一般将来时态	shall/will be+ 过去分词；am/is/are going to be + 过去分词	You will be looked after well. 你会被照看得很好。
现在完成时态	have/has been+ 过去分词	I have been chosen to play the role of the king. 我已经被选上扮演国王的角色。
过去完成时态	had been+ 过去分词	The work had been finished by then. 到那个时候，这项工作已经被完成了。
现在进行时态	am/is/are being+ 过去分词	The letter is being read by Jim. 那封信正在被吉姆读着。
过去进行时态	was/were being+ 过去分词	They were being taught English by Mr Green at that time. 在那时，他们正由格林先生教英语。
含有情态动词的被动语态	情态动词 +be+ 过去分词	The desk can be put here. 那张桌子可以放在这里。

速记小筏：巧记被动语态的用法：谁做的动作不知道，说出谁做的没必要；突出承受者或礼貌，用被动语态错不了。被动不离“be”和“过去分词”，过去分词前面助动 be。主谓一致莫忘记，句中时态要留意。

考题在线 2 With the rapid progress in high technology, 5G _____ around most parts of China in the near future. [昆明]

A. is used　　B. is using

C. will use　　D. will be used

点拨：用标志词法解题。考查被动语态。由时间状语 in the near future（在不远的将来）可知本句用一般将来时；主语 5G 是动作的承受者，故用被动语态；一般将来时的被动语态结构为：will be+ 动词的过去分词。

荣德基

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考题在线 3 Too much time _____ on computer games by most teenagers every day. And their parents are worried about their health and study. [十堰]

A. spends B. is spent

C. has spent D. spending

点拨：考查被动语态。句意：大多数青少年每天把很多时间花费在电脑游戏上，他们的父母很担心他们的健康和学习。主语 too much time 与谓语动词 spend 是被动关系，要用被动语态。

考题在线 4 Some people think trees _____ on Tree Planting Day only. [遂宁]

A. should plant B. should be planted

C. should be plant D. should be planting

点拨：考查被动语态。宾语从句主语 trees 是动词 plant 的承受者，选项中出现了情态动词 should，故题干符合含有情态动词的被动语态，其结构为：should+be+ 动词的过去分词 (planted)。

考点 2 【重点】被动语态中的特殊用法

1. 含有双宾语的句子变成被动语态时，既可以将间接宾语转化成主语，也可以将直接宾语转化成主语，但应在被保留的间接宾语前加介词 for 或 to。

2. 含有短语动词的主动句变被动句时，短语后的介词和副词不可漏掉。

3. 使役动词和感官动词后接省略 to 的动词不定式作宾语补足语，在变为被动语态时，to 要还原，不能省略（但 let 除外）。若其后接现在分词，在变为被动语态时，保持不变。

4. 不及物动词或短语没有被动语态，如 take place, rise 等。

5. 有些动词以主动形式表示被动意义，如 need, require, want 等。

e.g. We were told an old story by the old man yesterday.=An old story was told to us by the old man yesterday.

那位老人昨天给我们讲了一个老故事。

The little child cannot be made to do such a difficult thing.

不要让这个小孩子来做如此困难的事情。

The desks require repairing.

书桌需要修理了。

考题在线 5 In old days, the poor _____ for the boss for over 18 hours a day. [恩施]

A. was made to be worked

B. were made work

C. were made to work

点拨：考查被动语态。主语为 the+ 形容词时，是复数概念，故 be 的过去式用 were；made 在被动语态中表示被让……时，其后的 to 不可以省略。

考题在线答案 1. A 2. D 3. B 4. B 5. C

Ⅳ. 写作一课一法 夺取中考写作 20分

写作小练笔

We often say, "When in Rome, do as the Romans do." So when you eat Western food, do as Westerners do. 点题"入乡随俗"

Knives and forks are used for most Western food. The fork is held in your left hand and the knife in your right, and the food is held with the fork and cut with the knife. Soup is eaten with a spoon. 介绍"餐具及使用"

It is polite to say that you enjoy every dish when it is served, and that you have enjoyed the food at the end of a meal. 介绍"进餐礼仪"

If you are invited to dinner by Western friends, you will be expected to stay and talk around the dinner table long after the last dish is served, and it is not polite if you leave as soon as you finish eating. 介绍"进餐礼仪"

The rule is: Watch the other people. Do as they do. 总结"进餐规则"

模块话题 [潍坊模拟]

假如你是李明，你的一位笔友 Tom 发来 e-mail，说他下星期来中国，向你询问中国的餐桌礼仪，请你给他回一封 e-mail，告诉他有关情况，信的格式已给出。

要点：1. 让客人和长辈吃第一道菜；

2. 不要用筷子敲碗；

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

3. 不要将手伸到对面夹菜；

4. 等大家到齐了，才开始吃；

5. 为主人的长寿、健康、成功干杯。

提示词：

guest 客人 elder 长辈 tap 敲 longevity 长寿

Dear Tom,

I'm glad to receive your e-mail._____

_____

Yours,

Li Ming

审题指导（把握中心，得方向分）

1. 正确运用书信的格式。
2. 介绍餐桌礼仪时多用一般现在时及表示建议的情态动词。
3. 具体介绍时按照要点提示分条描述，有层次感。

写作技法（学会方法，巧得高分）

"一引二具三表法"写介绍饮食文化类作文

"一引二具三表法"的写作模式通常为：首先引出话题；然后具体描述；最后表达祝愿。

写作模板（学会套路，得基本分）

"一引二具三表法"写介绍饮食文化类作文	引出话题	Now I want to tell you something about the Chinese table manners.
	具体描述	◆ The host or the hostess doesn't eat...until... ◆ You can't tap... ◆ You shouldn't reach...or... ◆ You can't eat until... ◆ You should toast...or...
	表达祝愿	Wish you a good time in China.

经典词句（妙用句式，得出彩分）

单词	welcome, can't, shouldn't, besides, health, success, wish
短语	Chinese table manners, not...until, tap at, in front of, at the table
句子	1. Don't put your elbows on the table. 2. You can't eat until everyone is at the table. 3. It's not good to speak when your mouth is full.

范文赏析（书写工整，得印象分）

Dear Tom,

I'm glad to receive your e-mail. Welcome to China! Now I want to tell you something about the Chinese table manners.

In China, the host or the hostess doesn't eat every dish first until the guests and the elders begin. You can't tap at bowls with the chopsticks. You shouldn't reach across the table or in front of someone to get something to eat. You can't eat until everyone is at the table. Besides, you should toast the longevity, health or success of the host or the hostess.

Wish you a good time in China.

Yours,

Li Ming

名师点评：本文用"一引二具三表法"写信介绍中国餐桌礼仪，格式正确，结构完整，语言凝炼、流畅。首先引出话题 Chinese table manners；然后根据来信所问具体答复，文中从多个方面详细介绍了中国的餐桌礼仪，"not...until"句式及情态动词 shouldn't, can't 的运用强化了对餐桌礼仪"不为"观点的阐明；最后表达了美好的祝愿。

测试卷及听力

V. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20 分

（答案见242页）

一、根据汉语提示完成句子

1. 他打算打扮成王子去参加化装舞会。

He is going to _____ _____ as a prince and go to the costume party.

2. 他发现学好一门外语是不容易的。

He found _____ difficult _____ _____a foreign language well.

3. 昨天老师给了我一条建议。

My teacher gave me a _____ _____ _____ yesterday.

4. 径直向前走，你会在街道的末尾发现那个超市。

Go straight ahead, and you'll find the supermarket

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

_____ _____ _____ of the street.

5. 放学后我爸爸会来接我。

My dad will _____ _____ _____ after school.

二、语法专练

6. The villagers expect that the building of the bridge _____ before the rainy season comes. [安徽]

A. is completed
B. was completed
C. will be completed
D. has been completed

7. The 2021 International Horticultural Expo _____ in Yangzhou. [扬州]

A. holds B. will hold
C. is held D. will be held

8. Look at the picture. The top five TV plays _____ in it. [河北]

A. list B. are listed
C. will list D. will be listed

9. Children under 12 years old _____ ride sharing bikes. It's too dangerous. [贵港]

A. shouldn't allow to
B. shouldn't allow
C. shouldn't be allowed to
D. shouldn't be allowed

10. —What are you watching?

— *The Story of China*. This part _____ at China Block Printing Museum of Yangzhou in 2014. [扬州]

A.filmed B. was filmed
C. has filmed D. is filmed

11. Gina went to the doctor's yesterday and she _____ about the importance of good living habits once more. [宿迁]

A.told B. is told
C. was told D. has told

12. —The Forum(论坛)on China-Africa Cooperation Meeting will take place in Beijing this year.

—Yes. I hear thousands of guests_____ to the meeting then. [襄阳]

A. will be invited B. will invite
C. are invited D. invite

13. Andy, with his parents, _____ Hong Kong, and some shopping _____ by them. [安顺]

A. have gone to; will do
B. has gone to; will be done
C. have been to ; will do
D. has been to; do

14. The little boy is crying because his toy _____ by someone a moment ago. [绥化]

A. was broken B. is broken
C. broke

15. The environment in my hometown is improving because many trees_____ every year. [吉林]

A. plant B. planted
C. are planted

三、模块知识浓缩

say, finger, cross, over, enjoy, you , knife, serve, similar, spoon

If you eat Western food, please remember this famous _____[16], "When in Rome, do as the Romans do."

In the West, lunch and dinner are usually _____[17] later. Before meals, people from different countries say different words. But there is nothing _____[18] to say in English.

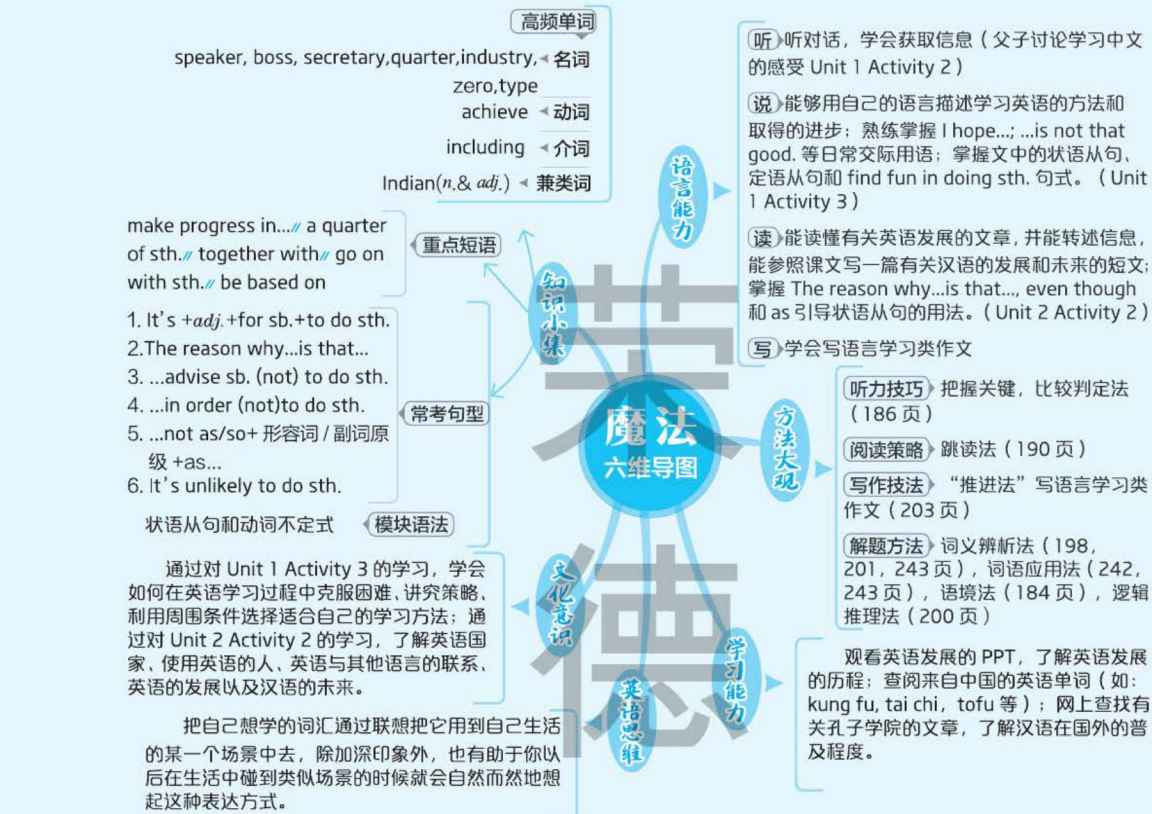
_____[19] and forks are used for most Western food. People often cut all their food first, and then use the fork to eat the food. Soup is eaten with a _____[20]. Of course, some food can be eaten with your _____[21] , such as chicken wings and hamburgers. During the meal, the host will tell you "Help _____[22] ", or give some food to you. You just eat the food you like; no one will be _____[23].

It is polite to say how much you_____[24] the food. When the meal is_____[25] , you shouldn't leave at once,because it's quite rude.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Module 7 English for you and me

词汇表听写



记忆大师

Unit 1

必背单词

1. **achieve** *v.* 成功，实现 →achievement *n.* 实现
2. **including** *prep.* 包括；包含 →include *v.* 包括；包含 →included（近义词）
3. **speaker** *n.* 说某种语言的人 →speak *v.* 说 →spoke（过去式）→spoken（过去分词）

必背短语

4. too much 太多
5. at the beginning 开始
6. keep doing sth. 一直做某事
7. continue to do sth. 继续做某事
8. make progress 取得进步
9. help sb. with sth. 在某事上帮助某人
10. more and more popular 越来越受欢迎
11. in the future 在将来
12. be good at 擅长
13. at the same time 与此同时

必背句子

14. I **hope** my English is **good enough** for the exams, anyway.

    无论如何，我希望我的英语好到足以应付考试。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

15. I **think** you've done **really well.**
我认为你已经做得很好了。

16. Have you ever been to an English corner?
你曾经去过英语角吗?

17. You mean those clubs **where** people go to practise their English?
你指的是人们去练习英语的那些俱乐部吗?

18. I **can speak** English **with** you **whenever** we meet.
无论我们什么时候遇到，我都可以和你讲英语。

Unit 2

必背单词

1. **boss** *n.* 老板；上司 →bosses *pl.*
2. **secretary** *n.* 秘书 →secretaries *pl.*
3. **quarter** *n.* 四分之一 →three quarters 四分之三
4. **industry** *n.* 制造业；工业 →industries *pl.*
5. **Indian** *n.* 印度人； *adj.* 印度的；印度文化的 → India *n.* 印度
6. **type** *n.* 种；类；类型 →a type of 一种
7. **zero** *n.*（数字）零

必背短语

8. be used as 被用来作为
9. between...and... 在……和……之间
10. grow up 成长，长大
11. communicate with... 和……交流
12. in the nineteenth century 在十九世纪
13. borrow...from... 从……借……
14. as...as... 和……一样……
15. a quarter of sth. 某物的四分之一
16. together with 包括……在内；同……一起

必背句子

17. And **anywhere** you go in the world, there is a good chance that you will meet **someone who** speaks English.
并且不管你去世界的哪个角落，总有机会遇到讲英语的人。

18. Will the **importance** of English **last?**
英语的重要性会持续下去吗?

19. **Even though** we speak different types of English, we are all part of an international club.
尽管我们说着不同种类的英语，但我们都是国际俱乐部的成员。

20. **So** who **owns** English? 那么谁拥有英语呢?

Unit 3

必背短语

1. start doing sth. 开始做某事
2. get a good job 获得一份好工作
3. be proud of... 为……感到自豪
4. work hard 努力学习

必背句子

5. Ned needs to **make an effort** to improve his handwriting.
内德需要努力提高他的书写。

6. If he **practises** it, his handwriting **will** certainly **improve.**
如果他练习的话，他的书写一定会提高。

7. Let's **go on with** the lesson.
咱们继续上课。

必背语法

8. It's also the subject that I'm best at, **although** my spoken English is not that good.
英语还是我最擅长的学科呢，尽管我的英语口语不是那么好。

9. I can speak English with you **whenever** we meet.
无论我们什么时候见面，我都可以和你说英语。

10. **As** China continues to grow, many people think that Chinese will become as common as English by the middle of the twenty-first century.
随着中国继续发展，许多人认为到 21 世纪中期汉语将变得与英语一样普及。

11. I hope I can continue **to make progress next year**. 我希望明年能继续进步。

基德

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 1 Have you ever been to an English corner?

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

Listening and vocabulary 听力与词汇

1 Look at the photo and answer the questions.

看照片，回答问题。

Which is more difficult. . . 哪个更难……

1. speaking to your classmates or speaking to people from the UK or the US? 和你的同班同学交谈还是和来自英国或美国的人交谈?
2. doing English exercises or reading English stories? 做英语练习还是读英文故事?
3. understanding written English or spoken English? 理解书面英语还是口头英语?

2 Listen and choose the correct answer.

听录音，选择正确答案。

课文听力

1. How has Tony's dad made progress ① in learning Chinese? 在学汉语方面，托尼的爸爸是怎样取得进步的?
   a) He has been to ② classes. 他去上过课。
   b) He has practised it every day. 他每天练习汉语。
   c) He did not do anything special. 他没有做什么特殊的事情。
2. According to Tony's dad, what do you need to do to be good at a foreign language? 根据托尼的爸爸所说，要学好一门外语你需要做什么?
   a) You need to be very bright. 你需要非常聪明。
   b) You need to work hard. 你需要努力学习。
   c) You need to go to classes. 你需要去上课。
3. What does Tony's dad think about Chinese? 托尼的爸爸是怎么看待汉语的?
   a) It is easier than English. 它比英语简单。
   b) It is more difficult than English. 它比英语难。
   c) It is as easy as English. 它和英语一样简单。

3 Listen and read. 听一听，读一读。

课文朗读

Betty: How much progress do you think you've made in English this year, Lingling? 玲玲，你认为自己今年英语取得了多大进步?

Lingling: I think I've achieved ③ /əˈtʃiːvd/ a lot. I hope my English is good enough for the exams, anyway ④. It's also the subject that I'm best at, although my spoken English is not that ⑤ good. 我认为我收获了很多。无论如何，我希望我的英语足以应付考试。它也是我最擅长的学科，尽管我的英语口语没那么好。

Betty: I can see you really enjoy learning English. Some people think English is too difficult and it requires too much effort to learn it well. 我能够看出你真的喜欢学习英语。一些人认为英语太难了，需要付出太多的努力才能学好。

Lingling: English is difficult to learn at the beginning. But if you keep trying ⑥, you can make progress quickly and find a lot of fun in learning it. I hope I can continue to make progress next year. 英语开始很难学。但是，如果你坚持尝试，你就会进步很快，并且发现学习英语有很多的乐趣。我希望明年我能继续取得进步。

Betty: I think you've done really well. Have you ever been to an English corner? 我认为你已经做得很好了。你曾经去过英语角吗?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lingling: You mean those clubs where people go to practise their English? I always thought they were for people who speak good English already. 你指的是人们去练习英语的那些俱乐部吗？我原来一直以为它们是为那些讲英语已经讲得很好的人开办的。

Betty: Well, I went to an English corner once, and there were some people who didn't speak English very well. But they were happy to try, and other people, including ⑦ /ɪn'klu:dɪŋ/ some English speakers /'spi:kəz/ from the UK and the US, were happy to talk to them. 噢，我曾经去过英语角，那里有一些人讲不太好英语。但是他们很乐于尝试，还有其他人，包括一些来自英国和美国的讲英语的人，很乐意与他们交谈。

Lingling: I don't have to go to an English corner. I can speak English with you whenever we meet. 我没必要去英语角。无论我们什么时候遇到，我都可以和你讲英语。

Betty: Yes, I'm always happy to speak to you in English. At the same time, you can also help me with my Chinese. I think Chinese will be more and more popular in the future. 是的，我一直乐意用英语和你交谈。同时，你也可以帮助我学习汉语。我认为汉语在将来会越来越受欢迎。

Everyday English 日常英语

- I hope. . . 我希望……
- . . . is not that good.……没那么好。

Now decide who might agree with the following sentences. Write B for Betty and L for Lingling. 现在判断一下谁有可能同意下面的句子。B 指贝蒂，L 指玲玲。

1. English may not be difficult to learn as long as you keep on trying. _____
只要你坚持尝试，英语可能不难学。_____
2. Chinese may be more popular in the future. _____ 汉语在将来有可能更受欢迎。_____
3. Learning English can be a lot of fun. _____
学英语可能有许多乐趣。_____
4. English is my favourite subject at school. _____ 英语是我在学校里最喜欢的学科。_____

4 Complete the sentences in your own words. 用自己的话完成句子。

1. Some people think English is difficult to learn because_____ .
有些人认为英语很难学，因为_____ 。
2. You'll find a lot of fun in learning English if _____. 如果 _____ 你会发现学习英语有很多乐趣。
3. You can go to an English corner if _____.
如果 _____ ，你可以去英语角。
4. It is good to meet other speakers of English, although _____. 尽管 _____，结识其他说英语的人很好。
5. Lingling does not have to go to an English corner because _____.
玲玲不必去英语角因为 _____。

5 Complete the questions with the correct form of the words in the box. 用方框中所给单词的适当形式完成问句。

achieve 成功	progress 进步
require 需要	speaker 说某种语言的人

1. How much have you _____ this year in English? Have you made much _____? 今年你在英语方面 _____ 多少？你取得了很大 _____ 吗？
2. How can you get more practice with English _____ from the UK and the US? 你怎样才能从来自英国和美国的英语 _____ （那里）获得更多的练习？
3. What does it _____ to learn English well? 学好英语 _____ 什么？

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Now work in pairs. Ask and answer.

现在结对练习。问与答。

Pronunciation and speaking 发音与口语

6 Read and predict which words the speaker is likely to stress.

朗读并预测哪些单词讲话人可能重读。

English is difficult to learn at the beginning. But if you keep trying, you can make progress quickly and find a lot of fun in learning it. I hope I can continue to make progress next year.

英语开始时很难学。但是，如果你坚持尝试，你就会进步很快，并且发现学习英语有很多的乐趣。我希望明年我能继续进步。

Now listen and check. 现在听一听并检查。

7 Read the paragraph in Activity 6 aloud.

大声朗读活动 6 的段落。

8 Read the paragraph aloud. Make sure you stress the important words.

大声朗读段落。确保你重读那些重要的单词。

Well, I went to an English corner once, and there were some people who didn't speak English very well. But they were happy to try, and other people, including some English speakers from the UK and the US, were happy to talk to them. 噢，我曾经去过英语角，那里有一些人讲不好英语。但是他们很乐于尝试，还有其他人，包括一些来自英国和美国的讲英语的人，很乐意与他们交谈。

Now listen and check. 现在听一听，检查一下。

9 Work in pairs. Talk about your progress in English. Use your answers in Activity 5 to help you.

结对练习。讨论你在英语方面的进步。用你在活动 5 中的答案帮助你。

—Do you think you've made any progress in English this year?

——你认为你今年在英语方面取得了一些进步吗？

—Yes, I do. I've learnt a lot of new words, although. . .

——是的。我学习了许多新单词，尽管……

Ⅱ. 考点精讲点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

·考点应用 ·考点批注

★How has Tony's dad made progress in learning Chinese?

① **progress**/prəʊgres / *n.* (the process of improving or developing) 进步

e.g. Making more progress will be very difficult for him.

取得更多进步对于他来说将会很难。

I will make progress in English this year.

今年我将在英语方面取得进步。

progress 为不可数名词，其前不能用冠词 a 修饰，也没有复数形式，其前常用 great, good, much 等词修饰。

make progress (in...)"(在……方面)取得进步"。

考题在线 1 —My dear, you have made _____ in your English this term.

Well done!

—Thank you, Mum. I will keep on working hard. [恩施]

A. a progress B. progress C. progresses

点拨: 考查名词用法。progress 为不可数名词。句意：——亲爱的，这学期你在英语上取得了进步。做得好！——谢谢你，妈妈。我将继续努力学习。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

★He has been to classes.

② have/has been to 去过



【重点】辨析：have/has been to,have/has gone to 与 have/has been in

have/has been to	表示“曾经去过某地”，但现在已经回来了，可以和 once,twice,never,ever 等词连用。
have/has gone to	表示“去了某地”，说话时某人已经离开此地，指“去而未归”，不可和 since 或 for 引导的时间状语连用。
have/has been in	表示“某人呆在某地（一段时间）”，强调人现在已在某地，常与 since 或 for 引导的时间状语连用。

e.g. I have been to Dalian twice. 我去过大连两次。

The Greens have gone to Beijing. 格林一家去了北京。

He has been in Shanghai for two weeks. 他呆在上海两周了。

考题在线 2 —Have you ever _____ the Terracotta Army in Xi'an? [湘潭]

—Yes, I went there last year.

A. gone to B. been to C. been in

点拨：用语境法解题。由“Yes,I went there last year.”可知，去年去过，现在已经回来了。故用“have/has been to...”结构。

★I think I've achieved a lot.

③ achieve /ə'tʃi:v/ *v.* (to succeed in doing sth. or causing sth. to happen) 成功；实现；完成

achieve 一般只用作及物动词，指排除各种困难、障碍而完成宏伟目标。其同义词组为 come true“实现”，是不及物动词词组，一般由物（理想、愿望等）作主语。

e.g. She eventually achieved her goal of becoming a teacher.

她最终实现了她的目标，成了一名老师。

We felt a great sense of achievement when we reached the top of the mountain.

achieve 的名词形式为 achievement，意为“成就；成绩；达到，完成”。

当到达山顶时，我们感到一种巨大的成就感。

考题在线 3 —Mum, I'm tired of doing too much homework every day.

—Oh, dear, without hard work, you can't _____ your dream.

A. choose B. encourage C. manage D. achieve

点拨：考查动词辨析。choose 选择；encourage 鼓励；manage 解决；achieve 实现。achieve one's dream(实现某人的梦想)，为固定短语。

★I hope my English is good enough for the exams, anyway.

④ anyway *adv.* 不管怎样，无论如何

anyway 作副词，用于支持、补充说明先前的陈述，可位于句首和句末。

e. g. Anyway , we must finish the work today.

无论如何，我们今天必须完成这项工作。

Show him the book anyway. 不管怎样，给他看看这本书。

考题在线 4 —Alan, your hair is so long. Why don't you go and have a haircut?

—I'm too busy to go today, but thanks for your advice _____ .

A. anytime B. anywhere C. anyway

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

点拨: 句意：——艾伦，你的头发太长了。你为什么不去剪头发呢？——今天我太忙了，不能去，不过还是要谢谢你的建议。anytime“在任何时候”；anywhere“在任何地方”；anyway，“尽管如此，即使这样”。

★**It's also the subject that I'm best at, although my spoken English is not that good.**

that 意为“那么，那样”表示程度，相当于 so。

⑤ **that** *adv.* 那么，那样

e.g. I didn't realize that she was that ill.

我没想到她病得那么重。

★**But if you keep trying, you can make progress quickly and find a lot of fun in learning it.**

⑥ **keep doing sth.** 一直做某事

e.g. He kept coughing all morning.

他整个上午不停地咳嗽。

辨析：keep doing sth. 与 keep on doing sth.

①keep doing sth. 强调动作或状态的持续性。

②keep on doing sth. 强调动作的反复性和时间的间隔性。

Keep smiling!

保持微笑！

We must keep on working hard in the new year.

在新的一年里，我们必须继续努力工作。

考题在线 5 根据汉语意思完成英文句子。

(1) 坚持努力学习，你就会通过考试。

_____ _____ _____ and you'll pass the exam.

(2) 尽管下雨，但我们还是坚持在田间劳作。

We _____ _____ _____ in the fields in spite of the rain.

★**But they were happy to try, and other people, including some English speakers from the UK and the US, were happy to talk to them.**

including + 名词 / 代词 = 名词 / 代词 + included。

⑦ **including** /ɪnˈkluːdɪŋ/ *prep.* (having sth. as part of a group or set) 包括

e.g. The band sang many songs, including some of my favourites.

这个乐队唱了很多歌曲，包括一些我最喜欢的。

Everyone was moved by the film, me included.

每个人都被这部电影感动了，包括我在内。

The price includes both the computers and books.

这个价格包括电脑和书。

辨析：including, included 与 include

①including 介词，位于它所修饰的词之前，意为“包括；包含”，和其后的名词、代词或动名词构成介宾短语。

②included 形容词，常位于名词或代词后，意为“包括在内的”。

③include 及物动词，在句中作谓语，意为“包括，包含”。

考题在线 6 用 include 的适当形式填空

(1)The thief stole everything in my purse, _____ my credit cards.

(2)The price for the hotel _____ breakfast.

(3)There are six people, three women _____.

考题在线答案 1. B 2. B 3. D 4. C 5. (1)Keep studying hard (2)kept on working 6. (1)including (2)includes (3)included

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20 分

(答案见242页)

听力技巧

把握关键，比较判定法（对备选项迅速比较、分析后，抓住可辨别的关键词语，再认真听录音，在理解句子整体意思的基础上，注意听清和把握关键的词语，并依次进行最后的比较、判定。）

听力过程



一、听 Activity 2，完成以下习题

1. Tony's dad's handwriting is _____.
   A. good　　B. bad
   C. wonderful

二、判断正（T）误（F）

2. Tony's father learns Chinese by attending classes.
3. Tony's father finds it difficult to read Chinese.
4. Tony's father thinks Chinese is simpler than English.
5. Tony is good at Chinese.

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见242页)

一、根据句意及首字母或汉语提示写出单词

1. French is a l_____ that is not easy to learn.
2. The boy is so b_____ that he can work out the problems easily.
3. We can say hello _____（无论何时）we meet each other.
4. Audrey Hepburn had put her _____（努力）into ballet training before she entered the film industry.
5. China has a lot of fantastic sights _____（包括） the Great Wall, the Summer Palace and so on.

二、用方框中所给单词的适当形式填空

speak, although, achieve, begin, try

6. After ten years of hard work, the man finally _____ his dream.
7. —What about inviting Mr Li to give us a speech? He's a good public _____.
   —Sounds like a good idea.
8. Uncle Tom encouraged me to keep_____ and not to give up.
9. _____ I forgot to lock the door, Mum wasn't cross with me.
10. Things are usually difficult at the _____.

三、单项选择

11. To the teacher's joy, the student made great _____ this term. [黄石]
    A. result　　B. preparation
    C. suggestion　　D. progress
12. Bike sharing is very useful in our daily life _____ it still has some disadvantages.
    A. unless　　B. because　　C. although
13. —Does Hong Kong Disneyland _____ different parks?
    —Yes, there are four parks in it, _____ Tmorrowland and Fantasyland.
    A. include; including
    B. including; include
    C. include; include
    D. including; including
14. I don't know how long he will continue _____. 【导学号：7764826】
    A. work　　B. to working
    C. working　　D. works
15. Dreams are beautiful. However, to _____ them needs lots of time and work.
    A. discover　　B. find
    C. achieve　　D. stop

基德英语

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 2 We all own English.

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文及导读

原文译文 · 导读　　导读批注

Reading and vocabulary 阅读和词汇

Pre-reading（读前）

Qs:1. Which language do you think is the most widely used language in the world?
2. Which country do you think has the most English learners?

1 Work in pairs. Talk about the photos on the right and on the next page. Say: 结对练习。谈论一下右侧和下一页的照片。说出：

- where they are 它们在哪里
- what languages you can see 你能看到什么语言

2 Read the passage and answer the questions.
读文章并回答问题。

课文朗读

While-reading（读中）

Qs:1. How many people in the world use English?
世界上有多少人使用英语?
2. How did English become an international language?
英语是怎样成为一门国际语言的?
3. When do you think Chinese will become an international language? 你认为汉语什么时候会成为一门国际性的语言?
4. Who owns English? 谁拥有英语?

Who owns ① English? 谁拥有英语?

批 标题：点明中心，由"Who owns English? 谁拥有英语?"可知本文是介绍有关英语的一些信息，标题点明了文章的主旨大意。

❶ English is spoken by about 400 million people, mostly in the US, the UK, Canada, Australia, New Zealand and South Africa. In Ghana, India and Singapore, English is used as a working language, for example, between bosses /bɒsiz/ and secretaries /'sekrətəriz/, and between doctors and ② patients, although there are other languages for everyday use. In China and many other countries, English is the most important foreign language that children learn at school, because when they grow up, it will be quite possible for them to meet people from other countries. They will need a common language to communicate with each other. English is now used by nearly a quarter ③ /'kwɔ:tə/ of the world's population ④, and anywhere you go in the world, there is a good chance that you will meet someone who speaks English. 大约有 4 亿人说英语，主要在美国、英国、加拿大、澳大利亚、新西兰和南非。在加纳、印度和新加坡，尽管日常可以使用其他语言，但英语被用作工作语言，比如，老板和秘书之间，医生和病人之间。在中国和许多其他国家，英语是孩子们在学校中学习的最重

批 体裁：说明文

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

批 文章结构：
递进式
Part 1
Introduction (Para. 1)
↓
Part 2
The causes of its popularity (Para. 2–Para. 3)
↓
Part 3
The future of English (Para. 4)
↓
Part 4
Conclusion (Para. 5)

批 词语赏析：
as common as 和 more and more 充分体现出汉语学习在外国学校的普遍性。

批 句子赏析：
文章结尾为结论，是对题目的回应。

要的外语，因为当他们长大后，他们将很有可能结识来自其他国家的人。他们将需要一种通用的语言来彼此交流。目前使用英语的人几乎占世界总人口的四分之一，并且不管你去世界的哪个角落，很有可能会遇到讲英语的人。

❷ The reason why English is spoken everywhere is that in the nineteenth century, English became the language of world trade. And in the twentieth century, the US spread English to the world through newspapers, television and films. It is now the common language for international travel, science, industry /ˈɪndəstri/ , and recently, information technology and the Internet. 各地都说英语的原因是，在19世纪，英语成为了世界贸易语言。在20世纪，美国通过报纸、电视和电影将英语传播到世界各地。现在它已经成为国际旅游、科学、工业的通用语言，而且近来它也成为信息技术和网络的通用语言。

❸ It is also important to know that English has borrowed many words from other languages, for example, “restaurant” from ⑤ French, “zero” /ˈzɪərəʊ/ from Arabic, “piano” from Italian, and “tofu” from Chinese. 了解英语从其他语言中借用了很多单词也是重要的。比如，来自法语的“restaurant”，来自阿拉伯语的“zero”，来自意大利语的“piano”和来自汉语的“tofu”。

❹ Will the importance of English last? As China continues to grow, many people think that Chinese will become as common as English by the middle of the twenty-first century. More and more schools in Europe are teaching Chinese as a foreign language, together with ⑥ some European languages. However, most people still think that English will be used most around the world, at least for the next twenty or thirty years. 英语的重要性会持续下去吗？随着中国的发展，许多人认为到21世纪中期汉语将变得和英语一样普及。越来越多的欧洲学校在教一些欧洲（国家的）语言的同时，也教授汉语这门外语。然而大多数人仍然认为在接下来的至少二三十年内，英语将是世界上使用最多的语言。

❺ So who owns English? The answer is everyone who speaks it—the British, the Indians /ˈɪndjənz/ and the Chinese all help make it a rich language. Even though we speak different types /taɪps/ of English, we are all part of an international club. We all own English. 那么谁拥有英语呢？答案是每一个说英语的人——英国人、印度人和中国人都促使英语成为一种丰富的语言。尽管我们说着不同种类的英语，但我们都是国际俱乐部的成员，我们都拥有英语。

Post-reading（读后）

写作小练笔 ☞（答案见202页）

3 Match the ideas with the paragraphs. 将观点与段落匹配。

a) Chinese may be the next world language in the future.
汉语将来可能会成为下一门世界语言。□

b) English is the most important international language today.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

英语是当今最重要的国际语言。□

c) English spread through trade and the media. 英语通过贸易和媒体传播。□

d) We all own English. 我们都拥有英语。□

e) English has borrowed many words from other languages. 英语从其他语言中借用了许多单词。□

4 Complete the questions with the words in the box. 用方框中所给单词完成问句。

boss 老板　India 印度　quarter 四分之一　secretary 秘书　zero 零

1. Does a private _____ work for a manager or a teacher?
   一位私人的 _____ 为一位经理还是一位老师工作?
2. Does a(n) _____ look after office workers or work alone?
   一位 _____ 是对办公室工作人员负责还是独自工作?
3. What are the people who live in_____ called?
   居住在 _____ 的人被称为什么?
4. How many times does _____ appear in 1,000 and 1,000,000?
   _____ 在 1 000 和 1 000 000 中出现多少次?
5. If 1.75 billion is a(n) _____ of the world's population, what's the whole population of the world?
   如果 17 亿 5 千万是世界人口的 _____，那么世界的总人口是多少?

Now work in pairs. Ask and answer.
现在结对练习。问与答。

Learning to learn 学会学习

To attract readers' attention, the writer often begins a composition with questions and then answers them. You can do the same when writing your own composition. 为了吸引读者的注意，作者经常以问题开始一篇文章，然后作出回答。当你写作时，你也可以这样做。

Writing 写作

5 Write a composition called *The future of Chinese.* 写一篇名为《汉语的未来》的作文。

- Write notes about the following questions:
  写出有关下列问题的笔记：
  How many people speak Chinese in China?
  在中国有多少人说汉语?
  How many people speak Chinese outside China?Where are they?
  中国以外有多少人说汉语? 他们在哪里?
  Who is learning Chinese outside China?
  在中国以外的地方谁在学习汉语?
  Do you think people will speak Chinese as an international language in the future? Why?
  你认为将来人们会把汉语作为一门国际性的语言来说吗? 为什么?
- Based on your notes, decide if Chinese will become more important in future. Write an introduction to state your point of view.
  以你的笔记为依据，确定汉语在将来是否会变得更重要。写一份简介以陈述你的观点。
- Organise your notes into sentences and paragraphs. Use facts to support your opinions.
  将你的笔记编排成句子和段落。用事实来支持你的观点。
- Finish your composition with a conclusion. 用一个结论完成你的作文。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课文背诵指南

Who owns English?

- **English is the most important foreign language.**
  - spoken by about 400 million people
  - used by nearly a quarter of the world's population
- **English spread through trade and the media.**
  - In the 19th century, English became the language of world trade.
  - In the 20th century, the US spread English to the world.
  - the common language for...
- **English has borrowed many words from other languages.**
  - restaurant: French
  - zero:Arabic
  - piano:Italian
  - tofu:Chinese
- **Chinese may be the next world language in the future.**
  - As China continues to grow...
  - as common as English by the middle of the 21st century
  - teach Chinese as a foreign language
- **We all own English.**
  - Everyone speaks English.
  - help make it a rich language

Ⅱ.课文阅读新题练 专攻中考阅读60分

(答案见242页)

阅读策略

跳读法(跳读法即根据问题信息跳跃性地阅读文章中的某些段落或句子。要有所取舍地跳跃式阅读，目光只停留在那些最有价值的内容上，略过其他次要内容。)

阅读过程

拓展阅读

一、速读文章，选择正确答案

1. What's the main idea of Paragraph 1? (主旨大意题)

_____

_____

二、细读文章，完成下列题目

2. ⊙ How many people in the world use English? (细节查找题)

A. About 40 million people.

B. Nearly a quarter of the world's population.

C. Three quarters of the world's population.

D. Half of the world's population.

3. _____ century, the US spread English to the world through newspapers, television and films. (细节查找题)

A. In the seventeenth

B. In the eighteenth

C. In the nineteenth

D. In the twentieth

4. English is now the common language because _____. (细节查找题)

A. of the growth of the UK

B. it's an easy language to learn

C. it is used in science, industry, the Internet and so on

D. it is sold like an industrial product

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

•考点应用 •考点批注

★Who owns English?

① **own**/əʊn/ *v.* (to have sth. that belongs to you, especially because you have bought it) 拥有

①作形容词意为"自己的"，常用于形容词性物主代词之后，也可用作代词 of one's own 某人自己的；on one's own 独自；单独

e.g. He should own the big farm. 他应该拥有这个大农场。
I saw it with my own eyes. 我亲眼看见的。
She lives on her own. 她一个人生活。

考题在线 1 他拥有自己的房间。
He has a room _____ _____ _____.

②作动词一般不用于进行时，其名词形式为 owner，意为"主人；物主"。

★...English is used as a working language, for example, between bosses and secretaries, and between doctors and patients...

② **between...and...** 在……和……之间

e.g. I'm usually free between Wednesday and Friday.
我通常在周三和周五之间有空。



between

【重点】辨析：between 与 among

between	主要指两者之间，其宾语往往是表示两者的名词或代词。
among	用于三者或三者以上的人或物之间，其宾语通常是一个表示笼统数量或具有复数意义的名词或代词。

e.g. Students have a short break between classes.
学生们课间有个短暂的休息。
They hid themselves among the trees. 他们躲在树林中。



among

考题在线 2 —Do you know the student _____ David and Jack?
— Yeah. It's Jim. [随州]
A. among B. in C. between D. around

点拨：考查介词辨析。句意：——你认识戴维和杰克之间的那个学生吗？——哦，是吉姆。between...and 意为"介于二者之间"，根据空后的 and 一词可知应用 between。

★English is now used by nearly a quarter of the world's population...

敲黑板 分数或百分数作主语时，要根据被修饰或指代的词的单复数决定谓语动词的形式。

③ **quarter** /ˈkwɔːtə/ *n.* (one of four equal parts of sth.) 四分之一

e.g. A quarter of the earth is land. 地球的四分之一是陆地。
Three quarters of the members of this club are girls.
这个俱乐部的成员有四分之三是女孩。

常用短语为"one/a quarter of + 名词"，意为"四分之一的……"，作主语时，谓语动词与 of 后面的名词在数上保持一致。

考题在线 3 用所给词的适当形式填空。
One quarter of the students in this class _____ (come) from the countryside.

考题在线 4 我们班四分之三的学生擅长篮球。
_____ _____ of our classmates are good at basketball.

quarter 还可译为"一刻钟"。
a quarter past seven 7：15
a quarter to seven 6：45

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

④ **population**/ˌpɒpjuˈleɪʃn/ *n.* (all the people who live in a particular area, city or country; the total number of people who live there) 人口；人口数量 → 提问人口多少用 what。

e.g. What's the population of China? 中国的人口是多少?

Singapore has a small population.
新加坡人口少。 → 表示人口的多或少不用 much 或 little，而用 large 或 small。

About seventy percent of the population of China are farmers.
中国约有百分之七十的人口是农民。

The whole world's population was about 1,700 million at that time.
那时，全世界的人口大约是十七亿。

当主语表示"人口的百分之几"时，谓语动词通常用复数形式。

population 常与定冠词 the 连用，作主语时，谓语动词常用第三人称单数形式。

考题在线 5 —Which city has _____ population, Beijing, Guiyang or Xingyi?
—Xingyi, of course.
A .the largest B. the smallest C. the most D. the least
点拨：表示人口数量的多或少用 large 或者 small，这是习惯用法。根据常识可知，兴义的人口肯定没有北京和贵阳的多。

考题在线 6 根据句意及汉语提示写出单词。
The_____（ 人 口 ）of China may increase fast because of the second-child policy（政策）. [泰州]

★**It is also important to know that English has borrowed many words from other languages, for example, "restaurant" from French, "zero" from Arabic, "piano" from Italian, and "tofu" from Chinese.**

敲黑板 borrow 和 lend 都为非延续性动词，不可与一段时间连用，而 keep 则可以。

⑤ **borrow... from...** 向……借……

e.g. You can borrow this dictionary from the library but you can't lend it to others. 你可以从图书馆借这本词典，但你不能借给别人。

① borrow sth. from... 从……借入某物；
② lend sb. sth.= lend sth. to sb. 把某物借给某人。

考题在线 7 根据所给提示，完成句子。
I lent the book to Gina a few days ago.(改为同义句)
Gina _____ the book _____ me a few days ago.

★**More and more schools in Europe are teaching Chinese as a foreign language, together with some European languages.**

⑥ **together with** 连同；同……一起

e.g. He sent me the book, together with a letter.
他将书寄给了我，还附上了一封信。

Jim together with his parents often goes to the movies.
吉姆和他的父母经常去看电影。

当主语后跟有 together with, with, along with 等时，谓语动词的数不受这些词或词组的影响，仍然与其前面的主语保持一致。

考题在线 8 下周四我们打算和我们的老师一起去野餐。 [白银改编]
We are going to have a picnic _____ _____our teachers next Thursday.

考题在线答案 1. of his own 2. C 3. come 4. Three quarters/fourths 5. B 6. population 7. borrowed; from 8. together with

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

核心素养之文化意识

汉语桥

◆ “汉语桥”(Chinese Bridge)是由孔子学院(Confucius Institute)举办的中文比赛，是世界人文交流领域的知名品牌活动，共分为“汉语桥”世界大学生中文比赛、“汉语桥”世界中学生中文比赛和“汉语桥”在华留学生汉语大赛三项比赛。每年一届，由汉语桥比赛组委会进行项目的具体组织和实施。

“汉语桥”中文比赛已成为各国大学生学习汉语、了解中国的重要平台，在中国与世界各国青年之间架起了一座心灵沟通的桥梁。比赛内容包括汉语语言能力、中国国情知识、中国文化技能和综合学习能力。选手们首先在各自国家参加预赛阶段比赛，优胜者应邀来华参加复、决赛阶段比赛。优胜者还将获得相应的来华留学奖学金等奖励。比赛之余，选手们还将参加不同主题、丰富多彩的文化活动。

◆ 【素养行动】观看湖南卫视推出的汉语比赛节目——“汉语桥”，了解外国留学生学习汉语的热情。

◆ 【素养行动结果】汉语桥，连通你我，为世界助力；汉语桥，衔接各国，为和平努力。

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见242页)

一、根据汉语或首字母提示完成句子

1. His _____ (秘书)told him that he had a meeting the next day.
2. She has two new friends and they are _____ (印度人).
3. The _____ (老板) used to support poor children.
4. Three q_____ of the students in Class 2 are from the countryside.
5. How many z_____ are there in the number “1,000,000”?

二、选用适当的介词填空

in, between, as, through, for

6. Chinese will be taught _____ a second language in many countries.
7. What kind of song was very popular _____ the nineteenth century?
8. Miss Liu is sitting _____ Mary and Kate now.
9. It is possible _____ you to finish the work before ten o’clock.
10. You should spread the information of your company _____ newspapers and television.

三、单项选择

11. —Could you please _____ me your notebook,Grace?
—Certainly. Here you are. [烟台]
A. borrow B. to borrow C. lend D. to lend

12. The population of China is much_____ than that of England.
A. larger B. largest C. more D. large

13. The boy _____ a new car. That is, it’s _____ new car.
A. owner; his own B. owns; his own
C. owns; own his D. owner; own his

14. If you want to improve your spoken English, you must speak more_____ English _____ .
A. everyday; everyday
B. everyday; every day
C. every day; every day
D. every day; everyday

15. —The dress is last year’s style.
—I think it still looks perfect _____ it has gone out this year.
A. so that B. as if
C. even though D. ever since

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 3 Language in use

I. 课文原文、译文

Language practice 语言练习

It's also the subject that I'm best at, although my spoken English is not that good. 它（英语）也是我最擅长的学科，尽管我的英语口语没那么好。

I can speak English with you whenever we meet. 无论我们什么时候见面，我都可以和你说英语。

As China continues to grow, many people think that Chinese will become as common as English by the middle of the twenty-first century. 随着中国继续发展，许多人认为到21世纪中期汉语将变得与英语一样普及。

I hope I can continue to make progress next year. 我希望我明年能继续取得进步。

The British, the Indians and the Chinese all help (to) make it a rich language. 英国人、印度人和中国人都帮助它成为一种丰富的语言。

1 Complete the sentences with the words or expressions in the box. There may be more than one answer. 用方框中所给的单词或短语完成句子。可能会有不止一个答案。

after 在……之后　although 尽管
because 因为　before 在……之前
if 如果　so that ①以便 so. . . that. . . 如此……以至于……when 当……时　while 当……时

1. Many Confucius Institutes have been set up around the world _____ more and more people want to learn Chinese.
世界各地建立了许多孔子学院，_____ 越来越多的人想学汉语。

2. French was more popular _____ English became important in the nineteenth century.
英语在19世纪变得重要 _____，法语更受欢迎。

3. I will make great progress _____ you help me learn English. _____ 你帮我学习英语，我将会取得很大进步。

4. Tony finds writing Chinese really difficult, _____ he can understand and speak Chinese pretty well. _____ 托尼能听懂并且能说好汉语，他发现书写汉语真的很难。

5. English spread more quickly all over the world _____ television was invented.
电视被发明 _____，英语在世界各地传播得更快了。

6. I advise ② you to go to an English corner _____ you can improve your listening and speaking. 我建议你去英语角，_____ 你可以提高你的听力与口语。

7. English has become _____ important in international communication_____ schools in China and many other countries teach the language.
英语在国际交流中变得_____ 重要，_____ 中国和许多其他国家的学校都在教这门语言。

8. In order to improve his English, my uncle took every chance to talk to people in Australia _____ he was working there.
我叔叔在澳大利亚工作 _____，为了提高他的英语水平，他抓住一切机会与澳大利亚的人们交谈。

9. I started learning English _____ I was seven years old, right on my birthday.
我七岁 _____，就在我生日那天，我开始学习英语。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets. 用括号中词的正确形式完成句子。

1. Many people want _____ (study) English so they can get a good job.
许多人想_____（学习）英语，这样他们能够获得一份好工作。
2. I asked my teacher _____ (give) me some extra English homework.
我要求我的老师 _____（给）我布置一些额外的英语家庭作业。
3. You need _____ (practise ③) speaking every day if you want to improve your spoken English. 如果你想提高你的英语口语，你需要每天 _____（练习）说英语。
4. Jenny learnt _____ (speak) English well while she was in Canada.
珍妮在加拿大时学习了 _____（说）英语。
5. English is easy _____ (learn) if you practise and revise every day. 如果你每天都练习和复习，英语是容易 _____（学习）的。

3 Work in pairs. Read the remarks and discuss the questions. 结对练习。阅读评论并讨论问题。

Meg has achieved a very high level of English this year. She is a bright and hard-working student, and we are very proud of ④ her at this school. 今年梅格的英语达到了一个很高的水平。她是一个聪明又努力的学生，我们学校的人都为她感到自豪。

Ned needs to make an effort to ⑤ improve his handwriting. All he needs is a few minutes on it every day. If he practises it, his handwriting will certainly improve. 内德需要努力提高他的书写。他所需要的是每天花几分钟练习它，如果他练习的话，他的书写一定会提高。

Toby seems not to be as interested in schoolwork as he is in sport. He will make good progress in all his subjects if he works harder. 托比似乎对功课没有像对体育运动那么感兴趣。如果他更加努力的话，他在所有的科目上都会取得不错的进步。

1. Who has done very well at school?
谁在学校里做得非常好?
2. What does Ned need to do in order to get better at handwriting?
为了在书写上做得更好，内德需要做什么?
3. What does Toby enjoy? Does he like schoolwork as much as this， or less than this? 托比喜欢什么? 他喜欢功课与这一样多，还是比这少?

4 Complete the conversation with the correct form of the words in brackets. 用括号中所给单词的正确形式完成对话。

Teacher: Before we start the lesson, everyone, is there anything you're worried about or need help with? 我们开始上课之前，你们有担心的事情或需要帮助的事情吗，同学们?

Student A: Yes, I'm worried about my handwriting, because it isn't good. 是的，我担心我的书写，因为我的字写得不好。

Teacher: Good handwriting(1)_____ (require) a lot of practice. You need (2) _____ (practise) writing the letters and joining them together. If you work hard, you can (3) _____ (improve) it. Is there anyone else with a problem? 好的书写(1) _____（需要）大量的练习。你需要（2）_____（练习）写字母，并且把它们连接起来。如果你努力学习，你可以(3) _____（提高）它。其他人还有问题吗?

Student B: I want (4) _____ (achieve) higher marks in spelling. It's so difficult! 我想在拼写方面(4) _____（达到）更高的分数。太难了!

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Teacher: Yes, English spelling is difficult. You need to have a good knowledge of the way that words are (5) _____ (write). For example, remember that the word "letter" has double "t" in it. 是的，英语拼写很难。你需要掌握单词（5）_____（写）的方式。比如，记住单词"letter"里有两个"t"。

Student C: I have a question. Can the Internet help us improve our English? 我有一个问题。因特网可以帮助我们提高英语吗？

Teacher: Yes, of course. The Internet has helped (6) _____ (spread) English around the world. There are a lot of good websites that you can learn from. Some of them can even help you practise your (7) _____ (speak) English. Now, instead of worrying, let's go on with ⑥ the lesson. 是的，当然。因特网已经帮助（6）_____（传播）英语到世界各地。你可以从很多好的网站学习英语。有一些网站甚至可以帮助你练习你的（7）_____（说）英语。现在不用担心了，咱们继续上课。

5 Read the passage and choose the correct answer. 阅读文章，选择正确答案。



English was once spoken only by people in a part of Britain. But during the twentieth century, it became a world language—a language used by speakers of many different languages to communicate with each other. 英语曾经只被英国部分地区的人讲。但在20世纪期间，它成为了一种世界语言——一种被很多不同语言的使用者用来彼此交流的语言。

Although it is called a "world language", more than five billion people—most of the people on the earth—do not speak English as either their first or ⑦ second language. However, hundreds of millions of people use it, and hundreds of millions are learning it. 尽管它被称为"世界语言"，但是地球上大多数的人，有超过50亿人没有将英语作为他们的母语或第二语言。然而，成亿的人在使用它，并且成亿的人正在学习它。

Because so many people learn and use English, it may be hard to imagine that one day English may not be the world's leading language. Remember that there were other important languages in the past which lost their importance or even disappeared. In Europe, Latin was used as a common language for many centuries before people stopped using it. French was once a language known by all well-educated people, and was more popular than English. But since the nineteenth century, English has become more popular than French. 因为如此多的人学习和使用英语，所以很难想象有一天英语可能不是世界的主导语言了。要记住在过去有其他重要的语言，它们失去了自己的重要性或甚至消失了。在欧洲，拉丁语在被人们停止使用之前，它被用作一种普及的语言长达多个世纪。法语曾经被所有受过良好教育的人们所熟知，它曾经比英语更受欢迎。但是，自从19世纪以来，英语变得比法语更受欢迎。

Today, many people who want to learn a new language are learning Chinese, Spanish or Arabic. It may be that, one day, instead of English, another language will be used across the world. 如今，许多想学习一门新语言的人正在学习汉语、西班牙语或阿拉伯语。或许有一天另一种语言将会代替英语，在全世界被使用。

1. In the past, people living in _____ spoke English. 在过去，生活在 _____ 的人讲英语。
   a) all of Britain 全英国
   b) a part of Britain 英国部分地区
   c) all of France 全法国
   d) most of the world 世界大部分地区
2. English is a world language because _____. 英语是一门世界语言，因为 _____。
   a) five billion people speak it 50亿人说英语

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

b)many people are learning it 许多人在学习英语

c)people stopped speaking Latin 人们不再说拉丁语

d)speakers of many different languages use it 许多说不同语言的人说英语

3. People find it difficult to imagine that _____. 人们发现很难想象 _____。

a) French was more important than English 法语曾经比英语更重要

b) English will always be important 英语会一直重要

c) English might be less important in future 将来英语可能不太重要了

d) Latin was used as a common language for many centuries 拉丁语被用作一种普及语言长达多个世纪

4. Many people today are learning _____. 如今许多人正在学习 _____ 。

a) Chinese, Spanish or French 汉语、西班牙语或法语

b) Chinese, Latin or English 汉语、拉丁语或英语

c) Chinese, English or Latin 汉语、英语或拉丁语

d) Chinese, Spanish or Arabic 汉语、西班牙语或阿拉伯语

6 Listen and decide what the passage is about. 听录音，并判断文章是关于什么的。

a) An English learning website. 一个英语学习网站。

b) An English magazine. 一本英语杂志。

c) An English language teacher. 一位英语老师。

课文听力

7 Listen again and answer the questions. 再听一遍录音，回答问题。

1. What can most students easily find to practise their English?
   大多数的学生能容易地找到什么方法去练习他们的英语?
2. What has been developed to help students get the practice they need?
   什么已经被研发来帮助学生得到他们需要的练习?
3. Why can students get a lot of speaking practice? 为什么学生能得到大量口语练习?
4. Do students need to use an Internet program, if they want to join the course?
   如果学生想加入这门课程，他们需要使用一种网络程序吗?

Around the world 世界各地

An invented language 一种被发明的语言

Since the twelfth century, people have been inventing languages, in the hope that a world language would ease human communication. Only one of these invented languages has enjoyed any success, though. It is called Esperanto. It was invented by a Polish man named Zamenhof. His language is based on Latin, German and Greek vocabulary. Each letter always makes the same sound, and the grammar rules are simple. 自 12 世纪以来，人们一直在发明语言，希望一门世界语言将会使人类沟通容易些。但是在这些被发明的语言中，只有一种被发明的语言小有成就。它叫世界语，是由一个叫柴门霍夫的波兰人发明的。他的语言以拉丁语、德语和希腊语的词汇为基础。每个字母总是发同一个音，语法规则也很简单。

Although Esperanto is spoken by about two million people and a thousand of them have learnt it as a first language, it is unlikely to become a world language. 尽管大约 200 万人说世界语，且他们中有 1 000 人已将它作为母语来学，但它不可能成为一门世界语言。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Module task: Making a list of tips for learning English 模块任务：列出学英语的建议清单

8 Work in groups. Talk about what problems you have in learning English.

小组活动。谈论一下你们在英语学习中遇到的问题。

- listening 听力
- speaking 口语
- reading 阅读
- writing 写作
- vocabulary 词汇
- grammar 语法
- cultural knowledge 文化知识

9 Give tips for solving the problems.

给出解决问题的建议。

10 Make a list of the tips and put them on a poster for others to read.

将这些建议列表，并将它们呈现在海报上供其他人阅读。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

·考点批注　·考点应用

★so that

① so that 以便；所以

e.g. We started early in the morning so that we could avoid the traffic jam.

我们早上早出发以便避开交通阻塞。

I got up early so that/in order that I could catch the early bus. =I got up early so as to/in order to catch the early bus.

我早起以便能赶上早班公共汽车。

He drove so carelessly that he almost lost his life.

他开车如此粗心以至于差点丧命。

He was so weak that he could not walk.

=He was too weak to walk. 他太虚弱了，以至于不能走路。

① so that 引导目的状语从句时，从句中往往含有像 can/could/may/might/will/would 等的情态动词。

② 由 so that 和 in order that 引导的目的状语从句，若主句和从句的主语一致，则可转换为“简单句 +so as to/in order to do sth.”。

③ 在“so+ 形容词 / 副词 +that 从句”结构中，如果结果状语从句表示否定意义，可转换成“too...to...”结构。

考题在线 1 —What a mess! The sharing bikes are thrown everywhere.

—Let's collect and put them in the right place _____ they can be used conveniently. [东营]

A. unless　B. so that

C. because　D. so long as

方法真题练

点拨：用词义辨析法解题。unless“除非”；so that“目的是，为了”；because“因为”；so long as“只要”。由“What a mess！”可知：把单车放到合适的位置是为了方便使用。

★I advise you to go to an English corner _____ you can improve your listening and speaking.

advise sb. (not) to do sth. 建议某人（不要）做某事

advise 后接名词、代词或动名词作宾语。

② advise /ədˈvaɪz/ *v.* 建议

e.g. My father advises me not to watch TV too much.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

我爸爸建议我不要看过多的电视节目。

考题在线 2 将下面汉语句子译成英语。

父亲经常建议我多读有教育意义的书。(advise...to...) [滨州]

_____

★advice 不可数名词，意为“建议”。常用搭配：
① a/one piece of advice 一条建议
② give sb. some advice 给某人一些建议
③ ask for advice 征求建议

★**You need _____ (practise) speaking every day if you want to improve your spoken English.**

③ **practise** *vt.* 练习

e. g. He practises playing the piano every day.

他每天练习弹钢琴。

practise 为及物动词，其后可接名词、代词或动词-ing形式。

Piano-playing needs a lot of practice.

钢琴弹奏需要很多练习。

practice 既可作动词，又可作名词。

考题在线 3 These foreigners are practicing _____ Chinese. [遂宁]

A. to speak B. speaking C. speak D. speaks

★**She is a bright and hard-working student, and we are very proud of her at this school.**

敲黑板 be proud of 与 take pride in 同义，可进行同义句转换。

④ **be proud of** 为……而自豪；以……为荣

e.g. Each mother is proud of her kid.

每个母亲都以自己的孩子为骄傲。

proud 形容词，意为“自豪的”，其后可接动词不定式或宾语从句。

She is proud to be a nurse. 她为自己是一名护士而自豪。

I'm proud that I have passed every test this year.

我为今年通过了每一场考试而自豪。

考题在线 4 根据句子意思，及括号中所给汉语提示填空。

Our country is becoming stronger and stronger and I'm _____ of her. (自豪的) [扬州]

★**Ned needs to make an effort to improve his handwriting.**

⑤ **make an effort to do sth.** 努力去做某事

e.g. We must make an effort to help protect the environment.

我们必须做出努力来帮助保护环境。

make an effort 意为“作出努力”，不定冠词 an 还可根据情况换成 every, no 等限定词，但不能没有限定词。

★**Now, instead of worrying, let's go on with the lesson.**

⑥ **go on with sth.** 继续做某事

【重点】辨析：go on with sth. ,go on doing sth. 与 go on to do sth.

短语	意义	所做的事情
go on with sth.	继续做某事	同一件事（中间有停顿）
go on doing sth.	继续做某事	同一件事（中间无停顿）
go on to do sth.	接着做另一件事	不同的事

e.g. That's enough for now—let's go on with it tomorrow.

现在就到这里——我们明天再继续吧。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Go on listening to the teacher carefully.

继续认真听老师讲课。（刚才就是在听老师讲课）

Go on to listen to the teacher carefully.

接着认真听老师讲课。（刚才也许在做作业）

考题在线 5 他喝了一杯茶，又继续讲故事。

He took a cup of tea, and _____ _____ _____ the story.

★**Although it is called a "world language", more than five billion people—most of the people on the earth—do not speak English as either their first or second language.**

either...or... 用来连接两个并列成分。当连接两个并列主语时，谓语动词的数要与靠近的主语保持一致，即遵循"就近原则"。

有相同用法的短语：

neither...nor... 既不……也不……

not only...but also... 不仅……而且……

⑦ **either…or…** 或者……或者……；要么……，要么……

e.g. You can either go swimming or play tennis. 你可以去游泳或者打网球。

Either you or he is wrong. 不是你错就是他错。

考题在线 6 — How do you like the two pairs of shoes?

— They don't fit me. They are _____ too big _____ too small. [齐齐哈尔]

A. not only; but also　　B. neither; nor　　C. either; or

点拨：用逻辑推理法解题。考查连词的用法。not only… but also… 意为"不仅…… 而且……"；"neither… nor…"意为"既不…… 也不……"；"either…or…"意为"要么……要么……"。由上句"它们不适合我"可推知题干句意"它们要么太大，要么太小。"

★**His language is based on Latin, German and Greek vocabulary.**

be based on 是动词短语 base...on... 的被动语态形式，表示状态，且 on 可以用 upon 来替换。

⑧ **be based on** 基于；以……为根据 / 基础

e.g. This opera is based on a true event in Chinese history.

这部歌剧是根据中国历史上一个真实的事件创作的。

考题在线 7 Believe me, and you should follow Tom as what he said is based _____ facts.

A. in　　B. on　　C. with　　D. by

★**Although Esperanto is spoken by about two million people and a thousand of them have learnt it as a first language, it is unlikely to become a world language.**

be (un) likely to do sth. 意为"（不）可能做某事"，其主语既可以是人也可以是物。可以与"It's (un) likely +that 从句"相互转化。

⑨ **be unlikely to do sth.** 不大可能做某事

e. g. I'm unlikely to finish it within a week. (=It's unlikely that I finish it within a week.) 我不大可能在一周内把它做完。

Plane tickets are likely to be expensive. (=It's likely that plane tickets are expensive.)

飞机票可能很贵。

考题在线答案　1. B　2. Father often advises me to read more educational books.　3. B　4. proud　5. went on with　6. C　7. B

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 模块语法沙龙

夺取中考语法满分

状语从句和不定式

考点1 状语从句

考向：【重点】状语从句的分类及用法

时间状语从句	常由 when, while, as soon as, before, after 等引导。当主句为一般将来时时，从句用一般现在时表将来。	I will call you as soon as I come here. 我一来到这里就给你打电话。
原因状语从句	常由 as, because, since 引导。	Our teacher is angry because you are late. 因为你迟到了，所以我们老师很生气。
条件状语从句	常由 if,unless 引导。当主句为一般将来时时，从句用一般现在时表将来。	We will stay at home if it snows tomorrow. 如果明天下雪，我们将呆在家里。
比较状语从句	常由 as, than 等词引导。	I'm as tall as you. 我和你一样高。He is cleverer than her. 他比她聪明。
结果状语从句	常由 so. . . that, such. . . that 引导。	He is such a good boy that many people like him. 他是个如此好的男孩，以至于许多人都喜欢他。
目的状语从句	常由 so that, in order that 引导。	Please be quick in order that we can get there on time. 请快一点儿以便我们能准时到达那儿。
让步状语从句	常由 although, though, even though,even if 等词引导。	Although we are poor, we are very happy. 虽然我们很穷，但是我们很快乐。
地点状语从句	常由 where 引导。	There are plenty of sheep where I live. 我住的地方有很多羊。
方式状语从句	常由 as, as if, as though 引导。	When in Rome, do as the Romans do. 入乡随俗。

考题在线1 He could find the way home _____ he was only three years old.[重庆]

A. though　　B. because

C. where　　D. if

点拨：考查连词辨析。句意：他能找到回家的路，尽管他只有三岁。前后句之间是让步关系，应用 though 引导让步状语从句。

考题在线2 The doctor looks tired and sleepy _____ he stayed up late to look after his patients yesterday. [贵阳]

A. because　　B. if　　C. unless

点拨：用词义辨析法解题。because 因为；if 如果；unless 如果不。“这个医生看上去又累又困”和“他昨天熬到很晚为了照看他的病人”之间构成因果关系，故用 because 构成原因状语从句。

考题在线3 Hawking is no longer with us _____ he will continue to inspire the world. [扬州]

A. so　　B. if

C. but　　D. as

点拨：考查连词辨析。so 因此，表示“结果”；if 如果，表示“假设”；but 但是，表示“转折”；as 因为，由于，表示“原因”。根据句意可知前后两个分句间应该是转折关系。

知识微课

考点2 不定式

考向1：不定式的语法功能

功能	用法	例句
作主语	不定式作主语时，谓语动词用第三人称单数，有时为了保持句子平衡，常用 it 作形式主语，而把不定式后置。	It's easy to play chess. =To play chess is easy. 下象棋很容易。
作宾语	不定式作宾语，跟在及物动词后面。常见的动词有 want, decide, expect 等。	I want to know her. 我想认识她。
作宾语补足语	宾语补足语放在宾语后面，补充说明宾语的状况。	He asked me to clean the room. 他让我打扫房间。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

作表语	放在系动词之后，一般用来表示主语的具体内容、目的等。	My job is to teach English. 我的工作是教英语。
作定语	不定式作定语要放在被修饰词的后面。	There is a warm room to live in. 有间温暖的房间可以住。
作状语	不定式作状语表示目的、原因、结果等。	I come to visit you. 我来拜访你。
特殊结构	不定式可以与疑问词 when,how, where, which 等构成一类特殊的结构，在句中作主语、宾语、表语等。	I don't know how to do it. 我不知道怎样做这件事。

考题在线 4 Michael visits many websites _____ about Chinese culture. [吉林]

A. learn B. learned

C. to learn

点拨：考查非谓语动词。句意：迈克尔浏览了很多网站去学习中国文化。动词不定式 to learn 在句中作目的状语。

考题在线 5 — Mr Wu has recommended many books. Have you decided _____ first?

— Yes. *The Little Prince*. [扬州]

A. how to read B. which to read

C. when to read D. where to read

点拨：考查“特殊疑问词＋动词不定式”的结构。前文 many books 提示用 which 和动词不定式连用，表示“读哪一本”，which 作动词 read 的宾语。

考向 2: 不定式的两种结构

否定结构： not+ 不定式

复合结构：It's+*adj*. +for/of+sb. + 不定式 .

Tell her not to make a noise.

告诉她不要吵闹。

It's important for us to keep fit.

对我们来说保持健康很重要。

考题在线 6 — Would you like to go swimming with me, Tom?

— Sorry, but our teachers always tell us _____ in the river. [咸宁]

A. don't swim

B. not swimming

C. not to swim

D. to not swim

考题在线 7 It's necessary for us_____ English well. [怀化]

A. to learn B. learning

C. learn

考题在线答案 1. A 2. A 3. C 4. C 5. B 6. C 7. A

Ⅳ. 写作一课一法 夺取中考写作 20分

写作小练笔

English is the most important international language today.

English is spoken by about 400 million people. It is now used by nearly a quarter of the world's population.

English spread through trade and the media.

In the 19th century, English became the language of world trade. And in the 20th century, the US spread English to the world through newspapers, television and films.

English has borrowed many words from other languages.

It is also important to know that English has borrowed many words from other languages, for example, "tofu" from Chinese.

Chinese may be the next world language in the future.

As China continues to grow, Chinese will become as common as English by the middle of the twenty-first century.

We all own English.

Even though we speak different types of English, we are all part of an international club. We

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

all own English.

模块话题

假设你是李华，你们学校正在对本校学生英语学习的情况进行调查，并征求同学们对英语教学的建议。请按下表提示，用英语写一篇短文，谈谈你的英语学习情况以及你对老师教学的建议。

项目	内容
你对英语的认识	1. 英语是世界上使用最广泛的语言； 2. 英语有助于了解世界上不同的文化； ……
你目前的英语水平	1. 能用英语与同学进行简单的交流； 2. 喜欢演讲，去年在演讲比赛中获奖； ……
你在英语学习中存在的问题	1. 不能正确地运用语法规则； 2. 写作中有时不能清楚地表达自己； ……
你对英语教学的建议	……（考生自己发挥，至少一点）

要求：

1. 词数100左右。开头和结尾已给出，不计入总词数。
2. 所写内容必须包括表格中所提供的信息，并可作适当的发挥。
3. 不得出现真实的人名、校名、地名等相关信息。

I am Li Hua. _____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

I hope our school will consider my advice.

审题指导（把握中心，得方向分）

1. 题目要求的是"我"的英语学习情况以及"我"对老师教学的建议，故主体人称为"I"。
2. 议论文通常用一般现在时为其主体时态。

写作技法（学会方法，巧得高分）

"推进法"写语言学习类作文

"推进法"就是按照提示围绕对英语学习话题进行步步展开：第一步，表达对英语的认识→第二步，介绍目前的水平→第三步，指出存在的问题→第四步，提出个人建议。

写作模板（学会套路，得基本分）

"推进法"写语言学习类作文

- 表达认识：I think English is...English helps us ...English can also help us ...And speaking more English can...
- 介绍水平：At present I can communicate with...I won...And I believe that I should be able to...when I ...
- 指出问题：However,I have some problems ... I can't use...Sometimes I can't express...I often find...
- 提出建议：At last, I have some suggestions for...I think...I also advise...

经典词句（妙用句式，得出彩分）

单词	widely, help, improve, win, believe, however, express, advise
短语	at present, be able to, communicate with,as well,change. . . into. . .
句子	1. Speaking more English can improve our confidence. 2. I often find it hard to remember more difficult words. 3. I think teachers should communicate with us in English when they are in class.

范文赏析（书写工整，得印象分）

I am Li Hua. Here are some of my thoughts about English. I think English is the most widely used language in the world. English helps us understand different cultures in the world. English can also help us improve our communication skills. And speaking more English can improve our confidence.

禁德基

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

This is my English level at present. At present I can communicate with my classmates in English simply. I also like speeches. I won the prize in the speech contest last year. And I believe that I should be able to talk with others correctly when I go to a western country.

However, I have some problems in learning English. I can't use the grammar rules correctly. Sometimes I can't express myself clearly in writing. I often find it hard to remember more difficult words.

At last, I have some suggestions for English teaching as well. I think teachers should communicate with us in English when they are in class. I also advise that English teachers should change difficult things into simple things.

I hope our school will consider my advice.

名师点评：本文用"推进法"写语言学习感受及看法，层次清晰，语言丰富。第一，表达认识，巧妙运用"I think..."句式和help, improve表达了自己的看法；第二，介绍水平，很好地运用了can, be able to表达能力的词汇及believe复合句，彰显作者扎实的基本功；第三，指出问题，用however使话锋一转点明了作者在学习过程中遇到的问题和困惑；第四，提出建议，作者对should, advise等表达建议词汇的合理运用使文章更加出彩。



V. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础20分

(答案见243页)

一、单项选择

1. The story is based _____ his real life.

A. on　　B. in

C. for　　D. of

2. We advise parents _____their children at home alone in order to keep them away from danger.

A. not leave　　B. not to leave

C. leave　　D. to leave

3. If we don't finish painting the kitchen today, we can go on _____ it tomorrow.

A. for　　B. in

C. to　　D. with

4. Today,WeChat(微 信)becomes very popular, and more and more people like to use it to _____ each other. [菏泽]

A. depend on

B. communicate with

C. believe in

5. There's no ticket left for Lang Lang's piano concert. _____ you _____ your sister can go to it. [苏州]

A. Both; and

B. Not only; but also

C. Either; or

D. Neither; nor

二、语法专练

6. The students were singing happily _____ I passed the school hall. [福建]

A. when　　B. unless

C. though

7. —Jim, let's go out to play basketball.

—Oh, I won't do that _____ I finish my homework. [大庆]

A. if　　B. until

C. because　　D. since

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

8. _____ we continue to kill elephants for their ivory, we humans will lose them in the end. [昆明]

A. If　　B. Before

C. Until　　D. Although

9. —Would you like _____ a film with us tonight?

—Sorry, I have to help my mother do housework. [大庆]

A. see　　B. to see

C. seeing　　D. to seeing

10. Mr. Zhou is good at cooking and he has decided_____his own restaurant. [上海]

A. open　　B. opened

C. to open　　D. opening

三、模块知识浓缩

continue　a quarter of　trade　even though
common　together with　grow up
the reason why. . .　borrow. . . from. . .
spread

English is spoken by about 400 million people in many countries. In China and many other countries, it's the most important foreign language that children learn at school, because when they _____[11], they need it to communicate with people from other countries. English is now used by about _____[12] the world's population.

_____[13] English is popular is that in the 19th century, it became the language of world _____[14]. In the 20th century, the US _____[15] English to the world. It's also important to know that English_____ many words _____[16] other languages. But many people think that if China _____[17] to grow, Chinese will become as _____[18] as English by the middle of the 21st century. Now more and more schools in Europe are teaching Chinese as a foreign language, _____[19] some European languages.

We are all part of an international club _____[20] we speak different types of English.



No cross, no crown.
不经历风雨，怎能见彩虹。

禁 德 基

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Module 8 My future life

词汇表听写

魔法六维导图

高频单词

- 名词：handbag, beat, pancake, rose, kindness, bedside, note
- 动词：intend, fetch
- 代词：whom
- 形容词：disappointed

重点短语：laugh at//give up//try one's best//thanks to//make a living

常考句型

1. They look happy, don't they?
2. Here's to...
3. Don't be silly.
4. I'm very proud +that 从句
5. try one's best to do sth.

模块语法：宾语从句和定语从句

知识小集

通过对 Unit 1 Activity 3 的学习，想象毕业聚会的场景，感受友谊的甜美和重要；通过对 Unit 2 Activity 1 的学习，了解毕业演讲稿的篇章结构：导入—表达感谢—结语，培养学生的感恩意识，抒发自己的情感。

文化意识

学习英语的过程中，尽可能不要翻译，用比照、联想、归类或归纳的办法来了解句式，理解句子和文章。

英语思维

语言能力

- 听：听对话，学会获取信息（母子讨论毕业晚会详情 Unit 1 Activity 2）
- 说：能听懂有关离别的谈话，通过听录音判断说话人的情感态度。能发表感言及介绍自己未来的打算；熟练掌握 Pardon? I hope so. Good for you! Here's to...Cheers! 等日常交际用语。（Unit 1 Activity 3）
- 读：能读懂有关毕业离别的发言稿，判断说话人的感受，能就此话题进行写作，谈谈对过去的感受和对未来学习生活的向往。（Unit 2 Activity 1）
- 写：学会写学校生活回顾及向往类作文

方法大观

- 听力技巧：听中大胆预测法（212 页）
- 阅读策略：词义猜测法（217 页）
- 写作技法：“三段式法”写学校生活回顾及向往类作文（228 页）
- 解题方法：语法分析法（227 页），词义辨析法（211,219,243 页），词语辨析法（243 页），语境法（243 页）

学习能力

观看电影《致青春》《舞出我人生》，来一起重温美好的校园时代；网上搜集英汉对译的毕业祝福语和有关 friendship 的英语谚语，拓展知识面；了解中外有关成人礼的信息或文章。

记忆大师

Unit 1

必背单词

1. **beat** *n.* 节拍；拍子 →beat *v.* 击败 →beat（过去式）→beaten（过去分词）
2. **intend** *v.* 计划；打算 →intend to do sth. 计划干某事
3. **fetch** *v.*（去）取来；拿来 →fetches（第三人称单数形式）
4. **handbag** *n.*（女用）小提包
5. **pardon** *int.*［口］对不起，请原谅
6. **pancake** *n.* 薄烤饼；薄煎饼

必背短语

7. refuse to do sth. 拒绝做某事
8. a bit 有点儿
9. intend to do sth. 打算做某事
10. even if 即使
11. come on 加油；快点
12. make a speech 做演讲

必背句子

13. I **hope so.**
    希望如此。
14. Good **for** you! 你真行！

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

15. Let's **raise** our glasses.
大家举杯。

16. **Here's to** our friendship, everyone... and to the future!
每个人，为友谊……为我们的未来干杯！

Unit 2

必背单词

1. **kindness** *n.* 善举；好意 →kind *adj.* 和蔼的；善良的 →kindly *adv.* 和蔼地
2. **disappointed** *adj.* 失望的；沮丧的 →disappointing 令人失望的
3. **whom** *pron.* ……的人，那个人，那些人 →whom *pron.* 谁（who 的宾格）
4. **rose** *n.* 玫瑰；蔷薇
5. **bedside** *n.* 床边；床头
6. **note** *n.* 短笺；便条

必背短语

7. give sth. to sb. 把某物给某人
8. laugh at 嘲笑
9. invite sb. to do sth. 邀请某人干某事
10. give up 放弃
11. try one's best 尽力
12. fast enough 足够快
13. not only... but also 不但……而且
14. wake up 醒来

必背句子

15. I'm very proud that you have **chosen** me to **speak** to you today.
今天我很自豪你们能选我为大家做演讲。

16. These three things are **friendship, effort** and **trust.**
这三样东西是友谊、努力和信任。

17. So, **let me say** "*xiexie*" again to all of you **for** your help.
所以，允许我再次对你们大家的帮助说一声"谢谢"。

18. **I'm sure** that you all have your own **memories** about the **happiness** of the last three years.
我确信，你们大家都有自己的关于过去三年的幸福记忆。

Unit 3

必背短语

1. be excited about... 对……感到激动
2. take photos 拍照
3. modern society 现代社会
4. be interested in... 对……感兴趣
5. all over the world 全世界，世界各地

必背句子

6. I **hope** that all of us will **remember each other.**
我希望我们大家将会记住彼此。

7. Don't **be silly**, Tony!
别开玩笑了，托尼！

8. Now, he learns **how to repair** machines.
现在，他在学习如何修理机器。

必背语法

9. I know **that you will be better at maths.**
我知道你将更擅长数学。

10. Finger food is the food **that/which we eat with our fingers.**
手抓食物就是用手拿着吃的食物。

Time is like the water in the sponge, if you like, it can always be squeezed out.
时间像海绵里的水，要挤总是挤得出来的。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 1 Here's to our friendship!

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

Listening and vocabulary 听力与词汇

1 Look at the picture and answer the questions. 看图，回答问题。

1. What is the special event? 特别活动是什么?
2. What is everybody doing? 大家在做什么?

2 Listen and answer the questions.

听录音并回答问题。

课文听力

1. Where is Betty going tonight? 贝蒂今晚要去哪里?
2. What are Betty and Tony going to do? 贝蒂和托尼打算做什么?
3. Why does Betty refuse① to eat before she leaves? 贝蒂在离开之前为什么拒绝吃东西?

3 Listen and read. 听一听，读一读。

Betty: You look lovely, Lingling!
你看上去很可爱，玲玲!

Lingling: Thanks, you look great too. That's a nice handbag/ˈhændˌbæg/. 谢谢，你看上去也很漂亮。那个手提包很好看。

Betty: It's my mother's. Are you enjoying the party? 这是我妈妈的。你喜欢这个聚会吗?

Lingling: Yes, I am, but I feel a bit sad. I don't know when we'll be back in this hall together again. I'm going to miss you all. 是的，喜欢，不过我觉得有点儿伤感。不知道什么时候我们再次在这个大厅相聚。我会想念你们大家的。

Tony: Yes, we'll all miss each other.
是的，我们都会想念彼此的。

Lingling: Hey, Tony. You've hung international flags on the walls! They make the hall look wonderful. 嘿，托尼，你在墙上挂起了各国的国旗！它们使大厅看起来非常棒。

Tony: They look OK, don't they?② Listen to the music. It's got a great beat③/biːt/! 它们看起来还不错，不是吗? 听音乐。节奏太棒了!

Betty: Pardon/ˈpɑːdn/? Oh, yes, but it's a bit noisy. 能再说一遍吗？哦，是的，但有点吵。

Lingling: Do you intend④/ɪnˈtend/ to stay in China for long, Tony?
托尼，你打算在中国呆很久吗?

Tony: I hope so. And even if I go back to the UK, I'll come back and visit you all.
希望如此。即使我回到了英国，我也会回来看你们大家的。

Lingling: What about you, Betty? 你呢，贝蒂?

Betty: I'll finish my high school education here, but I want to go back to my home town one day. What are your plans, Daming? 我要在这里完成我的高中学业，但是总有一天我想回我的家乡。你有什么计划，大明?

Daming: I want to become... an English teacher! 我想成为……一名英语教师!

Tony: Good for you! Come on! Let's fetch⑤/fetʃ/ something to eat. What's on the menu? 你真行！加油！我们去拿些吃的东西吧。菜单上有什么?

Betty: How about a hot dog? Or some pancakes/ˈpænˌkeɪks/? And we've got some apple juice. 来个热狗怎么样? 或者来些薄烤饼? 我们有一些苹果汁。

Tony: Let's raise⑥ our glasses. Here's to⑦ our friendship, everyone... and to the future!
大家举杯，为友谊……为我们的未来干杯!

All: Cheers! 干杯!

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Betty: And now, excuse me. I must make a speech! 现在，不好意思，我必须发表演讲了！

Everyday English 日常英语

- Pardon? 能再说一遍吗？
- I hope so. 希望如此。
- Good for you! 你真行！
- Here's to. . .(敬酒时说) 为……干杯
- Cheers! 干杯！

Now complete the notes. 现在完成笔记。

Their feelings *enjoyed the party; a bit sad*
他们的感受 喜欢聚会；有点儿伤感

The hall 大厅 _____

The music 音乐 _____

Their plans 他们的计划 _____

The food and drink 食物和饮料 _____

4 Read the passage again and answer the questions. 再读一遍文章，回答问题。

1. Why is Lingling sad? 玲玲为什么伤感?
2. What makes the hall look wonderful?
   什么使大厅看起来很棒?
3. What do they think of the music?
   他们认为音乐怎么样?
4. What are Tony's plans? 托尼有什么计划?
5. What is on the menu? 菜单上有什么?
6. What do they wish for when they raise their glasses? 他们举杯时，祝愿什么?

5 Complete the questions with the words in the box. 用方框中的单词完成问句。

future 将来　intend 打算　pancake 薄烤饼
pardon 对不起，请原谅

1. If you say_____, does it mean "Please say that again" or "I'm sorry"?
   如果你说 _____，指的是"请再说一遍"还是"对不起"？
2. Do you think a(n) _____ is something to eat or something to drink? 你认为一个 _____ 是吃的东西还是喝的东西呢?
3. If you _____ to do something, do you want to do it or not? 如果你_____做某事，你是想做还是不想做?
4. Do you think the _____ will be better than the past?
   你认为_____将会比过去更好吗?

Now work in pairs. Ask and answer.
现在结对练习。问和答。

Pronunciation and speaking 发音与会话

6 Listen and mark the pauses.
听录音，在停顿处做标记。

I'll finish my high school education here, but I want to go back to my home town one day. What are your plans, Daming? 我要在这里完成我的高中学业，但是总有一天我想回我的家乡。你有什么计划，大明?

Now listen again and repeat.
现在再听一遍，然后重复。

7 Read and mark the pauses.
朗读，然后标出停顿的地方。

Let's raise our glasses. Here's to our friendship, everyone... and to the future! 大家举杯，为了友谊……为我们的未来，干杯！

Now listen and check. 现在听并检查。

8 Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions.
结对练习。问答问题。

1. What are your plans and hopes for the future? 你未来的计划和愿望是什么?
2. Are you going to have a school-leavers' party?
   你要举办毕业生聚会吗?
3. What will you do on your holiday?
   假期你将要做什么?
4. Will you miss your friends and classmates? Why or why not?
   你会想念你的朋友和同班同学吗? 为什么或为什么不?

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

·考点批注　·考点应用

refuse 作及物动词时其后可接名词、代词或动词不定式作宾语，refuse to do sth. 意为“拒绝做某事”。

★Why does Betty refuse to eat before she leaves?

① **refuse**/rɪˈfjuːz/ *v.* (to say that you will not do sth. that sb. has asked you to do) 拒绝；回绝

e.g. I refused his help. 我拒绝了他的帮助。

Everyone refuses to answer my question. 大家都拒绝回答我的问题。

考题在线 1 Vivian refuses _____ her children to the weekend training centre for extra classes. [上海]

A. to send　B. sending　C. sent　D. sends

★They look OK, don't they?

②反意疑问句的用法

e.g. —He is a teacher, isn't he? 他是一位老师，不是吗？

—Yes, he is. 是的，他是。陈述部分（肯定），附加问句（否定）

—Your sister doesn't like swimming, does she?

你妹妹不喜欢游泳，是吗？陈述部分（否定），附加问句（肯定）

—No, she doesn't. 是的，她不喜欢。

在反意疑问句中，若陈述部分有 no, nothing, seldom, few, hardly, never 等表示否定含义的词，附加问句部分要用肯定形式。

He is never late for school, is he?

他上学从不迟到，是吗？

there be 句型后的附加问句要用“be 的相应形式 +there”。

There isn't an apple on the table, is there?

桌子上没有苹果，是吗？

Let's go shopping this afternoon, shall we?

今天下午我们去购物吧，好吗？从 let's 开头的祈使句，附加问句部分要用“shall we”；从 let us 开头，附加问句部分用“will you”。

肯定形式的祈使句，附加问句部分用“will you”或“won't you”。否定形式的祈使句，附加问句部分用“will you”。

Don't eat in class, will you?

不要上课吃东西，好吗？

考题在线 2 —Wang Bin has never stopped smoking, _____ he?

—_____, he hasn't. Although his wife always advises him not to. [安顺]

A. has; Yes　B. hasn't; Yes

C. has; No　D. hasn't; No

beat 用法总结：
作名词，表示“节拍；拍子”。
作动词，表示“连续击打”。
作动词，表示“击败”。

★It's got a great beat!

③ **beat**/biːt/ *n.* (the main rhythm, or a unit of rhythm, in a piece of music, a poem,etc.) 节奏；节拍

e.g. Can you follow the beat of rock music?

你能跟上摇滚乐的节拍吗？

知识微课

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Who is beating the drums? 谁在击鼓？

If we don't prepare for the speech contest, they will beat us.

如果我们不为这场演讲比赛做准备的话，他们就会打败我们。

考题在线 3 —Great! Our women's volleyball team _____ the gold medal in Rio Olympic Games on Saturday.

—Yes. We see the great spirit of Chinese women's volleyball team once again. [襄阳]

A. won B. beat C. lost D. missed

点拨：用词义辨析法解题。win“赢得”，其宾语应是“比赛、奖牌”；beat“打败、战胜（某人或某集体）”；lose“丢失”；miss“错过”。由答语可推知题干句意：我们女排周六在里约奥运会赢得金牌。

考题在线 4 Their football team was _____ in that important game. [威海]

A. won B. beaten C. failed

辨析：win 与 beat

① win(won, won)：其宾语往往是比赛、奖项、奖金、名誉、财产、战争等。

② beat(beat, beaten)：其宾语是比赛、竞争中的对手或战争中的敌人。



★Do you intend to stay in China for long, Tony?

④ **intend**/ɪn'tend/ *v.* (to have a plan, result or purpose in your mind when you do sth.) 计划；打算

e.g. Who do you intend to manage the hotel?

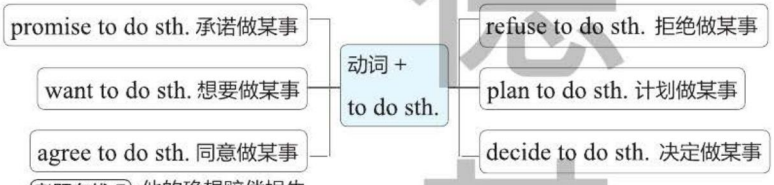
你想让谁经营这家宾馆？

① intend doing sth. 打算做某事；想要做某事

② intend (sb.) to do sth. 想要（某人）做某事

③ It is intended that... 打算……

拓展：符合“动词 +to do sth.”结构的短语：



考题在线 5 他的确想赔偿损失。

He really _____ for the damage.

★Let's fetch something to eat.

⑤ **fetch**/fetʃ/ *v.* (to go to where sb./sth. is and bring them/it back) (去) 取来；拿来

e.g. I asked Lily to fetch me an English book, but she brought me a Chinese book, so I asked her to take it back to the teachers' office.

我让莉莉去给我拿一本英语书，她却拿来了一本语文书，于是我让她拿回了老师办公室。

考题在线 6 用 fetch, take 或 bring 的适当形式填空

(1)My teacher asked me to go to her office to _____ the notebooks for her.

(2)I forgot to _____ my bag with me when I got off the bus.

辨析：fetch, take, bring 与 carry

- fetch 有一个往返的过程，表示“去拿来”
- bring 靠近说话者，意为“拿来；带来”
- take 远离说话者，意为“拿走；带走”
- carry 表示携带的动作，不说明方向，意为“搬；扛；提”

宋德基

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料



(3)Mary _____ me some books last week.

★Let's raise our glasses.

⑥ **raise**/reɪz/ *v.* (to lift or move sth. to a higher level) 举起

辨析: raise 与 rise

raise(raised, raised)	及物动词	意为“举起；提高；筹集；养育”，后接名词作宾语，是人为使某事物增长或提高；
rise(rose, risen)	不及物动词	意为“上升，增加，提高”，主要指自然物的升高。



e.g. Let's raise our right hands. 让我们举起右手。

She raised a lot of sheep on the farm. 她在农场里养了很多绵羊。

Project Hope raises money for the poor children.

希望工程为贫穷的孩子筹集资金。

考题在线 7 Let's _____(举起) glasses to the friendship between us.

考题在线 8 月亮已经从山上升起。

The moon _____ above the hills.

★Here's to our friendship, everyone. . . and to the future!

here's to sb./sth. 表示“为某人/某事干杯”，是祝酒词。

Cheers! 也译为“干杯！”但该句常用于主人或主持人邀请客人喝酒时。

⑦ **Here's to...** 为……干杯

e.g. Here's to your new job. 为你的新工作干杯。

考题在线 9 为你们未来的幸福干杯！

_____ your future happiness!

考题在线答案 1. A 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. intended paying 6. (1)fetch (2)take (3)brought 7. raise 8. has risen 9. Here's to

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20 分

(答案见243页)

Ⅱ听力技巧

听中大胆预测法(听录音时，如有听不懂的词，可以根据上下文推测其含义，或者写下该词的发音，听完后再去判断它的词义。切忌听短文时，停留在某个词语上，影响对短文的理解。)

敲黑板 提前看题，认真领听，速记关键词。

Ⅱ听力过程

听教材 Activity 2，完成以下习题



1. What is Betty doing?

A. She is singing.

B. She is listening to music.

C. She is dancing.

2. Betty is going to _____ tonight.

A. a birthday party

B. her friend's house

C. the school-leavers' party

3. Betty is going to help _____ put up the pictures and balloons.

A. her mum

B. Tony

C. Daming

4. Why does Betty refuse to eat before she leaves?

A. Because she is going to eat at the party.

B. Because she isn't hungry.

C. Because there's something wrong with her stomach.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

核心素养之文化意识

培养“制订做事计划”素养

◆俗话说“凡事预则立，不预则废”，要做好事情就要学会制订做事计划。做事有计划，不仅能帮助我们有条不紊地照料(*look after*)自己，也能帮助我们更好地学习和处理(*deal with*)各种事情。

◆【素养行动】制订一个切实可行的月学习计划(*one-month study plan*)，计划中要有可供检查考核的事项、完成时间（哪一天上午、下午、晚上）等，每完成一项就标记一项。邀请你的父母（或好朋友）监督执行。也可以按周制订日学习计划。

◆【素养行动结果】培养学生做事有计划的习惯(*habit*)，提高学生的做事效率。具有了这种品质(*quality*)，你的成功之路(*your way to success*)会更加平坦。

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础20分

☞(答案见243页)

一、根据句意及汉语或首字母提示完成句子

1. I bought a nice _____ (小提包) for my mother last Sunday.

2. We_____ (打算)watching the movie again.

3. If you don't have friends, you won't know the importance of _____(友谊).

4. I beg your p_____. I thought you were a friend of mine.

5. Rock music is well-known for its strong and fast b_____.

二、单项选择

6. Lucy refuses _____ her brother's apology.

A. accepting　　B. to accept

C. accepted　　D. accepts

7. —I've left my keys in the meeting room. Please _____ them for me.

—All right.　　【导学号：7764826】

A. buy　　B. paint

C. wash　　D. fetch

8. In the last match, Danny _____ John and _____ first prize.

A. beat; beat

B. won; won

C. beat; won

D. won; beat

9. Many people complain that some KFCs in China _____ the price of a hamburger by one *yuan*.

A. rose　　B. raised

C. dropped　　D. controlled

10. We should look up to those scientists _____ sent Tianzhou-1 Cargo Spaceship (天舟一号货运飞船) to space.　　[岳阳]

A. which

B. who

C. what

三、根据汉语完成句子，每空一词

11. 王先生今天下午要给我们做演讲。

Mr Wang will _____ _____ _____ for us this afternoon.

12. 你什么时候返回北京的?

When did you _____ _____ to Beijing?

13. ——我在英语比赛中取得了一等奖。

——你真行!

—I won first prize in the English competition.

—_____ _____ _____!

14. 我觉得有点孤单。

I feel _____ _____ lonely.

15. 为简的新工作干杯!

_____ _____ Jane for her new job!

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 2 I know that you will be better at maths.

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文及导读

导读批注

原文译文 · 导读

Reading and vocabulary 阅读和词汇

拟标题：Three roses of thanks

Pre-reading（读前）

QS: Think about a speech at a school-leavers' party. What do you want to say to your teachers, parents and friends?

1 Look at the picture and choose the answers to the questions. There may be more than one answer. 看图，然后选择问题的答案。可能有多个答案。

1. Who will probably get thanks from the school-leavers?
谁有可能从毕业生那里得到感谢？
a) Family. 家人。
b) Friends. 朋友。
c)Teachers. 老师。

批体裁：应用文（演讲稿）

2. What is the speaker probably going to say? 演讲者有可能说什么？
a) Thank you. 谢谢你。
b) Good luck! 祝你好运！
c) Cheers! 干杯！

课文朗读

Now read the passage and check. 现在阅读短文，核对答案。

批文章结构：递进式

开场白（starting）
- Dear...
- be proud

正文（Body of the speech）
- give thanks to
  - friends
  - teachers
  - parents

结束语（complimentary close）
- say "Thank you, friends...!"

While-reading（读中）

QS:1. What was Betty's feeling when she made the speech?
2. How many groups of people does Betty want to thank?
3. Which rose does she want to give her friends?
4. How did Betty's friends help her to learn Chinese?

Dear head teacher, teachers, parents and fellow students, I'm very proud that you have chosen me to ① speak to you today. 亲爱的校长、老师、家长和同学们，今天我很自豪你们能选我为大家做演讲。

I have three roses/ˈrəʊzɪz/ here: a red one, a yellow one and a white one. These roses are to thank three groups of people for the three most important things that I have learnt. These three things are friendship, effort and trust ②. 在这里，我有三朵玫瑰：一朵红色的、一朵黄色的和一朵白色的。(我用)这些玫瑰来表达对三组人的谢意，因为我(从他们那里)学到了最重要的三样东西。这三样东西是友谊、努力和信任。

I give the red rose to my friends. When I started school here, my

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Chinese was not good, and some of my mistakes were very funny. I once tried to say "*xiexie*", but I said "*xiaxia*" instead. Of course some people laughed, and I felt quite silly. But they were not laughing at me. They taught me to say many things in Chinese and kindly invited me to join them. Today, thanks to their kindness③ /ˈkaɪndnəs/, my Chinese is much better, and we have become friends. So, let me say "*xiexie*" again to all of you for your help. 我要把红色的玫瑰献给我的朋友们。当我开始在这里上学的时候，我的中文不好，并且我的一些错误非常好笑。我曾经尝试着说"谢谢"，但是我却说成了"夏夏"。当然，有些人笑了，我也感觉到很傻。但是，他们没有嘲笑我。他们教我用汉语说许多东西，并且还友好地邀请我加入他们。今天，多亏了他们的善举，(现在)我的汉语好多了，并且我们成了好朋友。所以，允许我再次对你们大家的帮助说一声"谢谢"。

I give the white rose to my teachers, who have taught me that there is no success without effort. When I started running in the 800 metres, I always finished last and I just wanted to give up④. But the PE teacher, Ms Huang, helped me. She ran along with me, and she said, "You only really lose if you give up!" I still can't run fast enough, but I've learnt to try my best⑤, not only with running but with whatever else I do. 我要把白色的玫瑰献给我的老师们，是他们教会了我不努力就不会成功(的道理)。当我开始跑800米时，我总是最后一名跑完，我都想放弃了。但体育老师黄老师帮助了我。她和我一起跑，她说："如果你放弃了，你就真的失败了！"虽然我还是跑得不够快，但是我已经学会了尽最大努力去做事，这不仅仅体现在跑步上，而且还体现在我做的其他任何事情上。

I give the yellow rose to my parents for teaching me that love is about trust. When I wanted to learn the violin, my father told me that I should work harder at maths. I was disappointed⑥ /ˌdɪsəˈpɔɪntɪd/. Then, on the morning of my birthday, I woke up to find a beautiful violin at my bedside /ˈbedsɒɪd/. There was a note/nəʊt/ from my father: "I'm sure you will be good at music. I know that you will be better at maths." 我要把黄色的玫瑰献给我的父母，因为他们教会了我爱就是信任(的道理)。当我想学习小提琴时，我的爸爸告诉我，我应该更加努力地学习数学。我很失望。后来，在我生日那天的早上，我一觉醒来，竟发现床边放着一把漂亮的小提琴，还有爸爸写给我的一个便条："我相信你在音乐方面将会很擅长。我知道你在数学方面会学得更好。"

I'm sure that you all have your own memories about the happiness of the last three years, and the people whom/huːm/ you want to thank for it, so let's all stand up and say, "Thank you, friends, teachers and parents! We love you!" 我确信，你们大家都有自己的关于过去三年的幸福记忆，你们也都有为此而想要感谢的人，所以，让我们全体起立，说："朋友们、老师们、爸爸妈妈们，谢谢你们！我们爱你们！"

批 作者情感：

- speak to you — proud
- said "xiaxia" — silly
- to work harder at maths. — disappointed

主谓 宾 who引导非限制性定语从句

批 句子赏析：(左边画～～处)

两个句子分别是老师和父亲对作者在遇到困难时的谆谆教诲，这种鼓励性语言的力量是伟大的，帮助作者从困境中摆脱。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Post-reading（读后）

写作小练笔 ☞（答案见227页）

2 Find sentences which show: 找出表明下列事物的句子：

1. the three things the speaker has learnt 演讲者学到的三件事
2. the three groups of people the speaker wants to thank 演讲者想要感谢的三组人
3. what the speaker has learnt from each group of people 演讲者从每组人身上学到的东西

3 Answer the questions. 回答问题。

1. Which sentence in Paragraph 4 means "You have to work hard to succeed"?
   第4段中哪个句子的意思是"要想成功你必须努力工作"？
2. "You only really lose if you give up!" What does the sentence mean?
   "如果你放弃了，你就真的失败了！"这句话是什么意思？
3. "I'm sure you will be good at music. I know that you will be better at maths." What did Betty's father want her to do?
   "我相信你在音乐方面将会很擅长。我知道你在数学方面会学得更好。"贝蒂的爸爸想让她做什么？
4. How do you think Betty would write to her father in reply? 你认为贝蒂将会怎样给她爸爸回信？
5. "I'm sure that you all have your own memories about the happiness of the last three years, and the people whom you want to thank for it... "What does *it* mean? "我确信，你们大家都有自己的关于过去三年的幸福记忆，你们也都有为此而想要感谢的人……"it是什么意思？

4 Check (√) the answers to the questions. There may be more than one answer.
核对(√)问题的答案。可能不止一个答案。

1. Which words can you use to describe the speech in Activity 1?
   你可以用哪些词汇来描述活动1中的演讲？

careful 认真的☐	excited 激动的☐	moving 感人的☐	polite 有礼貌的☐
silly 愚蠢的☐	troubled 忧虑的☐	warm 温暖的☐	worried 担心的☐

2. Which sentence(s) will you probably find in speeches at a school-leavers' party?
   在毕业聚会上的演讲中你可能会找到哪个（些）句子？
   a) Thank you, friends, teachers and parents! 朋友们、老师们、家长们，谢谢你们！☐
   b) We'll always stay in touch[7]. 我们会一直保持联系。☐
   c) I'm proud to be chosen to speak to you. 选我给你们演讲我感到很荣幸。☐
   d) Let's all stand up and say... 让我们全体起立，说……☐

Writing 写作

5 Write a speech you might give at your school-leavers' party.
写一篇你可能在你们的毕业聚会上发表的演讲。

- Start your speech by saying what your speech is going to be about.
  通过说明你的演讲内容来开始你的演讲。
  Dear head teacher, teachers and parents, I'd like to thank you for... 亲爱的校长、老师们、家长们，我要因……感谢你们。

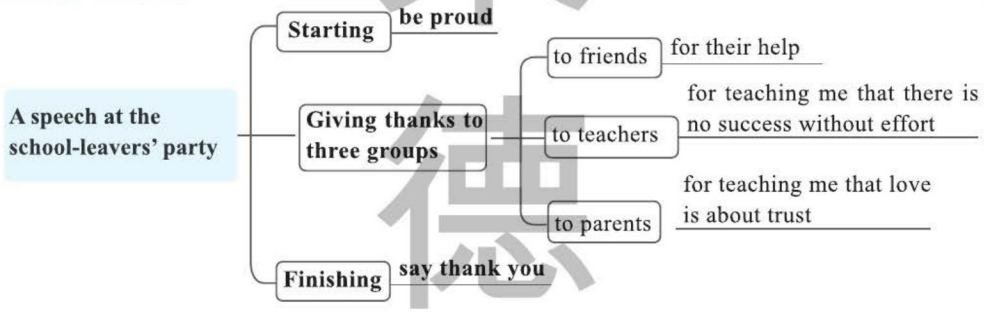
关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

- Decide who you want to say thank you to. 决定你要对谁说“谢谢你”。
  There are many people who I'd like to thank. First, I want to thank... 我要向很多人表示感谢。首先，我想要感谢……
- Decide what you want to thank them for with examples. 决定你为什么想要感谢他们并举例说明。
  They have always given me great help... 他们总是给我很大的帮助……
- Finish your speech by giving best wishes for the future. 以对未来最诚挚的祝愿结束你的演讲。
  Thank you and good luck for the future. 谢谢你们并祝你们未来好运。

Learning to learn 学会学习

You may have to make speeches on the first day at your senior high. Try to plan ahead what you are going to say, but do not write the speech in full—just make notes. When you make your speech using the notes, you will sound much more natural. 上高中的第一天，你可能得做演讲。尽量提前计划好你要说什么，但不要完全地把演讲稿写出来——只是做笔记。当你用笔记做演讲的时候，你的声音听起来将会更自然。

课文背诵指南



Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练 专攻中考阅读 60分

(答案见243页)

阅读策略

词义猜测法（通过因果关系，同义词或反义词的关系、构词法、例证法、上下文语境及文章中的定义或解释来推理和猜测该词的大体意思。）

阅读过程

拓展阅读

一、速读文章，选择正确答案

1. The style of the passage is _____.

（归纳概括题）

A. a story　　B. a poem

C. a speech　　D. a dialogue

二、细读文章，完成下列题目

2. Which three groups of people does Betty want to thank? （细节理解题）

_____

3. ⊙ “Fellow students” means _____.

（词义猜测题）

4. What are the three things Betty has learnt?（细节理解题）

_____

5. Who does Betty give the red rose to?

（细节理解题）

_____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

·考点批注 ·考点应用

★I'm very proud that you have chosen me to speak to you today.

choose sb. /sth. as... 选择某人/某物作为……
choose sb. /sth. for... 为……选择某人/某物

① choose sb. to do sth. 选择某人做某事

敲黑板 choose 的名词形式为 choice，大家可一定要记住啊！

e.g. They choose Jim to be their leader.
他们选吉姆当他们的领袖。
The company chose London as its base.
这家公司选择伦敦作为总部所在地。
Why did you choose me for the job? 你为什么选我来做这项工作?

考题在线 1 请根据括号中所给的汉语写出单词，使句子意思完整正确。 [南京]
Since it will be rainy tomorrow, we have to _____ (选择) a different time to go jogging.

★These three things are friendship, effort and trust.

Time and tide wait for no man.
时光如逝水，岁月不待人。

② trust/trʌst/ *n.* (the belief that sb./sth. is good,sincere,honest,etc. and will not try to harm or deceive you) **信赖，信任**

- trust
  - 名词
    - put one's trust in sb. 信赖某人
  - 动词
    - trust sb. 信赖某人
    - trust sb. to do sth. 相信某人做某事
    - trust+that从句 期待/希望……

e.g. Please put your trust in her. 请信任她。
You can't trust him to come on time. 你不能指望他会准时来。
I trust that you will enjoy your trip. 我希望你旅途愉快。

考题在线 2 Parents should _____ (信任) their children.

★Today, thanks to their kindness, my Chinese is much better, and we have become friends.

kindness 作不可数名词，意为"善良；好意；体贴"；作可数名词时，意为"友好的举动"。

kindness 的形容词形式是 kind，意为"仁慈的"。be kind to sb. 意为"对某人仁慈"。

③ kindness/'kaɪndnəs/ *n.* (the quality of being kind) **善良；友好的举动；好意**

e.g. She was known to all for her kindness. 她的善良人人皆知。
I can never repay your many kindnesses to me.
我无法报答你对我无微不至的关怀。

考题在线 3 —Thank you for your _____ (kind), Lucy.
—It's my pleasure.

★When I started running in the 800 metres, I always finished last and I just wanted to give up.

敲黑板 代词作宾语时要放在 give 与 up 之间，这可是考点啊！

④ give up 放弃（努力）

e.g. He doesn't give up his dream all the time. 他一直都没有放弃梦想。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Smoking is bad for your health. You should give it up.

吸烟对你的健康有害，你应该戒掉。

give back 归还
give off 发出
give over 住手
give
give in 屈服；投降
give away 馈赠；泄露
give out 分发；耗尽

考题在线 4 当我们处于困境时，我们不应该放弃。 [宿迁]

We shouldn't _____ when we are in trouble.

★I still can't run fast enough, but I've learnt to try my best, not only with running but with whatever else I do.

try 的四种搭配：
- try to do sth. 设法、努力做某事
- try doing sth. 试着做某事
- try on 试穿
- try out 实验；（通过试用）体验

⑤ **try one's best (to do sth.)** 尽某人最大努力（做某事）

e.g. I tried my best to help her. 我尽了最大努力去帮助她。

考题在线 5 Chinese parents always try their best _____ a good education environment for their kids.

A. provide B. to provide C. providing

★I was disappointed.

⑥ **disappointed**/ˌdɪsəˈpɔɪntɪd/ *adj.* (upset because sth. you hoped for has not happened or been as good, successful, etc. as you expected) 失望的；沮丧的

辨析：disappointed 与 disappointing
- disappointed 意为"感到失望的"，主语通常是人，表示人的一种感受。
- disappointing 意为"令人失望的"，通常修饰事物。

disappointed 的常用搭配：
- be disappointed with sb. 对某人失望
- be disappointed at/about sth. 对某事失望
- be disappointed to do sth. 做某事失望

e.g. Are you disappointed at losing the game? 比赛输了你失望吗？

考题在线 6 We played badly in the game; our teacher looked very ___ with our performance.

A. excited B. frightened C. satisfied D. disappointed

点拨：此题用词义辨析法。excited "兴奋的"；frightened "害怕的"；satisfied "满意的"；disappointed "失望的"。根据句意可知选 D。

一语辨异：
We are all very disappointed, because the result is too disappointing. 我们都很失望，因为这个结果太令人失望了。

★We'll always stay in touch.

⑦ **stay in touch** 保持联系

stay in touch 相当于 keep in touch，表示"与某人保持联系"用 stay/keep in touch with sb.。

e.g. I hope that we will stay in touch with each other.

我希望我们会彼此保持联系。

考题在线 7 旅途愉快！请与我们保持联系。 [广州]

Enjoy your trip! And please _____ in touch _____ us.

get in touch with sb. 与某人取得联系
lose touch with sb. 与某人失去联系

考题在线答案 1. choose 2. trust 3. kindness 4. give up 5. B 6. D 7. stay/keep; with

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅳ.课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础20分

(答案见243页)

一、根据句意及首字母或汉语提示完成单词

1. My mother put a nice toy at my _____ (床头).
2. He left a _____ (便条) on the desk and left the room.
3. Mrs Smith always treats everyone with _____ (善良；体贴).
4. The r_____is often a symbol of love in poetry.
5. It is bad manners to l_____at people who are in trouble.

二、用所给词的适当形式填空

6. We chose _____ (go) by train.
7. We all know that there's no _____ (succeed) without effort.
8. They all have their own memories about the _____ (happy) of the last three years.
9. Are you sure _____ (come) early?
10. We had a _____ (school-leaver) party last Friday.

三、单项选择

11. I was _____to find that I didn't know a single person there.
    A. disappointed B. expected
    C. disappointing D. unexpected
12. —Goodbye, everyone. _____.
    —Bye, Sally! Don't forget to write.
    A. Stay in touch
    B. Just wait and see
    C. Sounds great
    D. Come this way
13. This term I'll try my best _____ my English.
    A. improve B. to improve
    C. improving D. improves
14. —You aren't supposed to smoke in public. It's bad for our health.
    —Sorry, I will _____ my cigarette right now. [黄冈]
    A. give up B. put down
    C. put out D. give away
15. It was not until I came here that I realized this place was famous for _____ its beauty _____ its weather.
    A. either; or
    B. neither; nor
    C. not only; but also
    D. not; but

四、用方框中所给短语的适当形式填空

wake up, laugh at, stay in touch, be good at, try one's best

16. Please call me or chat with me online. It would be nice to _____.
17. Don't _____ others. Sometimes you may make mistakes too.
18. She _____ late this morning, so she was late for school.
19. Come on! If you_____, you'll get it.
20. Lucy is a good student and she _____ all her subjects.

Time is money, but money cannot buy time.
一寸光阴一寸金，寸金难买寸光阴。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 3 Language in use

I. 课文原文、译文

Language practice 语言练习

I know *that* you will be better at maths. 我知道你会更擅长数学。

These roses are to thank three groups of people for the three most important things *that* I have learnt. 这些玫瑰来表达对三组人的谢意，因为我（从他们那里）学到了最重要的三样东西。

I give the white rose to my teachers, *who* have taught me *that* there is no success without effort. 我把白玫瑰献给我的老师们，是他们教会了我不努力就不会成功的道理。

I'm sure that you all have your own memories about the happiness of the last three years, and the people *whom* you want to thank for it. 我确信你们大家都有自己的关于过去三年的幸福记忆，你们也都有为此而想要感谢的人。

1 Complete the sentences using *which*, *that*, *who* or *whom*. Try to explain the meaning of the words in bold. 用 which, that,who 或 whom 完成句子。试着解释黑体单词的意思。

1. **Finger food** is the food that/which we eat with our fingers.
   手抓食物是用手（抓着）吃的食物。
2. A **handbag** is a small bag_____.
   手提包是_____的小包。
3. **School-leavers** are young people_____.
   学校毕业生是_____的年轻人。
4. A **classmate** is someone_____.
   同班同学是_____的人。
5. A **friend** is someone_____.
   朋友是_____的人。
6. A **stranger** is someone_____.
   陌生人是_____的人。

2 Work in pairs. Look at the picture and the menu. Discuss the questions.
结对练习。看图和菜单。讨论问题。

1. How do you know that the party is international?
   你怎么知道聚会是国际化的?
2. Why are the people cheering?
   为什么人们在欢呼?
3. What do you think the person making a speech is saying? 你认为演讲者在说什么?

School-leavers' Party Menu 毕业生典礼菜单

Jiaozi (China) 饺子（中国）

Meat and fish dishes (UK, Denmark, France)
肉和鱼类（英国，丹麦，法国）

Cakes (Germany, US, Australia)
蛋糕（德国，美国，澳大利亚）

3 Complete the passage with the clauses in the box. 用方框中的从句完成文章。

a) that success at school is important for our futures 在学校里的成功对我们的未来很重要
b) if you want to be an engineer 如果你想成为一名工程师
c) that we control the future 我们把握未来
d) we can all make a wonderful future if we remember this 如果我们记住这一点，我们都能创造一个美好的未来
e) that I am a very good student 我是一名优等生

We will finish junior high soon. Many students are worried about the future. School is hard. We all think (1)_____. 我们很快就将初中毕业。许多学生担心未来。上学阶段很艰苦，我们都认为（1）_____。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Some of us are lucky. We are good at studying. I am very lucky. My teachers say (2)_____. I especially love studying maths. It is a very important subject. You need it for physics, or(3) _____. I want to be an engineer. Engineers and scientists are important for our country's future. 我们中的一些人是幸运的。我们擅长学习。我很幸运，我的老师说（2）_____。我特别喜欢学数学。它是一门非常重要的科目。你需要用它来学习物理，或者（3）_____。我想成为一名工程师。工程师和科学家对我们国家的未来很重要。

My classmates and I are all a bit sad to be leaving junior high. But we are also excited about taking a new step in our lives. Our future lives and jobs get closer every day. 我和同班同学们对于即将初中毕业感到一丝难过。但是对于我们生活迈出新的一步我们也非常激动。我们未来的生活和工作每天都在逼近。

The English say, "The future is what you make it!" I like this saying. It means (4) _____. It reminds us to try our best, and to never give up. I really think (5) _____. 英国人说："未来是由你自己创造的！"我喜欢这句格言。它的意思是（4）_____。它提醒我们要尽最大努力，永不放弃。我真的认为（5）_____。

4 Join the words in Box A with the words in Box B to make new words. You need to use one word more than once. 将方框A与方框B中的单词连接起来组成新词。每个单词不止使用一次。

A	after 在……之后	class 班级	hair 头发	hand 手	
B	bag 包	cut 切	made 制造	mate 同事	noon 中午

Now complete the conversation with the new words. 现在用新单词完成对话。

Lingling: What are you going to wear to the school-leavers' party?
毕业生聚会你打算穿什么?

Betty: I'm going to wear a dress. And I'm going to buy a new black (1) _____.Do you want to go with me to the shopping centre to look for one? 我要穿连衣裙。我要去买一个新的黑色（1）_____。你想和我一起去购物中心找一个吗?

Lingling: Sorry, I can't. I'm having a(n)(2) _____this(3)_____ at three o'clock. I want nice short hair for the party! 对不起，我不能。今天（3）_____3点钟我要（2）_____。我想剪一头漂亮的短发去参加聚会！

Tony: I'll go with you, Betty. I'm going to take photos, and I want to buy a book to put the photos in. I hope that all of us will remember each other. I'm happy I have been your (4)_____. 我和你一起去，贝蒂。我要拍一些照片，我想买一个本子将相片放在里面。我希望我们大家将会记住彼此。很高兴我是你们的（4）_____。

Betty: I've already bought a special book for the photos. It's black, with (5) _____ paper pages. 我已经买了一个放照片的特殊影集。它是黑色的，带有（5）_____纸张。

Tony: You can carry it on the big night, then. It'll match your clothes. 那么，在那个盛大的夜晚，你可以带着它。它将与你的衣服很相配。

Betty: Don't be silly, Tony! 别开玩笑了，托尼！

5 Complete the sentences with the words or expressions in the box.
用方框中的单词或短语完成句子。

beat 节奏　laugh at 嘲笑　pardon 请再说一遍
roses 玫瑰　wake... up 叫醒……

1. Try to follow the_____of the music.
尽量跟上音乐的_____。
2. Oh, _____ me. I didn't see you there.
哦，_____我。我没有看到你在那里。
3. We're going to put _____ all around the

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

room this year. 今年我们打算把_____放在房间里的每个地方。

4. I can't go to school wearing that—everyone will _____ me. 我不能穿成那样去上学——大家都会_____我。

5. I'll _____ you _____ when it's time to leave. 到离开的时候，我将会_____你。

6 Listen and answer the questions.

听录音，回答问题。



1. Did Adam go to Africa or America?
亚当去了非洲还是美洲?
2. What did Adam do there?
亚当在那里做了什么?
3. What does Adam like most about the country? 亚当最喜欢这个国家的什么?
4. What did Adam do at weekends?
亚当在周末做了什么?
5. What does Adam want to do in the future?
亚当将来想做什么?

7 Read the passage and choose the correct answer. 阅读短文，选择正确的答案。



Mark Smith is a student at a vocational school—a school where people learn how to do many of the jobs that are needed in modern society. 马克·史密斯是一所职业学校的学生，在那里人们学习如何做现代社会需要的许多工作。

"After I finished secondary school, my results showed that I was better at doing things than at reading books. I had to decide how I wanted to make a living① in the future. I'm the sort of person who is good at making things with my hands. So I chose to go to vocational school." Now, he learns how to repair③ machines②. "中学毕业之后，我的成绩表明比起读书来我更擅长制作东西。我必须决定将来我想如何谋生。我是那种擅长用自己的双手制作东西的人。因此，我选择去上职业学校。"现在，他在学习如何修理机器。

"Everyone needs a skill that is useful if they want a good life. And I like learning about how things work," he says. 他说："如果想要过上好的生活，每一个人都需要一项有用的技能。而我喜欢了解东西是如何工作的。"

Mark tells people that he is very happy about his choice. "Now I can study the things that I like best. Everyone wants to study what they are good at, don't they?" He believes that he has a bright future ahead of④ him. "You can't have a society where everyone works in an office. Workers who can make things and repair things will always be needed." 马克告诉人们，他对自己的选择感到很满意。"现在我可以学习我最喜欢的事情。大家都想要学习他们擅长的事情，不是吗？"他相信他的前方有一个光明的未来。"不可能有一个人人都在办公室里工作的社会。总会需要那些能制作和修理东西的工人。"

When people ask Mark what he is most interested in⑤, he smiles. "Planes. I don't know why I've always loved machines that fly, but I do. One day, I'm going to help repair the planes that carry people all over the world." 当人们问马克他最感兴趣的东西是什么的时候，他微笑着说："飞机。我不知道为什么我一直喜欢那些会飞的机器，但是我的确喜欢。有一天，我将会帮助修理运载世界各地的人们的飞机。"

1. What do students at vocational schools do?
职业学校的学生做什么?

a) They look for jobs there. 他们在那里找工作。

b) They learn how to do many of the jobs that are needed in society.
他们学习如何做社会中需要的许多工作。

c) They study why the jobs are needed in society.
他们研究工作为什么被社会所需要。

d) They do the same as students in secondary school.
他们做和中学的学生同样的事情。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

2. Why did Mark choose to go to vocational school? 为什么马克选择去上职业学校?

a) Because he wanted to know more about society. 因为他想更多地了解社会。

b) Because he finished secondary school. 因为他中学毕业了。

c) Because he found that he was better at doing things than at reading books.
因为他发现比起读书来他更擅长制作东西。

d) Because he did not do well at school. 因为他在学校里学习不好。

3. According to the passage, which of the following is NOT the reason why Mark made his choice?
根据这篇文章,下列哪个选项不是马克做出选择的原因?

a) Everyone needs a skill for a good life in the future.
为了将来有好的生活,大家都需要一项技能。

b) He can study the things that he likes best. 他能够学习他最喜欢的东西。

c) The society needs not just people who work in an office, but also those who can make things and repair things.
社会需要的不仅仅是那些在办公室工作的人,还需要那些能制造和修理东西的人。

d) He likes physics. 他喜欢物理。

Around the world 世界各地

Junior high school dances 初中校园舞会

In the US, students often have a school dance to celebrate the end of junior high. There is usually a student committee which organises the dance. They decorate the school gym with balloons, lights and other things so that it looks very nice. They plan the music and organise the food. Sometimes the parents help make the food and sometimes it comes from a restaurant. The girls usually wear pretty dresses and the boys wear smart clothes. They eat, dance and sometimes have competitions. The dance is usually supervised by teachers and parents. 在美国,学生们经常举办校园舞会来庆祝初中生活的结束。通常由学生社团组织这场舞会。他们用气球、灯和其他的东西来装饰学校体育馆,让它看起来非常漂亮。他们筹划好音乐和食物。有时父母帮忙制作食物,有时会从餐馆里订食物。女孩们通常穿着漂亮的裙子,男孩们穿着时髦的衣服。他们又吃又跳,有时还会有比赛。舞会通常受到老师和父母的监督。

Module task: Making plans for your future

模块任务:为你的未来制订计划

8 **Think about your life in the future. Make notes about the following things:**
考虑一下你未来的生活,做有关下面的事情的笔记:

- what you are planning to do in the next three years 未来的三年你计划做什么
- what you would like to do after that 在那之后你想做什么
- what other areas of your life you want to develop 你想要在生活的其他哪些领域发展
- what sort of values you think will be important to you 你认为哪种价值观对你来说是重要的

9 **Use your notes to write sentences.** 用你的笔记写句子。

10 **Join your sentences and write a passage about your future plan.**
将你的句子连接起来,写一篇关于你未来计划的文章。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用 •考点批注

★ I had to decide how I wanted to make a living in the future.

① **make a living 谋生** 表示"靠……谋生"用 make a living by…。

e.g. He makes a living by farming. 他靠种田谋生。

考题在线 1 他过去通过导游赚钱谋生。

He _____ _____ _____ by guiding the tourists in the past.

★ Now, he learns how to repair machines.

疑问代词 what/who/which 等和疑问副词 when/how/where 等引导的动词不定式短语在句中可作主语、宾语、表语等。

② **"疑问词 + 动词不定式"结构**

e.g. How to get there is a problem.

怎么到达那里是一个问题。（作主语）

I don't know what to do next.

我不知道接下来做什么。（作宾语）

The question is how to learn English well.

问题是怎样学好英语。（作表语）

敲黑板 "疑问词 + 动词不定式"结构中，how 是疑问副词，应该用 how to do it 表达；what 是疑问代词，应该用 what to do 表达。

考题在线 2 根据所给的汉语完成句子。[广州]

我们还没有决定什么时候探望爷爷奶奶。

We haven't decided _____ _____ _____ our grandparents.

③ **repair**/rɪˈpeə/ *v.* (to mend sth. that is broken,damaged or torn) 修理

e.g. My grandfather is repairing a clock.

我的祖父正在修钟。

辨析：repair 与 mend

① repair 指"修理"构造较为复杂、损伤较大的东西，如机器、车辆、建筑物等；有时需要的人更多。

② mend 表示"修补"时，一般用于衣服、鞋袜等；一般只需要一个人。

考题在线 3 请根据句意或句子的语法要求，用括号中所给单词的适当形式填空。

Uncle Chen _____ (repair) more than five bicycles since last Friday. [宿迁]

★ He believes that he has a bright future ahead of him.

④ **ahead of**（时间、空间）在……前面

e.g. Two boys are ahead of us. 有两个男孩在我们前面。

Jack finished his report ahead of me . 杰克在我前面完成了报告。

Mary is ahead of me in English. 玛丽的英语比我强。

—Can I have the movie section? 我可以看看电影部分吗?

—Yeah, go ahead. I've read it. 好，拿去吧。我已经看过了。

- ahead of 还可意为"比……强"，常用于 be 动词后，作表语
- go ahead 意为"说吧，做吧，继续……吧"用于表示同意、允许或继续做某事

★ When people ask Mark what he is most interested in, he smiles.

⑤ **be interested in 对……感兴趣**

e.g. The girl is interested in playing the piano.

这个女孩对弹钢琴感兴趣。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

辨析: interest, interested 与 interesting

“兴趣”不同
- interest既可用作可数名词，又可用作不可数名词，表示“兴趣；关注；业余爱好”，也可用作动词，表示“使感兴趣”。
- interesting 表示“有趣的”，描述物，在句中可作定语，也可作表语。
- interested 表示“对……感兴趣”，主语为人。

Money is not everything.
金钱不是万能的。

考题在线 4 越来越多的学生对英语感兴趣了。

More and more students are _____ English.

考题在线答案 1. made a living 2. when to visit 3. has repaired 4. interested in

Ⅲ. 模块语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

宾语从句

敲黑板 读一读，背过！

速记小筏：
宾语从句的用法：
宾语从句须注意，陈述语序要牢记。
陈述句子用 that，一般疑问句是否（whether, if）替。
特殊疑问更简单，引导就用疑问词。

考点 宾语从句的引导词、语序和时态

考向 1：【重点】宾语从句的引导词 :that, if/whether 和疑问词

that	that 引导的宾语从句表示陈述意义，that 在从句中不作任何成分也无意义，一般可以省略。
if/whether	当由一般疑问句充当宾语从句时，用 if/whether 引导。if 常用于口语，whether 常用于正式文体中，两者一般情况下可以互换，但是，当直接与 or not 连用时，只能用 whether。
疑问词	当宾语从句是由特殊疑问句转化而来时，要用 what, when, where, why, how 等疑问词来引导。

考题在线 1 —Could you tell me _____ you'd like me to pay you?
—You'd better use mobile payment. I don't care _____ it is Ali Pay or WeChat Pay. [广东]

A. how; whether B. how; why
C. what; whether D. what; why

点拨：考查宾语从句中的引导词。第一空语境意为“如何”付款，用 how；第二空 whether...or... whether...or... 意为“是否……还是……”。

考向 2：【重点】宾语从句的语序

宾语从句的语序都用陈述语序，且引导词位于从句句首。

考题在线 2 Excuse me, could you tell me _____? [大庆]

A. where is the railway station
B. how can I get to the railway station
C. where the railway station is
D. how do I get to the railway station

考向 3：【高频】宾语从句的时态

宾语从句的时态由主句来确定，主句用一般现在时，从句可以用任何需要的时态；主句用一般过去时，从句需用对应的某种过去时态。

注意：当从句表示客观真理、自然现象等时用一般现在时，不受主句时态的限制。

速记小筏：宾语从句的时态：
从句时态常变化，主句不同从句异；
主句若为现在时，从句时态要看意；
主句若为过去时，从句时态向前移；
还有一点要例外，若表真理单独记。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考题在线 3 — What did Tom say to you just now, John?

—He asked _____. [眉山]

A. why I am so happy today

B. what will I do for the weekend

C. who did I play football with after school

D. if I could go to the movies with him tonight

点拨：用语法分析法解题。考查宾语从句。宾语从句要用陈述语序，排除 B、C；若宾语从句主句为一般过去时，从句要用相应的过去时态（真理除外），排除 A。

方法真题练

定语从句

考点 1 定语从句的引导词

考向 1：［重点］定语从句的关系代词

who	代替指人的先行词，在从句中作主语或宾语。
whom	代替指人的先行词，在从句中作宾语。
whose	可指人或指物，表示“……的”，在从句中作定语。
that	代替指人或指物的先行词，在从句中作主语或宾语。
which	代替指物的先行词，在从句中作主语或宾语。

考题在线 4 —Do you know the man _____ spoke at the meeting just now?

—No, I don't know. [滨州]

A. what B. who

C. which D. whose

考向 2：定语从句的关系副词

when	先行词表示时间时
where	先行词表示地点时
why	先行词表示原因时

注意：由关系副词引导的定语从句有时可以用“介词 +which”结构引导。

考题在线 5 He is unlikely to find the school _____ he taught 50 years ago.

A. where B. when C. how D. why

考点 2 定语从句的主谓一致

考向：定语从句的引导词在从句中作主语时，从句谓语动词在人称和数上与先行词保持一致。

e.g. Mr Zhang who is retired lives a pleasant life in the countryside. 退休后的张先生在农村过着惬意的生活。

考题在线 6 —What kind of movies do you prefer?

—I prefer the movies _____ me something to think about. [潍坊]

A. which give B. that gives

C. which gives D. who gives

考题在线答案 1. A 2. C 3. D 4. B 5. A 6. A

Ⅳ. 写作一课一法 夺取中考写作 20分

写作小练笔

Dear head teacher, teachers, parents and fellow students, I'm very proud that you have chosen me to speak to you today. 开场白：称呼及感受

I have three roses here. These roses are to thank three groups of people for three most important things that I have learnt. These three things are friendship, effort and trust. 感谢的事：友谊、努力和信任

I give the red rose to my friends, for they taught me many things and kindly invited me to join them.

I give the white rose to my teachers, who have taught me that there is no success without effort.

I give the yellow rose to my parents for teaching me that love is about trust. Let's all stand up and say, "Thank you, friends, teachers and parents! We love you!" 结束语：说出感谢

感谢的人：朋友、老师和父母

模块话题

你的初中生活即将结束。此时此刻，正是回顾过去，

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

展望未来之际。请写一篇英语短文，谈谈你对初中三年学习生活的感受和对高中生活的向往。短文需包括如下要点，可适当拓展以使行文连贯：

1. 师生关系　2. 学业成就　3. 生活乐趣

4. 感受初中　5. 向往高中

注意：1. 文章的开头结尾已给出，不计入总词数。

2. 词数：80 左右

I'll graduate from my junior school. At the moment of looking back at the three years and looking forward to the senior high school, many words have come to my mind.

In a word, my junior school life is an unforgettable experience. And I believe my senior high school will be more meaningful.

审题指导（把握中心，得方向分）

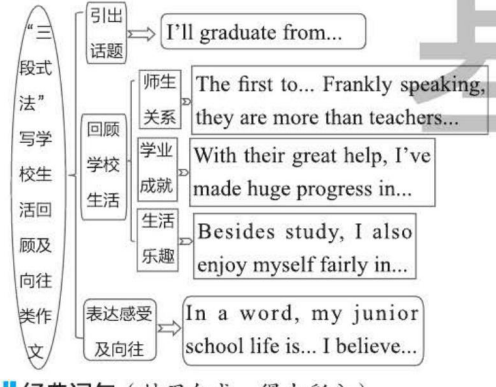
1. 本文观点为"回顾－感受－向往"，故时态上的使用需根据实际灵活运用，过去时、现在时和将来时均需。
2. 注意要用第一人称。

写作技法（学会方法，巧得高分）

"三段式法"写学校生活回顾及向往类作文

"三段式"的写法通常为：首段引出话题；第二段回顾过去的学习和生活；第三段表达感受和对高中生活的向往。

写作模板（学会套路，得基本分）



经典词句（妙用句式，得出彩分）

单词	unbelievable，suppose,especially,besides,including ,however
短语	more than, frankly speaking, with their great help, make huge progress, enjoy myself
句子	1. It's quite unbelievable that they've companied me for more than 1, 000 days. 2. I also enjoy myself fairly in doing other things.

范文赏析（书写工整，得印象分）

I'll graduate from my junior school. At the moment of looking back at the three years and looking forward to the senior high school, many words have come to my mind.

The first to pop into my mind are my teachers. It's quite unbelievable that they've companied me for more than 1000 days. Frankly speaking, they are more than teachers to us, I suppose. With their great help, I've made huge progress in regular academic classes, especially English and Math. What's more, I even got into the top three in our class once. Besides study, I also enjoy myself fairly in doing other joining, including joining various clubs, doing sports with my classmates. However, gone are those golden days full of laughter and tears.

In a word, my junior school life is an unforgettable experience. And I believe my senior high school will be more meaningful.

名师点评：本文用"三段式法"写学校生活回顾及向往类作文，层次清晰，语言丰富。第一段：引出话题。开头表明自己对过去生活的留恋和未来的期盼。第二段：回顾过去的学习和生活。使用了过渡词，Frankly speaking，What's more，besides 等使文章叙述条理分明，脉络清晰。同时，句型的交错使用，是文章出彩的另一大原因。第三段：表达对过去生活难以忘怀的感受及对未来生活的憧憬之情。



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅴ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础20分

(答案见243页)

一、根据汉语提示完成句子

1. 你知道如何修收音机吗?

Do you know _____ _____ _____ a radio?

2. 在这座陌生的城市里，他们不得不靠自己谋生。

They had to _____ _____ _____ in the strange city on their own.

3. 除了先完成它之外，你别无选择。

You have _____ _____ but to finish it first.

4. 这是西外——西安外国语大学，我在这儿度过了我的大学生活。

This is XISU—Xi'an International Studies University, _____ I spent my college life.

5. 你对画画感兴趣吗?

Are you _____ _____ _____ pictures?

二、语法专练

6. Could you tell me _____ ? [遂宁]

A. when will they leave Beijing

B. when would they leave Beijing

C. when they will leave Beijing

D. when they would leave Beijing

7. "Do you know _____ the school library closes, Susan?"

"Ten o'clock at night." [贵阳]

A. when B.why C.who

8. *Peppa Pig* (《小猪佩奇》) is a British cartoon _____ has been popular in China and is much loved by little children and their parents. [临沂]

A. who B. which C. /

9. —What are you looking for?

—I'm looking for the storybook _____ you lent to me last week. [达州]

A. who B. which C. when

10. The book ___ I read last night was fantastic. [大庆]

A. that B. what

C. whose D.who

三、模块知识浓缩

kind, trust, succeed, wake up, note, memory, disappoint, laugh at, pride, give up

Hi, I'm Betty. I'm very _____[11] that you've chosen me to speak to you. I have three roses here. I'll thank three groups of people with them for the three most important things—friendship, effort and _____[12].

The red rose is for my friends. When I was in trouble in speaking Chinese, they did not _____[13] me. Thanks to their _____[14], my Chinese is much better now.

The white rose is for my teachers. They have taught me that there is no _____[15] without effort. Whatever I do now, I always try my best, and never _____[16].

The yellow rose is for my parents. When I wanted to learn the violin, my father told me to work harder at maths. I felt very _____[17]. But on the morning of my birthday, I _____[18] to find a new violin and a _____[19] from my father. I knew that love was about trust!

I'm sure that you all have your own _____[20] about the happiness of the last three years and people whom you want to thank, so let's say "thank you" together!

未德基

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Revision module B

课文原文、译文

Listening 听力

1 Listen to the conversations and choose the correct answer. 听对话，选择正确答案。

Conversation A 对话 A

1. Where does the conversation take place? 对话发生在哪里?
   a) At home. 在家里。
   b) In a shop. 在商店里。
   c) At school. 在学校里。
2. What does the girl want to do? 这个女孩想做什么?
   a) Buy a long dress for a birthday party. 为生日聚会买一条长连衣裙。
   b) Buy a short dress for a school party. 为学校聚会买一条短连衣裙。
   c) Buy a blue dress and a red dress. 买一条蓝色连衣裙和一条红色连衣裙。

Conversation B 对话 B

3. What does the woman like most about her country? 这位女士最喜欢她的国家的什么?
   a) The hills. 小山。
   b) The cities. 城市。
   c) The countryside. 乡下。
4. According to the woman, when is the best time to visit the country? 根据这位女士所说，去乡下观光的最佳时间是什么时候?
   a) In April. 4 月份。
   b) In November. 11 月份。
   c) From April to November. 从 4 月份到 11 月份。
5. What does the woman say about the weather? 这位女士说天气怎么样?
   a) It doesn't rain from April to November. 从 4 月份到 11 月份不下雨。
   b) The weather is very good. 天气很好。
   c) It rains a lot in spring. 春天经常下雨。

Conversation C 对话 C

6. Where is Sally from? 萨莉来自哪里?
   a) America 美国。
   b) Britain. 英国。
   c) Australia 澳大利亚。
7. What do most American people say to each other when they meet? 大多数美国人见面时彼此之间说什么?
   a) Hi. 你好。
   b) Hello. 你好。
   c) G'day. 你好。

Conversation D 对话 D

8. What does Jane Wang want the students to do when they are out of the classroom? 当学生在教室外的时候，简 · 王想让学生做些什么?
   a) Take a rest. 休息。
   b) Take some exercise. 做些锻炼。
   c) Go to the dining hall. 去餐厅。
9. How many times is food served in the dining hall? 在餐厅里，食物端上来几次?
   a) Three times. 三次。
   b) Twice. 两次。
   c) Once. 一次。
10. What does Jane Wang say about the food at school? 简 · 王就学校里的食物说了什么?
    a) It is not cooked in the school kitchen. 不是在学校厨房做的。
    b) There are only a few choices. 只有几种选择。
    c) It is delicious and healthy. 健康又可口。

荣德基

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Conversation E 对话 E

11.What are they talking about?

他们在谈论什么?

a) A menu of finger food. 手抓食物的菜单。

b) The school pop group. 学校流行乐队。

c) Food for the end-of-term party.

期末聚会的食物。

12.How many people are invited?

邀请了多少人?

a) About 100. 大约 100 人。

b) About 200. 大约 200 人。

c) About 300. 大约 300 人。

13.What have they decided to serve?

他们决定提供什么?

a) Only sandwiches. 只有三明治。

b) Finger food and some other kinds of food. 手抓食物和一些其他种类的食物。

c) Hot potatoes and ice cream.

热土豆和冰淇淋。

14. What is NOT true about the music for the party? 关于聚会上的音乐，哪项是不正确的?

a) It is classical music. 它是古典音乐。

b) It is music with a good beat.

它是节奏好的音乐。

c) It is going to be played by the school pop group. 它将由学校流行乐队演奏。

15.Which of the following do they need?

他们需要下列中的哪些东西?

a) 筷子。 b) 刀叉。

c) 光盘。

2 Listen and complete the table.

听录音，完成表格。

Ground floor 第一层	Classrooms for 教室_____, _____, _____
	Hall for 大厅_____, _____, _____
First floor 第二层	Classrooms for 教室_____, _____room 教室
Second floor 第三层	Classrooms for 教室_____
Top floor 顶层	Classrooms for 教室_____

Vocabulary and grammar 词汇与语法

3 Choose the correct answer. 选择正确答案。

1. My grandmother _____ a lot of changes during her lifetime. 我的祖母在她的一生中_____许多变化。

a) should see 应该看到

b) was seeing 正在看到

c) sees 看到

d) has seen 已经看到

2. They_____ work very hard when they were young. 他们年轻时，他们_____工作非常努力。

a) had to 不得不 b) must 必须

c) should 应该 d) have to 不得不

3. Alex is writing an email _____John will know what he is doing. 艾利克斯正在写一封邮件_____约翰将会知道他在做什么。

a) although 虽然

b) so that 以便

c) but 但是

d) because 因为

4. —Would you like some more fish?

—— 你想再来一些鱼吗?

—_____ —— _____

a) No, I wouldn't. 不，我不想。

b) No, thank you. I've had enough.

不，谢谢你。我已经饱了。

c) Yes, I'd like a drink. 是的，我想来一杯饮料。

d) No, I don't like it. 不，我不喜欢它。

5. He does not often make a _____ in front of so many people. 他不经常在如此多人面前做_____ 。

a) talk 谈话

b) speech 演讲

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

c) conversation 会话

d) dialogue 对话

6. Betty and Tony _____ to hang flags in the hall by the head teacher. 贝蒂和托尼被校长_____在大厅里悬挂国旗。

a) have asked 已经要求

b) are asking 正在要求

c) were asked 被要求

d) ask 要求

7. —_____ is the sports meeting going to be held?—— 运动会将_____举行？

—It will be held at the National Stadium.

—— 它将在国家体育馆举行。

a) When 什么时候

b) What 什么

c) Where 哪里

d) How 怎样

8. I just couldn't get to sleep last night. The boys and girls _____ a lot of noise upstairs. 昨天晚上我无法入睡。楼上的男孩和女孩们_____许多噪音。

a) are going to make 打算制造

b) make 制造

c) made 制造了

d) have made 已经制造

4 Complete the passage with the correct form of the words in the box. 用方框中单词的正确形式完成短文。

although 虽然　famous 著名的　get 得到
great 大的　hold 举办 musician 音乐家
surprise 惊讶　that 那个　who 谁

Every summer, at a farm near Glastonbury, a small town in England, a big rock concert is held. The world's most (1) _____ artists play in a building where cows live for most of the year. In 1970, Michael Eavis had the idea and (2) _____ the first concert on the farm. At first, the concert was very small, but now it is one of the (3) _____ rock concerts. That is why (4) _____ from all over the world love to play there. They play to about 175，000 rock music fans, (5) _____ camp at the farm for the weekend. Many more watch the concert on TV. 每年夏天，在英国的小镇格拉斯顿伯里附近的一个农场，都要举办一场大型的摇滚音乐会。世界最（1）_____ 艺术家在一栋一年大部分时间里用来养奶牛的建筑物里演奏。在1970年，迈克尔·伊维斯想到了这个主意，并在这个农场里（2）_____ 第一场音乐会。最初，音乐会的规模非常小，但是现在它是（3）_____ 摇滚音乐会之一。那就是为什么来自世界各地的（4）_____ 喜欢在那里演出的原因。他们为大约175 000位摇滚乐歌迷演奏，（5）_____ 在农场上搭帐篷度过周末。更多的人在电视上观看音乐会。

(6) _____ everyone hopes for clear days and warm sunshine during the concert, it almost always rains. However, Glastonbury fans say it is their favourite concert. "It's an event (7) _____ we look forward to all year round. This weekend we know we are going to hear the best music, and have the most fun!"

（6）_____ 人人都期盼在音乐会期间天气晴朗、阳光明媚，但几乎总是下雨。然而，格拉斯顿伯里的歌迷们说这是他们最喜欢的音乐会。"这是我们全年期盼的一件大事。我们知道这个周末将要听到最好的音乐，并且享受最多的乐趣！"

You will not be (8) _____ to hear that it is very difficult to (9) _____ a ticket to the concert.

听到（9）_____一张音乐会的票非常难，你就不会感到（8）_____。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

5 Read the passage and choose the correct answer. 阅读短文，选择正确答案。

Talking to computers 与电脑交谈

If you come to school one day and all your friends are talking to their computers, do not worry. There is (1) _____ wrong with them. They are all just using a new kind of program (2) _____ can listen to your voice and remember who you are. Talking computers are not new. People were interested (3) _____ them twenty years ago, but they never worked well. 如果有一天，你来到学校，你所有的朋友都在与他们的电脑交谈，不要担心。他们（1）_____问题。他们都只是正在使用一种新型的程序（2）_____可以倾听你的声音，记住你是谁。会交谈的电脑不是新事物。20 年前，人们就（3）_____它们产生了兴趣，但是它们从没有做得很好。

Voice programs are very useful in our daily life. If you make a phone call about a product or (4) _____ you make a plane booking, you may find you are talking to a (5) _____. People are now able to (6) _____ messages with their voices. When you want to call Maria, you just pick up the phone and say "Maria", and Maria (7) _____ the phone. 语音程序在我们的日常生活中非常有用。如果你打电话买一件产品或（4）_____你预订飞机的话，你可能会发现你在和一台（5）_____交谈。人们现在能用他们的声音（6）_____信息。当你想给玛利亚打电话时，你只需要拿起电话，说"玛利亚"，玛利亚（7）_____电话。

There are even some new programs which can remember 50，000 words. They are useful (8) _____ people who need to put a lot of text into their computers. This is a (9) _____ thing for people like doctors and writers because it is very quick. They can just talk straight into the computer. People who like talking into the computer say that it is (10) _____ better and faster than using a keyboard. 甚至有一些新程序可以记住 50 000 个单词。它们（8）_____需要把大量的文本输入电脑的人来说是有用的。对于像医生和作家们来说，这是一件（9）_____事情，因为它非常快。他们只需要直接对着电脑谈话就可以了。那些喜欢对着电脑交谈的人说，比起用键盘来它更好、更快（10）_____。

1. a) something 某事
   b) nothing 没有事
   c) everything 一切事
   d) anything 任何事
2. a) where 哪里　　b) who 谁
   c) which 哪一个　　d) it 它
3. a) with 和……一起
   b) on 在……上
   c) to 对于
   d) in 对……
4. a) while 当……时
   b) if 如果
   c) until 直到……才
   d) after 在……之后
5. a) woman 妇女
   b) person 人
   c) voice 声音
   d) computer 电脑
6. a) send 发送　　b) give 给
   c) bring 带来　　d) hand 递给
7. a) will answer 将要接（电话）
   b) is answering 正在接（电话）
   c) answered 接（电话）
   d) has answered 已经接（电话）
8. a) as 对于　　b) with 和……一起
   c) of ……的　　d) for 对于
9. a) better 更好的　　b) best 最好的
   c) good 好的　　d) bad 坏的
10. a) much 许多　　b) very 非常
    c) more 更多　　d) less 更少

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Reading 阅读

6 Read the passages and choose the correct answer. 阅读短文，选择正确答案。

A

Some unusual jobs 一些不寻常的工作

When we ask students what they would like to be in the future, they often talk about ordinary jobs, like doctors or teachers. But if you think about it, you will find that many people do not do the jobs they planned to do. They just start doing their jobs by accident. We have talked to two people with unusual jobs. 当我们询问学生他们将来想做什么时，他们经常谈到众所周知的工作，像医生或教师。但是如果你仔细考虑的话，你将会发现许多人并没有做他们计划做的工作。他们只是偶然开始做他们的工作。我们与两个有不寻常工作的人交谈过。

Linda is a dentist, but she does not work with people. She works with horses. After university, she took care of animals' health for several years. She noticed that there were few people who could help with horses' teeth. So she went back to college and studied again. Then she had to buy special tools for her work. She is always very busy taking care of horses' teeth. "I really enjoy working with horses," said Linda. 琳达是一名牙医，但不与人工作。她与马一起工作。大学毕业后，她关爱动物的健康多年。她注意到很少有人能关爱马的牙齿。所以她返回大学再次学习。然后，为了她的工作她不得不买一些特殊的工具。她总是忙于照顾马的牙齿。"我真的喜欢与马在一起工作。"琳达说。

As soon as Mike could read, he read books about robots. When he was older he decided to make building robots his job. He made up his mind to study science, maths and computers so that he could break into the world of robot engineering. "Some of the maths is very difficult," says Mike, "but you must study maths to be an engineer." Luckily, he got top marks in all his maths exams. Now be builds robots for industry. 迈克一会阅读时，他就读一些有关机器人的书籍。当他大一点的时候，他决定把制造机器人作为他的工作。他下定决心学习科学、数学和计算机，以便于他能够进入机器人工程领域。"有些数学知识非常难，"迈克说，"但是成为一名工程师你必须学习数学。"幸运的是，他在所有的数学考试中总是得到最高分。现在他为工业制造机器人。

1. In order to take care of horses' teeth, Linda _____.
为了照顾马的牙齿，琳达_____。
a) worked on farms for several years
在农场工作多年
b) went back to college to study
返回大学学习
c) stopped her work at a college
停止了她在大学里的工作
d) worked in a hospital 在一所医院工作

2. Linda does not want to be a dentist for people because_____. 琳达不想做一名给人看病的牙医，因为_____。
a) the pay is low 薪水太低
b) she has to buy special tools
她不得不买一些特殊的工具
c) she likes working with horses
她喜欢和马在一起工作
d) she will lose her job 她将会失业

3. To become a robot engineer, Mike_____.
要做一名机器人工程师，迈克_____。
a) had to study hard 必须努力学习
b) did not have to go to college
不必去上大学
c) did not have to study maths
不必学习数学
d) bought a lot of robots 买了许多机器人

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

4. Mike got top marks in all his maths exams, although_____. 迈克在所有的数学考试中取得了最高分，尽管_____。

a) he does not like maths 他不喜欢数学

b) he could not break into the world of robot engineering 他不能进入机器人工程领域

c) he does not like the robots in his books 他不喜欢他书中那些机器人

d) maths was not easy to study 数学不容易学

B

People in the UK are always talking about the weather. In the UK, instead of saying "Hello", people sometimes say "It's a lovely day" when the weather is sunny, or "Terrible weather, isn't it?" when it is bad. There are many words to describe the weather too. Why is this? 英国人总是谈论天气。在英国，人们不是说"你好"，而是当天气好的时候，有时说"天气不错"，或当天气不好的时候说"多么糟糕的天气，不是吗？"也有许多词汇来描述天气。这是为什么呢?

Perhaps one of the reasons is that the weather in the UK is always changing. The UK is made up of a group of islands. The sea separates it from the rest of Europe. The winds coming from the sea make the weather change all the time. On the same day, it can be hot and cold, dry and wet, windy and still. So people have to think about the weather all the time. 或许，其中原因之一是英国的天气总是变化的。英国由一群岛屿组成。大海把它与欧洲其他国家分开。来自大海的风使天气一直在变化。在同一天里，天气可能有热有冷，有干有湿，有风无风。因此，人们必须一直考虑天气问题。

The changing weather is important for farmers. It is sometimes difficult to plan when to plant and when to pick fruit and vegetables. Too much rain in July and August is harmful and costs farmers in the UK a lot of money. But it is not only farmers who pay attention to the weather. Most British people have gardens, and they need to watch the weather carefully to decide what work to do in them. 变化的天气对于农民来说非常重要。有时候很难计划何时种植、何时采摘水果和蔬菜。7、8月份过多的雨水是有害的，并且还花费英国农民大量的钱。但不仅仅只是农民关注天气。大多数英国人拥有花园，他们也需要仔细关注天气，进而来决定他们在花园里做一些什么工作。

So, there is a good reason for British people to talk about the weather. It is a very important part of their lives. 所以，英国人谈论天气，有一个非常好的理由。谈论天气是他们生活中非常重要的一部分。

1. What is the best title for the passage? 这篇文章的最佳标题是什么?

a) The British weather. 英国的天气。

b) Talking about the weather. 谈论天气。

c) The weather in China and Britain. 中国和英国的天气。

d) The changing weather. 变化的天气。

2. According to the passage, which of the following statements is true? 根据这篇文章，下列这些陈述哪项是正确的？

a) It rains all the time in Britain. 在英国，一直下雨。

b) The weather changes a lot in Britain. 在英国，天气变化很大。

c) It rains a lot in autumn in Britain. 在英国，秋季经常下雨。

d) It does not rain very often in Britain. 在英国，不经常下雨。

3. What is the problem for farmers? 对于农民来说，问题是什么？

a) They get sick in summer. 在夏季他们生病。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

b) They do not understand the weather.
他们不懂天气。

c) Most British people have gardens.
大多数英国人拥有花园。

d) It is difficult to plan the farm work because of the weather.
因为天气，计划农活有些困难。

4. According to the passage, which of the following statements is true?
根据这篇文章，下列哪项陈述是正确的？

a) People enjoy the weather in the UK.
人们喜欢英国的天气。

b) Weather is an important part of people's lives in the UK.
天气是英国人生活中的一个重要组成部分。

c) Everyone thinks the weather is terrible.
大家都认为天气太糟糕。

d) Only people who have gardens watch the weather. 只有那些拥有花园的人才关注天气。

C

Victoria and Albert Museum Project

维多利亚和艾伯特博物馆项目

The Victoria and Albert Museum in London has an exciting new project, the World Beach Project. It is an art project open to anybody, anywhere in the world, of any age. Many of us have made simple shapes with sand and stones on beaches. This project is about making simple shapes with stones of different colours and sizes. 伦敦的维多利亚和艾伯特博物馆有一个令人兴奋的新项目，世界沙滩项目。这是一个对世界上任何地方、任何年龄的人都开放的艺术项目。我们许多人已经用沙子和石头在沙滩上制作过简单的模型。这个项目是有关用不同颜色、不同尺寸的石头制作简单的模型。

An artist at the museum started the project. The rule is that there is no drawing in—or digging of—sand: just putting stones together and nothing else. 博物馆的一位艺术家创办了这个项目。规则就是不需要在沙子上画画或在沙子上挖洞，只是把石头放在一起，其他什么都不用做。

The project happens in two places:
这个项目主要发生在两个地方：

At the beach 在沙滩上

1. Find a place to make your shape.
找个地方制作你的模型。

2. Look for and collect your stones.
寻找和收集你的石头。

3. Put your stones in different groups. You can group them by colour, size or shape. 把你的石头分成不同的小组。你可以根据颜色、尺寸或形状来对它们分组。

4. Make your shape. 制作你的模型。

5. Keep going until you have finished the shape, run out of stones, or have no more ideas. 一直继续，直到你完成了模型，用完了石头或没有更多的想法。

6. Take three photos as described below. (You can take more and then choose the best three.) 如下所述，拍三张照片。(你可以拍更多的照片，然后选择三张最好的。)

At your computer 在你的电脑上

1. Select your three photos: 选出你的三张照片：
   - one of a beach 一张沙滩照片
   - one of you working on the shape
     一张你正在制作模型的照片
   - one of the finished work 一张作品完成照

2. Go to the map page of the website and find your beach.
进入网站的地图页面，找到你的沙滩。

3. Go to "I want to add my beach project to the map" to add your three photos.
进入"我想添加我的沙滩项目到地图上"来添加你的三张照片。

1. Who can take part in the project? 谁可以参加这个项目？

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

a) Only artists. 只有艺术家。

b) Anyone from anywhere in the world. 来自世界任何地方的任何人。

c) Only people in London. 只有伦敦人。

d) Only children. 只有孩子。

2. What can you use to make your shape?
你可以用什么来制作你的模型？

a) Sand. 沙子。　b) Stones. 石头。

c) Earth. 土。　d) Water. 水。

3. What do you need to do with your shape?
你对你的模型需要做什么？

a) Take it to the museum. 把它带到博物馆。

b) Put the photos of the shape on the website. 把模型的照片放在网站上。

c) Leave it at the beach. 把它留在沙滩上。

d) Add sand. 添加沙子。

4. According to the writer, which of the following statements is true?
根据作者，下列这些陈述哪项是正确的？

a) The project is not very exciting. 这个项目不是非常令人兴奋。

b) The project happens at the museum. 这个项目在博物馆进行。

c) The project happens in only one place. 这个项目只发生在一个地方。

d) The project is about making shapes with stones. 这个项目是关于用石头制作模型的。

Writing 写作

7 Read the email from Tom.
阅读来自汤姆的邮件。

FROM: Tom 寄信人：汤姆

TO: Daming 收件人：大明

SUBJECT: Can you give me some advice?
主题：你能给我一些建议吗？

Dear Daming，亲爱的大明：

Time flies! 光阴似箭！

I've been in China for more than two months now. Though I've enjoyed my stay here very much，I do have some problems living in China. For example, when I'm invited to dinner, my friends always serve me a lot of food, though I've told them I'm full. I don't know what to do. 如今我已经来中国两个多月了。尽管我非常喜欢呆在这里，但是我在中国生活还是有一些问题。比如，当我应邀参加晚宴时，我的朋友们总是给我许多食物，尽管我已经告诉他们我吃饱了。我不知道怎么做。

Can you give me some advice?
你可以给我一些建议吗？

Yours，你的，

Tom 汤姆

Now write a reply to Tom for Daming.
现在为大明给汤姆写一封回信。

Speaking 口语

8 Look at the pictures and try to describe what Henry does on Saturday.
看图片，并尽力描述亨利在周六做的事情。

9 Talk about Henry's activities. Give advice about a healthier way to spend Saturday.
谈论亨利的活动。关于以更健康的方式度过周六给出建议。



A single conversation with a wise man is better than ten years of study.
与君一席话，胜读十年书。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

参考答案及点拨

Module 1 Travel

Unit 1 We toured the city by bus and by taxi.

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀

1. C　2. C　3. B　4. C

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. pilot　2. exactly　3. direct　4. flight　5. succeeded

二、6. B

7. B 点拨：此题用语境法。A项意为“主要地，大体上”；B项意为“正是；精确地”；C项意为“简单地；仅仅”；D项意为“主要地；通常”。由后一句“对我们来说，与他人保持联系更容易。”可知，此处应是肯定前一句内容。　8. B

9. C 点拨：此题用关键词法。由 thirsty 为形容词可知用 a bit 修饰。

10. B

三、11. had better not　12. look forward to

13. As long as　14. at the end of　15. Bad luck

Unit 2 It's a long story.

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

一、1. D 点拨：选项A“活到老学到老。”；选项B“条条大路通罗马。”；选项C“熟能生巧。”；选项D“待人以善，行将更远。”结合本剧中李林在火车上乐于助人的故事推断D项符合本剧写作意图。

二、2. A

3. Three/3.；On the station platform；In Car 9；In Car 8.

4. Li Lin.

5. D

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. comfortable　2. officer　3. stupid

4. surprised　5. jacket

二、6. A

7. C 点拨：offer 后跟动词不定式。

8. D 点拨：be afraid of doing sth. 意为“害怕干某事”。

9. A

10. A 点拨：take off“脱下”；put off“推迟”；get off“下车”；turn off“关上”。由语境可知选A。

三、11. Take; Don't;of　12. got on

13. It's; for; to speak　14. too;to

15. saw; cleaning

Unit 3 Language in use

Ⅴ. 课时针对训练

一、1. The Greens　2. across　3. eat; bad

4. to clear out　5. How long;it take

二、6. A　7. C　8. D　9. B　10. B

三、11. direct　12. flight　13. pilot

14. succeeded　15. jacket　16. full　17. care

18. without　19. took　20. because

Module 2 Education

Unit 1 They don't sit in rows.

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀

1. C　2. B　3. C　4. A

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. pool　2. ours　3. row　4. tie　5. compare

二、6. B　7. C

8. B 点拨：cheer up 是动副结构的短语，当宾语是代词时，要放在中间，故可排除A项；let's 后跟动词原形，故可排除C项。

9. B 点拨：put on 表“穿”的动作且其后跟衣服类名词作宾语，符合语境。

10. A 点拨：hope to do sth. 意为“希望干某事”。

三、11. friendly;wears;on　12. as he does

13. one/some day　14. What's; like

15. doesn't mean

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 2 What do I like best about school?

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

一、1. Susie's school life.

二、2. C　3. B　4. B

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. pass　2. secondary　3. bell

4. present　5. absent

二、6. having　7. is　8. is asked

9. activities　10. doesn't rain

三、11. A　12. D

13. A 点拨：not... until... 意为“直到……才……”。

14. C

15. B 点拨：由题干中的系动词为复数 are 和语境可知选 B。

四、16. have learned; since　17. last for

18. have a break/rest 或 take a break/rest

19. instead of　20. five more minutes

Unit 3 Language in use

Ⅴ. 课时针对训练

一、1. C

2. B 点拨：问句句意为“你在英国的生活怎么样？”，答语第一句句意为“和这里完全不一样。”，由此可推断答语第二句句意为“令我惊讶的是，那里的人喝加牛奶的茶。”，故选 B。　3. C

4. B 点拨：考查不定代词。根据第一句中的“two”可知谈到两者；根据语境，可知需要看两件之外的另一件，这两件都不合适，故选 neither；another 指许多中的另一个。　5. A

二、6. A　7. C

8. A 点拨：用词义辨析法解题。either 两者当中任意一个；neither 两者都不；both 两者都；all 三者或三者以上都。all 和 both 后的谓语动词都用复数形式，根据答语中“你来决定。”可知用 either 表示“两者中的任何一者”。

9. B

10. C

三、11. pass　12. until　13. secondary

14. absent　15. bell　16. instead　17. Everyone

18. tie　19. ours　20. hope

Module 3 Life now and then

Unit 1 They sometimes work harder.

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀

1. C　2. C　3. A　4. C

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. deaf　2. spare　3. seldom

4. fear　5. supposed

二、6. are supposed to　7. deal with

8. remember　9. wealth　10. doubled

三、11. B

12. D 点拨：此题用词义辨析法。mostly“主要地”；especially“特别地”；partly“部分地”；nearly“将近，差不多”，由句意可知是“将近五分之三……”。故选 D。

13. A 点拨：考查固定搭配。句意：——你爸爸过去常常开车去上班吗？——是的，但是现在他喜欢用公共交通，他习惯坐公交车了。used to do sth. 过去常常做某事，be used to doing sth. 习惯于做某事。故选 A。

14. A　15. B

四、16. don't suppose; comes

17. The number of　18. does he

19. Speak up　20. Why not

Unit 2 I think life is better today.

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

一、1. life now and then

二、2. B　3. B　4. A

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. lonely　2. tiny　3. afford

4. educated　5. postman

二、6. Reading　7. to buy

8. have been married　9. heat　10. Unluckily

三、11. C

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

12. C 点拨：此题用语法分析法。由第一句时态为一般过去时可知空格处应用 ago；由第二句时态为现在完成时可知空格处应用 before。

13. C 点拨：考查非谓语动词。句意：这些天工人们正忙着 _____ 新楼的窗户。be busy doing sth. 意为“忙于做某事”，是固定搭配。故选 C。

14. C 15. C

四、16. good education

17. In general, this product satisfied the needs of most customers.

18. Not all

19. more than

20. play; role in

Unit 3 Language in use

V. 课时针对训练

一、1. As a result 2. sharing ; pollution

3. find out 4. full of/ filled with 5. of ;as

二、6. D 点拨：考查形容词的最高级。one of 的固定用法是：one of+ the+ 形容词最高级 + 名词复数，表示“最……之一”。故选 D。

7. A

8. A 点拨：考查形容词比较级的用法。“the+ 比较级，the+ 比较级”意为“越……就越……”；mistake 为可数名词，用 few 修饰。故选 A。

9. D 10. B

三、11. Though 12. deaf 13. wealthier

14. used 15. tiny 16. afford 17. fear

18. role 19. education 20. doubled

Module 4 Rules and suggestions

Unit 1 You must be careful of falling stones.

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀

1. C 2. B 3. A 4. C

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. edge 2. attention 3. straight

4. smooth 5. fairly

二、6. lost 7. clearly 8. smoothly

9. teaching 10. ourselves

三、11. C 12. C

13. B 点拨：考查词义辨析。句意：——我女儿下个月将要动身去美国学习了。——你会非常想念她的。set down 意为“放下；记下”，set off 意为“动身；出发”，set up 意为“建立”。B 项符合题意。故选 B。 14. C 15. A

四、16. Whatever; try your best

17. lead the way

18. on your own

19. went off; returned

20. how stars should attract/catch/draw the attention of fans properly

Unit 2 We must keep the camp clean.

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

一、1. We must learn to look after ourselves.

二、2. Two. 3. C 4. B

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. tent 2. suddenly 3. soft

4. blood 5. still

二、6. C

7. B 点拨：go to bed 表示“上床睡觉”，强调上床睡觉的动作；fall asleep/go to sleep 表示“入睡；睡着”。

8. A 点拨：“经常看见某人做某事”或“看见某人做了某事”用“see sb. do sth.”。

9. D 10. B

三、11. in the tree

12. looked up; ran towards

13. move on 14. reached out

15. In the middle of; strange noise

Unit 3 Language in use

V. 课时针对训练

一、1. A 点拨：be known for 意为“因……而出名”。

2. C 点拨：句意：——你最好快点。我们会赶不上飞机的。——别担心。飞机两个小时之后才起飞呢。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

take out“取出”；take away“带走”；take off“起飞”;take on“呈现”。由题干中的 The plane 可推断答案。 3. A 4. B

5. A 点拨：in order (not)to do sth.为了(不)做某事，故排除 B、D 两项；由“早点起床”可知是为了“不迟到”，故选 A。

二、6. C 点拨：由答语“他去北京了”，可推断不可能是周老师，表示否定推测用 can't。 7. D

8. B 9. D 10. A

三、11. set 12. whenever 13. own

14. fairly 15. straight 16. asleep 17. open

18. hang 19. sudden 20. still

Module 5 Look after yourself

Unit 1 We'd better get you to hospital.

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀

1. B 2. A 3. B 4. C

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. accident 2. agreement 3. blind

4. knee(s) 5. steps

二、6. slowly 7. happened 8. knees

9. them 10. missing

三、11. C 12. C 13. D 14. D

15. C 点拨：根据答语“我的左腿疼，我不能动。”可知，问句应表示“你发生什么事了”。happen 常指未能预见的事件的“发生”；take place 多指按计划“发生”。

四、16. catch up with

17. had/made an agreement 18. call for

19. fell over; running down

20. fell off; blood on

Unit 2 Get off the sofa!

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

一、1. Here are five rules for a healthy life.

二、2. D 3. D 4. C

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. worried 2. cutting 3. harmful

4. hours' 5. To keep

二、6. harms 7. effort 8. fit

9. requires 10. physical

三、11. B 12. A

13. C 点拨：put up“张贴，挂起”；put off“推迟”；put on“增加”；put down“镇压”；由语境“这个月我增了 2 公斤”知选 C。

14. D 点拨：由 two weeks ago 可知本句时态为一般过去时，read 的过去式为 read。

15. A 点拨：结合本题语境可知，此处表示“Leonardo DiCaprio 一直期望能获得奥斯卡奖”，expect to do sth.“期望做某事”，故选 A。

四、16. not only, but 17. say no to smoking

18. making an effort 19. Thanks to

20. once in a while

Unit 3 Language in use

Ⅴ. 课时针对训练

一、1. C 点拨：be worth doing“值得做”。

2. A

3. C 点拨：die from“死于……”，常用来指死于外部原因。

4. D 点拨：hit sb. on the head“打某人的头”。

5. A 点拨：take an interest in doing sth.“做某事有兴趣”。

二、6. D 7. C 8. B 9. C 10. B 11. C

12. C 13. C 14. D 15. C

三、16. Thanks 17. care 18. sofa 19. fit

20. steps 21. harm 22. weight 23. while

24. just 25. say

Module 6 Eating together

Unit 1 When is the school-leavers' party?

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀

1. B 2. A 3. B 4. B

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. calendars 2. balloons 3. painting

4. fork 5. Italian

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

二、6. invitation　7. knives　8. to finish
9. traditional　10. be completed
三、11. A 点拨:be made of意为“由……制成(从成品中看得出原材料)”;be made from 意为“由……制成(从成品中看不出原材料)”。
12. D　13. D
14. C 点拨:“It's no good doing sth.”意为“做某事是没有用的。”
15. A 点拨:由句意知,句子的主语 Mr Green 是动词 invite 的承受者,谓语应用被动语态,排除 B、D;由动词 sang 可知,“受邀”的动作已经发生过,谓语应用一般过去时态,排除 C。
四、16. In fact, he was very pleased.
17. We don't need to heat up the dish.
18. Is the food made with eggs and butter?
19. Would you like to help me play the dance music at the party?
20. It's no good doing too many things for children.

Ⅱ Unit 2 Knives and forks are used for most Western food.

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练
一、1. We should watch what other people do and copy them.
二、2. D　3. C　4. F
Ⅳ. 课时针对训练
一、1. wings　2. cross　3. similar
4. served　5. knives
二、6. Ladies; gentlemen　7. Western
8. are given　9. widely　10. yourselves
三、11. A　12. C
13. A
14. D 点拨:help oneself to... 意为“请随便吃/喝……”,由“children”可知,oneself要用yourselves,故选D。　15. B
四、16. at the start　17. as soon as
18. doesn't; any more　19. such as
20. be cross with

Ⅱ Unit 3 Language in use

Ⅴ. 课时针对训练
一、1. dress up　2. it; to learn
3. piece of advice　4. at the end　5. pick me up
二、6. C　7. D　8. B　9. C　10. B　11. C
12. A　13. B　14. A　15. C
三、16. saying　17. served　18. similar
19. Knives　20. spoon　21. fingers
22. yourself　23. cross　24. enjoy　25. over

Module 7 English for you and me

Ⅱ Unit 1 Have you ever been to an English corner?

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀
一、1. B　二、2. F　3. T　4. T　5. T
Ⅳ. 课时针对训练
一、1. language　2. bright　3. whenever
4. effort　5. including
二、6. achieved　7. speaker　8. trying
9. Although　10. beginning
三、11. D 点拨:此题用词语应用法解答。make great progress是固定搭配,意为“取得巨大进步”。
12. C　13. A　14. C
15. C 点拨:结合本题语境可知,them指代的是dreams,由此可知和它搭配的动词是achieve,表示“实现梦想”,故选C。

Ⅱ Unit 2 We all own English.

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练
一、1. English is the most important foreign language.
二、2. B　3. D　4. C
Ⅳ. 课时针对训练
一、1. secretary　2. Indians　3. boss
4. quarters　5. zeros
二、6. as　7. in　8. between

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

9. for　10. through

三、11. C　12. A

13. B 点拨：此题用词语应用法解答。第一个空是谓语部分，应用动词 own；第二个空考查固定用法 one's own...“某人自己的……”，故选 B。

14. B 点拨：此题用词义辨析法解答。第一个空修饰名词 English，应用形容词 everyday；第二个空作状语，应用 every day，故选 B。　15. C

Unit 3 Language in use

Ⅴ. 课时针对训练

一、1. A　2. B

3. D 点拨：go on with sth. 表示休息过后，继续做同一件事。　4. B

5. D 点拨：由前句“There's no ticket left...”可推知后句句意为“你和你妹妹都不能去”，故选 D。

二、6. A　7. B 点拨：考查时间状语从句。not...until... 直到……才……，是固定搭配，句意：“直到我完成家庭作业才会做那件事。”

8. A　9. B　10. C

三、11. grow up　12. a quarter of

13. The reason why　14. trade　15. spread

16. has borrowed; from　17. continues

18. common　19. together with

20. even though

Module 8 My future life

Unit 1 Here's to our friendship!

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀

1. C　2. C　3. B　4. A

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. handbag　2. intend　3. friendship

4. pardon　5. beats

二、6. B

7. D 点拨：此题用词义辨析法。buy“买”；paint“绘画”；wash“洗，清洗”；fetch“去拿来”。根据“我把钥匙忘在会议室了。”可知，后文请求对方“去把钥匙拿回来”，故选 D。

8. C 点拨：此题用词语辨析法。beat 后跟表示人的名词；win 后跟表示比赛、名次等的名词。

9. B　10. B

三、11. make a speech　12. go back

13. Good for you　14. a bit　15. Here's to

Unit 2 I know that you will be better at maths.

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

一、1. C

二、2. Her friends, teachers and parents.

3. classmates　4. Friendship, effort and trust.

5. Her friends.

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. bedside　2. note　3. kindness

4. rose　5. laugh

二、6. to go　7. success　8. happiness

9. to come　10. school-leavers'

三、11. A

12. A 点拨：此题用语境法。A 项意为“保持联系”；B 项意为“等等看”；C 项意为“听起来好极了”；D 项意为“这边来”。根据答语后一句“不要忘记写信。”可知要保持联系。故选 A。

13. B 点拨：try one's best to do sth.“尽某人最大的努力做某事”。　14. C　15. C

四、16. stay in touch　17. laugh at　18. woke up　19. try your best　20. is good at

Unit 3 Language in use

Ⅴ. 课时针对训练

一、1. how to repair　2. make a living

3. no choice　4. where　5. interested in drawing

二、6. C　7. A　8. B　9. B

10. A 点拨：考查定语从句。先行词 The book 为“物”，用 which 或 that 引导定语从句。

三、11. proud　12. trust　13. laugh at

14. kindness　15. success　16. give up

17. disappointed　18. woke up　19. note

20. memories

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

教材习题参考答案

Module 1 Travel

▶ Unit 1 We toured the city by bus and by taxi.

1 **1.** taxi **2.** bus **3.** bicycle **4.** ship

2 **1.** ten **2.** eight **3.** CA 938 **4.** London; Beijing **5.** 11:30 **6.** 5:30 in the afternoon

3

	Holiday activities
Lingling	went to see her grandparents in Henan Province by train
Tony	went to stay with his family in the UK by plane
Daming	went to Hong Kong by plane and took a boat to Lantau Island and went to Disneyland
Betty	toured Beijing, took a tour to the Summer Palace and went for a long walk around the lake in Beijing

4 **1.** In winter.
2. Because of the Spring Festival.
3. The school-leavers' party.

5 **1.** a) **2.** b) **3.** a) **4.** a)

▶ Unit 2 It's a long story.

3 **1.** b) **2.** a) **3.** c) **4.** b) **5.** c) **6.** c)

4 (1)miss (2)take care (3)sir (4)afraid (5)officer (6)take off

▶ Unit 3 Language in use

1 (1)the (2)a (3)\ (4)an (5)the (6)an (7)\ (8)The (9)the (10)the (11)the

2 **1.** school **2.** the school **3.** The flowers **4.** in time **5.** a few **6.** the most **7.** the Whites

3 **1.** flight **2.** seat **3.** station **4.** tour **5.** landed **6.** ready

4 **1.** because of **2.** looking forward to **3.** make yourself comfortable **4.** full of **5.** As long as

5 **London to Sydney** 12; 9; 1; 1, 199; 1, 247
Sydney to London 24; 1, 119; 1, 189; 20

7 **Advantage of Concorde:** It could carry one hundred passengers and flew faster than the speed of sound.
Disadvantage of Concorde: It was very noisy.

8 **1.** One hundred passengers.
2. Because Concorde could carry one hundred passengers and flew faster than the speed of sound.
3. Over three hours.

Module 2 Education

▶ Unit 1 They don't sit in rows.

2 **1.** nice **2.** Susie's classmates **3.** went to school on his holiday **4.** just visiting

3 Susie's school: about 700; about 30; sit around tables; huge
Your school: 略

4 **1.** Susie. **2.** He took them himself. **3.** Daming's class. **4.** She hopes she can visit Susie's school one day.

5 (1)rows (2)is wearing (3)tie (4)enjoy (5)pools

▶ Unit 2 What do I like best about school?

2 **1.** Four years. **2.** More than six hours. **3.** No, they don't. **4.** Very great. Because there are many kinds of after-school activities.

3 **We can get the information from the passage directly**: 3, 5
We can get the information from the passage indirectly: 4
We cannot get the information from the passage: 1, 2

4 **1.** bell **2.** absent **3.** weekdays **4.** pass

▶ Unit 3 Language in use

1 (1) both (2) something (3) neither (4) a few (5) all (6) ourselves (7) none (8) some (9) many

2 (1)His (2)myself (3)mine (4)each other (5)both

3 **1.** He; himself; him
2. their; themselves; they
3. She; her; our; we; us

4 (1)on (2)in (3)in (4)at (5)in (6)for

6 **1.** Kate wants to go to Germany on holiday next year.

未德基

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

2. Pete has played chess since primary school.

3. Kate and Pete have sports practice on Wednesday afternoons.

7 Kate: Year 9; German; the language club; tennis; holiday in Germany

Pete: Year 10; Geography; the language club, the chess club; football; win all the chess matches

8 b) a)3 b)1 c)4 d)2

9 **1.** √ **4.** √

Module 3 Life now and then

▶ Unit 1 They sometimes work harder.

2 **1.** Write about life in the past and life today.

2. The question is "Is life today better than it was in the past?"

3. Betty asks if they can write about medicine and pollution.

4. Daming asks if they can write about personal safety.

3 **1.** a) **2.** b) **3.** b) **4.** b)

4 **1.** fear **2.** spare **3.** deaf **4.** doubled **5.** used to **6.** wealth

▶ Unit 2 I think life is better today.

3 (1) postman (2) cold (3) tiny (4) candles (5)generally speaking (6) traffic

▶ Unit 3 Language in use

1 (1) easier (2) healthier (3) longer (4) fastest/the fastest (5)more easily (6) good (7) fit (8) more crowded (9) worse

3 **1.** seldom **2.** spare **3.** heat **4.** speak up **5.** more than

5 **2.** The pollution from factories filled the air. People put their rubbish outside in the streets.

3. They didn't always go to school, because they had to work instead.

6

	Grandmother	Mother
Age to start school	8 years old	6 years old
Age to start work	14 years old	22 years old
Age to get married	18 years old	24 years old
Number of children	four children	one child
Age to stop working	50 years old	55 years old

Module 4 Rules and suggestions

▶ Unit 1 You must be careful of falling stones.

2 **1.** Betty is leaving tomorrow morning.

2. Mr Jackson is going to tell them about personal safety.

3. Betty's mum suggests Betty should not drink the water from a stream or walk too close to the sides of the hill path.

4. No, she doesn't. She thinks there is nothing much to worry about.

3 **1.** c) **2.** a) **3.** a)

4 always wear proper clothes;
walk too close to the edge of the hill path;
keep together;
go off on your own;
eat anything till noon;
drink all your water in one go;
go rock climbing;
be careful of falling stones

5 (1)Whenever (2)thick (3)smooth (4)straight (5)stones

▶ Unit 2 We must keep the camp clean.

2 **1.** A place high off the ground, not in the tree.

2. A mother bear.

3. Yes, I do.

3

What happened	What they should or should not do
In the middle of the first night, the writer heard a strange noise outside. And the bag of food was open.	They should hang the food in a tree.
During the second night, the bears came again and took the food from the tree.	They should keep the camp clean and make lots of noise.
On the fourth day, the writer saw a baby bear playing with some sticks and stones.Then his huge mother came.	She should not run.

4 (1)sudden (2)gun (3)sticks (4)blood

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

▶ **Unit 3 Language in use**

1 **1.** c **2.** b **3.** d **4.** e **5.** f **6.** a

4 (1)worried (2)Although (3)stream (4)tourists (5)keeping

These are possible answers:

1. You should put your rubbish into the litter bins.

2. You shouldn't throw your rubbish into the streams.

3. You must take care of the trees.

4. You mustn't cut your names into the trees.

5 **1.** whenever **2.** stone **3.** smooth **4.** tent **5.** gun **6.** sudden **7.** sticks

6 **1.** He tries to say that people must wake up to the fact that pollution is causing damage to the progress we've made.

2. He tries to say that people mustn't waste electricity.

3. The school suggests the students should pass on what they have learnt in school to their parents and neighbours.

4. It has to include education about the environment as part of the timetable.

7 **1.** plan the walk

2. you are going to walk; clearly marked paths

3. paths

4. you can stop

5. bring food

6. too hot; very bad weather

7. new walk

Revision module A

1 **1.** a **2.** c **3.** c **4.** c **5.** c **6.** a **7.** b **8.** a **9.** a **10.** c **11.** c **12.** b **13.** a **14.** c **15.** c

2 from nine o'clock on Saturday morning; two; Daming and Tony; Wednesday; seven o'clock; eleven o'clock; 300 *yuan*

3 **1.** b) **2.** c) **3.** d) **4.** a) **5.** c) **6.** a) **7.** c) **8.** b)

4 (1)safest (2)seriously (3)properly (4)seldom (5)more dangerous

5 (1)e) (2)a) (3)b) (4)d)

6 **1.** c) **2.** d) **3.** c)

7 **1.** b) **2.** d) **3.** a) **4.** c)

Module 5 Look after yourself

▶ **Unit 1 We'd better get you to hospital.**

2 **1.** Yes, he cut his finger once, and he fell off his bike once.

2. It took about a month for the wound to get better.

3. His knee and shoulder hurt after he fell off his bike.

4. He is reading about personal safety and accidents in the mountains.

3 Accident report

Where: in the mountains Who: Daming What happened: He fell over when he was running down the steps. How the person was hurt: He hit his head and his leg hurt. He cut his knee.

4 **1.** Because it was going to rain.

2. He fell over when he was running down the steps.

3. About ten minutes ago.

5 (1)agreement (2)catch up (3)accident (4)hurt (5)blind

▶ **Unit 2 Get off the sofa!**

2 **1.** ⓔ **2.** ⓐ **3.** ⓒ **4.** ⓑ **5.** ⓓ

4 (1) effort (2) expect (3) health (4) sofa (5) harm

▶ **Unit 3 Language in use**

1 (1)planning (2)went (3)got up (4)love (5)do (6)played (7)have

2 (1)came (2)was shaking (3)noticed (4)was standing (5)was touching (6)hit (7)making (8)dancing

4 (1)steps (2)healthy (3)exercising (4)smoking (5)worst

5 **1.** keep fit **2.** at least **3.** thanks to **4.** in the future **5.** once in a while

6 **1.** The conversation takes place in a doctor's office.

2. Mr Maxwell and the doctor are talking.

3. Mr Maxwell wants to give up smoking.

7 25; Yes; Not fit; cough; colds; To join a group

8 **1.** c) **2.** d) **3.** b) **4.** a)

9 **1.** c) **2.** b) **3.** d) **4.** a)

Module 6 Eating together

▶ **Unit 1 When is the school-leavers' party?**

1 school-leavers' party; 5pm; the school hall; finger food

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

2

	Dish	Made with...
Lingling	hot and sour soup	chicken and vegetables
Betty	cheeseburgers	hamburgers and cheese
Daming	*jiaozi*	Not mentioned in the passage
Tony	pizza	cheese, tomato and ham

3 **1.** He was chosen to play the dance music.
2. At home.
3. Because it's eaten everywhere in England.

4 (1)calendar (2)balloons (3)paint
(4)spoon (5)knife (6)fork

▶ Unit 2 Knives and forks are used for most Western food.

3 略

4 **1.** I should eat with a knife and fork unless it is finger food.The fork is held in my left hand and the knife in my right, and the food is held with the fork and cut with the knife. I should eat soup with a spoon.When eating chicken wings, pears, and watermelon, fingers can be used.
2. Enjoy your meal. 答案不唯一。
3. When I'm given something I don't like.
4. No.
5. In China, a meal is usually over as soon as people finish eating.

6 (1)knives (2)wings
(3)serve (4)ladies (5)gentlemen

▶ Unit 3 Language in use

1 **1.** is served **2.** mustn't be taken
3. is open **4.** are not allowed **5.** is closed

2 (1) are served (2) is kept
(3) are allowed (4) is improved (5) enjoy

3 (1) picked up (2) eat (3) ordered
(4) tasted (5) asked (6) drank
(7) paid (8) called (9) put on

4 (1) f (2) a (3) b (4) d (5) c (6) e

5 a—2, b—3, c—1

6 1—b, 2—a, 3—c

7 **1.** He is worried about what he should and shouldn't do as a guest in China.
2. Three courses.
3. Because it is difficult to use chopsticks at first.
4. For everyone to share.
5. Yes, it is.Because preparation of a big meal takes a long time and everything will look beautiful.

Module 7 English for you and me

▶ Unit 1 Have you ever been to an English corner?

3 **1.** L **2.** B **3.** L **4.** L

4 Possible answers:
1. it requires too much effort
2. you keep studying it
3. your spoken English isn't good
4. their language level may be higher than yours
5. she can speak English whenever she meets Betty

5 **1.** achieved; progress **2.** speakers **3.** require

▶ Unit 2 We all own English.

2 **1.** Nearly a quarter of the world's population.
2. In the twentieth century, the US spread English to the world through newspapers, television and films.
3. By the middle of the twenty-first century.
4. Everyone who speaks it.

3 a) 第 4 段 b) 第 1 段
c) 第 2 段 d) 第 5 段 e) 第 3 段

4 **1.** secretary **2.** boss **3.** India
4. zero **5.** quarter

▶ Unit 3 Language in use

1 **1.** because **2.** before **3.** if
4. although **5.** after **6.** so that
7. so; that **8.** while **9.** when

2 **1.** to study **2.** to give **3.** to practise
4. to speak **5.** to learn

3 **1.** Meg. **2.** He needs to practise it every day.
3. He enjoys sport and he likes schoolwork less than it.

4 (1) requires (2) to practise (3) improve
(4) to achieve (5) written (6) to spread (7) spoken

5 **1.** b **2.** d **3.** c **4.** d

6 a)

7 **1.** They can easily find books, CDs, and online courses to practise their English.
2. A website called *Now talk!* has been developed.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

3. They get a lot of speaking practice because there are only four students for one teacher.

4. 略

Module 8 My future life

▶ Unit 1 Here's to our friendship!

1 **1.** It is the school-leavers' party.

2. They are dancing and talking.

2 **1.** Betty is going to the school-leavers' party.

2. She's going to help Tony put up the pictures, balloons and flags.

3. Betty refuses to eat because she is going to eat at the party.

3 Their feelings: enjoyed the party; a bit sad
The hall: wonderful
The music: a great beat; a bit noisy
Their plans: Tony: hope to stay in China for long; Betty: finish her high school education in China, and then go back to her home town one day; Daming: become an English teacher
The food and drink: hot dogs; pancakes; apple juice

4 **1.** Because she doesn't know when they will be back together again.

2. The international flags on the walls make the hall look wonderful.

3. It's got a great beat but it is a bit noisy.

4. He hopes to stay in China for long.

5. Hot dogs, pancakes and apple juice.

6. For their friendship and the future.

5 **1.** pardon **2.** pancake **3.** intend **4.** future

▶ Unit 2 I know that you will be better at maths.

1 **1.** a, b, c **2.** a

2 **1.** 第二段最后一句。

2. 分别是第三、第四、第五段的第一句。

3. 从朋友处学到的东西可从第二段最后一句和第三段倒数第二句看出。
从老师处学到的东西可从第四段第一句看出。
从父母处学到的东西可从第五段第一句看出。

3 **1.** There is no success without effort.

2. Keep on running. Even if you are the last to finish running, you won't fail.

3. He wanted Betty to work harder at maths.

4. She would write "Thanks! I will do it better!" to her father.

5. It means the happiness of the last three years.

4 **1.** moving; warm **2.** a); c); d)

▶ Unit 3 Language in use

1 **1.** that/which we eat with fingers

2. that/which is carried by women

3. that/who will graduate from school

4. that/who studies in the same class with you

5. that/who you know well and like

6. that/who you don't know

2 **1.** By the menu. **2.** They are listening to a speech.

3. Welcome.

3 (1) a) (2) e) (3) b) (4) c) (5) d)

4 (1) handbag (2) haircut (3) afternoon
(4) classmate (5) handmade

5 **1.** beat

2. pardon

3. roses

4. laugh at

5. wake; up

7 **1.** b **2.** c **3.** d

Revision module B

1 **1.** b **2.** b **3.** c **4.** c **5.** c **6.** b **7.** a **8.** b **9.** a **10.** c **11.** c **12.** a **13.** b **14.** a **15.** b

2

Ground floor	Classrooms for French, English, Spanish
	Hall for school meetings, plays, concerts
First floor	Classrooms for art, health education room
Second floor	Classrooms for IT
Top floor	Classrooms for IT

3 **1.** d) **2.** a) **3.** b) **4.** b) **5.** b) **6.** c) **7.** c) **8.** c)

4 (1) famous (2) held (3) greatest
(4) musicians (5) who (6) Although
(7) that (8) surprised (9) get

5 (1) b (2) c (3) d (4)b (5)d
(6)a (7)a (8) d (9) c (10) a

6 A **1.** b **2.** c **3.** a **4.** d
B **1.** a **2.** b **3.** d **4.** b
C **1.** b **2.** b **3.** b **4.** d

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

廿年磨一剑 · 匠心铸经典

教师的备课笔记 · 学生的随身家教 · 家长的辅导工具



责任编辑：刘　军
封面题字：沈　鹏
封面设计：典点瑞泰

荣德基官方网站：http://www.rudder.com.cn
荣德基天猫旗舰店：http://rongdeji.tmall.com

荣德基初中频道

ISBN 978-7-5553-0196-7
05>
9 787553 501967

定价：39.80元

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料